# **SINAMICS G120**

## **SINAMICS G120C conveter**

Operating instructions · 01/2013



# **SINAMICS**

Answers for industry.



# **SIEMENS**

## Change history

Safety notes	1
Introduction	2
	3
Description	1
Installing	4
Commissioning	5
Adapting the terminal strip	6
Configuring the fieldbus	7
Setting functions	8
Backup data and series commissioning	9
Repair	10
Alarms, faults and system messages	11
Technical data	12
Appendix	A

**SINAMICS** 

SINAMICS G120C SINAMICS G120C converter

**Operating Instructions** 

Edition 01/2013, Firmware 4.6

Original instructions 01/2013, FW V4.6

A5E02999804C AB

#### Legal information

### Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

/ DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.

**↑** WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.

/!\CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

#### **NOTICE**

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

#### **Qualified Personnel**

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

#### Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

/ WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

#### **Trademarks**

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

#### Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

# Change history

## Main changes with respect to the manual, edition 3/2012

New functions in firmware V4.6	In Chapter	
Dead zone for analog inputs	Analog input (Page 84)	
Firmware update of the converter	New and extended functions (Page 357)	
	Upgrading the firmware (Page 314)	
EtherNet/IP	Communication via EtherNet/IP (Page 118)	

See section Firmware downgrade (Page 316) for an overview of new and changed functions in firmware V4.6.

Revised descriptions	In Chapter	
Safety instructions	in the whole manual	
Add-ons in CANopen	Communication via CANopen (Page 154)	
PROFlenergy functions of the converter added	PROFlenergy profile for PROFINET (Page 115)	
Function "energy saving" added	Energy-saving display (Page 236)	
Acceptance test of the fail-safe function "safe torque off" (STO)	Acceptance test (Page 273)	
Ramp function generator	Ramp-function generator (Page 213)	
Rounding-off times added		
Ramp scaling during operation added		

## **Table of contents**

	Chang	e history	5
1	Safety	notes	15
2	Introdu	uction	19
	2.1	About this manual	19
	2.2	Guide through this manual	20
3	Descri	ption	21
	3.1	Product overview	21
	3.2	Components, which you require depending on your application	22
	3.3	Commissioning tools	23
4	Installi	ng	25
	4.1	Procedure for installing the converter	25
	4.2 4.2.1	Mounting the converter  Mechanical installation	26
	4.3	Mounting the line reactor	28
	4.4	Mounting the braking resistor	30
	4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.3 4.5.4 4.5.5 4.5.6 4.5.7 4.5.8 4.5.9	Connecting the converter  Power distribution systems  Connecting to the line supply  Operating a converter on the residual current device  Connecting the motor  Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter  Terminal strips  Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces  Wiring the terminal strip  Fieldbus interface assignment	
	4.6 4.6.1 4.6.2	EMC-compliant installation Installing the converter in compliance with EMC rules EMC-compliant cabinet design	49
5	Comm	issioning	57
	5.1	Commissioning guidance	
	5.2 5.2.1 5.2.2 5.2.3 5.2.4 5.2.5	Preparing commissioning  Collecting motor data  Wiring examples for the factory setting  Does the motor match the converter?  Factory setting of the inverter control.  Defining additional requirements for the application	58 60 61 62
	5.3	Restoring the factory setting	65

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

	5.4 5.4.1	Basic commissioning with Operator Panel BOP-2	
	5.4.1.1	Basic commissioning	
	5.4.2	Basic commissioning with STARTER	
	5.4.2.1 5.4.2.2	Adapt the interfaces  Generating a STARTER project	
	5.4.2.3	Go online and start wizard for basic commissioning	
	5.4.2.4	Carry-out basic commissioning	
	5.4.2.5	Identifying motor data	76
6	Adapting	g the terminal strip	79
	6.1	Digital inputs	80
	6.2	Fail-safe input	82
	6.3	Digital outputs	83
	6.4	Analog input	84
	6.5	Analog output	88
7	Configu	ring the fieldbus	91
	7.1	Communication via PROFINET	
	7.1.1	What do you need for communication via PROFINET?	
	7.1.2	Connect the converter to PROFINET	
	7.1.3 7.1.4	Configuring communication to the control	
	7.1.5	Activating diagnostics via the control	
	7.2	Communication via PROFIBUS	
	7.2.1	What do you need for communication via PROFIBUS?	95
	7.2.2	Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS	96
	7.2.3 7.2.4	Configuring communication to the control	
	7.2.4	Select telegram – procedure	
	7.3	PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET	99
	7.3.1	Cyclic communication	99
	7.3.1.1	Control and status word 1	
	7.3.1.2 7.3.1.3	Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection  Structure of the parameter channel	
	7.3.1.3	Slave-to-slave communication	
	7.3.1.4	Acyclic communication	
	7.4	PROFlenergy profile for PROFINET	115
	7.4.1	PROFlenergy	115
	7.5	Communication via EtherNet/IP	
	7.5.1	Connect converter to Ethernet/IP	
	7.5.2 7.5.3	What do you need for communication via Ethernet/IP?  Communication settings for Ethernet/IP	
	7.5.3 7.5.4	Additional settings if you are working with the AC/DC profile	
	7.5.5	Supported objects	
	7.5.6	Create generic I/O module	
	7.6	Communication via RS485	
	7 6 1	Integrating invertors into a bus system via the DS/85 interface	121

SINAMICS G120C converter

	7.6.2	Communication via USS	
	7.6.2.1	Basic settings for communication	132
	7.6.2.2	Telegram structure	133
	7.6.2.3	User data range of the USS telegram	134
	7.6.2.4	USS parameter channel	135
	7.6.2.5	USS process data channel (PZD)	140
	7.6.2.6	Time-out and other errors	
	7.6.3	Communication over Modbus RTU	
	7.6.3.1	Basic settings for communication	
	7.6.3.2	Modbus RTU telegram	
	7.6.3.3	Baud rates and mapping tables	
	7.6.3.4	Write and read access via FC 03 and FC 06	
	7.6.3.5	Communication procedure	
		·	
	7.7	Communication via CANopen	
	7.7.1	CANopen Converter functions	
	7.7.1.1	Network management (NMT service)	
	7.7.1.2	SDO services	
	7.7.1.3	Access to SINAMICS parameters via SDO	159
	7.7.1.4	Access PZD objects via SDO	
	7.7.1.5	PDO and PDO services	
	7.7.1.6	Predefined connection set	167
	7.7.1.7	Free PDO mapping	169
	7.7.1.8	Interconnect objects from the receive and transmit buffers	171
	7.7.1.9	CANopen operating modes	173
	7.7.2	List of objects	173
	7.7.2.1	General objects from the CiA 301 communication profile	173
	7.7.2.2	Free objects	
	7.7.2.3	Objects from the CiA 402 drive profile	183
	7.7.3	Integrating the converter into CANopen	
	7.7.3.2	Setting the node ID and baud rate	
	7.7.3.3	Setting the monitoring of the communication	
	7.7.4	Free PDO mapping for example of the actual current value and torque limit	
_	C - 441		
8	Setting	functions	191
	8.1	Overview of the inverter functions	191
	8.2	Converter control	193
	8.2.1	Switching the motor on and off	193
	8.2.3	Two-wire control: method 1	196
	8.2.4	Two-wire control, method 2	197
	8.2.5	Two-wire control, method 3	
	8.2.6	Three-wire control, method 1	
	8.2.7	Three-wire control, method 2	
	8.2.8	Running the motor in jog mode (JOG function)	
	8.2.9	Switching over the inverter control (command data set)	
	8.3	Setpoint sources	
	8.3.1	Analog input as setpoint source	
	8.3.1	<b>3</b> 1 1	
	8.3.2	Specifying the motor speed via the fieldbus	
	834	Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source	200 208
	0.14	LIACU SUCCU AS SCHUULL SUULCE	/117

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

8.4	Setpoint preparation	
8.4.1	Overview of setpoint processing	
8.4.2	Invert setpoint	
8.4.3	Inhibit direction of rotation	
8.4.4	Minimum speed	
8.4.5	Maximum speed	
8.4.6	Ramp-function generator	213
8.5	Motor control	216
8.5.1	V/f control	216
8.5.1.1	Characteristics of U/f control	217
8.5.1.2	Selecting the U/f characteristic	218
8.5.1.3	Optimizing with a high break loose torque and brief overload	
8.5.2	Vector control	
8.5.2.1	Properties of the sensorless vector control	
8.5.2.2	Select motor control	
8.5.2.3	Re-optimize the speed controller	223
8.6	Protection functions	225
8.6.1	Inverter temperature monitoring	
8.6.2	Motor temperature monitoring using a temperature sensor	
8.6.3	Overcurrent protection	
8.6.4	Limiting the maximum DC link voltage	230
8.7	Application-specific functions	231
8.7.1	Functions that match the application	
8.7.2	Unit changover	
8.7.2.2	Changing over the motor standard	
8.7.2.3	Changing over the unit system	
8.7.2.4	Changing over units for the technology controller	234
8.7.2.5	Switching units with STARTER	235
8.7.3	Energy-saving display	
8.7.4	Braking functions of the inverter	
8.7.4.1	Electrical braking methods	
8.7.4.2	DC braking	
8.7.4.3	Compound braking	
8.7.4.4	Dynamic braking	
8.7.4.5	Motor holding brake	
8.7.5	Automatic restart and flying restart	
8.7.5.1	Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running	
8.7.5.2 8.7.6	Automatic switch-on	
8.7.6.1	Overview	
8.7.6.2	Setting the controller	
8.7.6.3	Optimizing the controller	
8.8	Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)	
8.8.1	Functional description	
8.8.2	Prerequisite for STO use	
8.8.3	Commissioning STO	
8.8.3.1 8.8.3.2	Commissioning tool  Protection of the settings from unauthorized changes	
8.8.3.3	Resetting the safety function parameters to the factory setting	
8.8.3.4	Changing settings	
5.5.5.₹		207

Page 10 of 404

Q-Pulse Id

	8.8.3.5	Interconnecting the "STO active" signal	265
	8.8.3.6	Setting the filter for fail-safe inputs	
	8.8.3.7	Setting forced dormant error detection	
	8.8.3.8 8.8.3.9	Activate settings  Checking the assignment of the digital inputs	
	8.8.3.10		
	8.9	Switchover between different settings	278
9	Backup o	data and series commissioning	281
	9.1	Backing up and transferring settings using memory card	
	9.1.1	Saving setting on memory card	
	9.1.2 9.1.3	Transferring the setting from the memory card	
	9.2	Backing up and transferring settings using STARTER	
	9.3	Saving settings and transferring them using an operator panel	
	9.4	Other ways to back up settings	292
	9.5	Write and know how protection	293
	9.5.1	Write protection	
	9.5.2 9.5.2.1	Know-how protection	
	9.5.2.1	Creating an exception list for the know-how protection	
	9.5.2.3	Replacing devices during know-how protection	
10	Repair		303
	10.1	Overview of how to replace an inverter	303
	10.2	Replacing a converter with enabled safety function	305
	10.3	Replacing a converter without enabled safety function	308
	10.4	Replacing a converter without data backup	310
	10.5	Replacing the heat sink fan	310
	10.6	Replacing the internal fan	312
	10.7	Upgrading the firmware	314
	10.8	Firmware downgrade	316
	10.9	Correcting an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade	318
	10.10	If the converter no longer responds	319
11	Alarms, f	faults and system messages	321
	11.1	Operating states indicated on LEDs	321
	11.2	Alarms	324
	11.3	Faults	327
	11.4	List of alarms and faults	332

12	Technic	al data	339
	12.1	Technical data of inputs and outputs	339
	12.2	High Overload and Low Overload	340
	12.3	Common technical power data	341
	12.4	Power-dependent technical data	342
	12.5	Electromagnetic compatibility of the converters	
	12.5.1	Assigning converters to EMC categories	
	12.5.2	Harmonics	
	12.5.3	EMC limit values in South Korea	349
	12.6	Temperature and voltage derating	349
	12.7	Derating as a function of the installation altitude	350
	12.8	Current reduction depending on pulse frequency	351
	12.9	Accessories	352
	12.9.1	Line reactor	
	12.9.2	Braking resistor	
	12.10	Standards	356
Α	Appendi	ix	357
	A.1	New and extended functions	357
	A.1.1	Firmware version 4.5	357
	A.1.2	Firmware version 4.6	358
	A.2	Parameter	359
	A.3	Using the operator panel BOP-2	361
	A.3.1	Navigating the menu:	
	A.3.2	Other keys and symbols of the BOP-2 operator panel	
	A.3.3	Changing settings using BOP-2	
	A.3.4	Changing indexed parameters	
	A.3.5	Directly entering the parameter number and value	
	A.3.6	A parameter cannot be changed	
	A.4	Handling STARTER	
	A.4.1	Change settings	
	A.4.2	Optimize the drive using the trace function	
	A.5	Interconnecting signals in the converter	
	A.6	Application examples	
	A.6.1	Configuring the PROFIBUS communication with STEP 7	
	A.6.1.1	Precondition	
	A.6.1.2	Creating a STEP 7 project and network	
	A.6.1.3	Inserting the inverter into the project	
	A.6.2	Configuring the PROFINET communication with STEP 7	
	A.6.2.1 A.6.2.2	Precondition  Configuring the controller and converter in HW Config	
	A.6.2.3	Create a reference for STARTERS	
	A.6.2.4	Activate diagnostic messages via STEP 7	
	A.6.2.5	Call the STARTER and go online	
	A.6.3	STEP 7 programming examples	
		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	

A.6.3.1	Data exchange via the fieldbus	382
A.6.3.2	STEP 7 program example for cyclic communication	383
A.6.3.3	STEP 7 program example for acyclic communication	
A.6.4	Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7	389
A.6.5	Connecting fail-safe digital inputs	391
A.7	Documentation for acceptance of safety functions	392
A.7.1	Machine documentation	
A.7.2	Log the settings for the basic functions, firmware V4.4 V4.6	393
A.8	Further information on your inverter	395
A.8.1	Manuals for your inverter	395
A.8.2	Configuring support	396
A.8.3	Product Support	396
Indov		207

Safety notes

## Use for the intended purpose

The frequency converter described in this manual is a device for controlling an asynchronous low-voltage motor. The converter is designed for installation in electrical installations or machines.

It has been approved for industrial and commercial use on industrial networks. Its use in public line supplies requires a different configuration and/or additional measures.

The technical specifications and information about connection conditions are indicated on the rating plate and in the operating instructions.



## DANGER

### Danger to life when live parts are touched

Touching live parts can result in death or severe injury.

Note the following:

- Only work on electrical equipment if you are qualified to do so.
- When carrying out any work, always comply with the country-specific safety rules.

Follow the six steps to ensure safety:

- 1. Prepare for shutdown and inform team members who will be affected by the procedure.
- 2. Switch off the machine so that it is in a no-voltage state:
  - Switch off the machine.
  - Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
  - Check that it really is in a no-voltage condition, from phase conductor to phase conductor and phase conductor to protective conductor.
  - Check that all auxiliary circuits are also in a no-voltage state.
  - Ensure that the motor cannot move.
- 3. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems or water.
- 4. Isolate or neutralize all hazardous energy sources by closing switches, grounding or short-circuiting or closing valves, for example.
- 5. Lock out all energy sources to prevent reclosing.
- 6. Make sure that the machine is completely locked out ... and that you have the right machine!

After you have completed the work, restore operational readiness in the inverse sequence.

## / WARNING

#### Danger of fire spreading due to inadequate housing

Fire and smoke development can cause severe personal injury or material damage.

Install devices without a protective housing in a metal control cabinet (or protect the
device by another equivalent measure) in such a way that contact with fire inside and
outside the device is prevented.



## / WARNING

#### Danger to life when live parts are touched on damaged devices

Hazardous voltages can be present at the housing or exposed components on damaged devices.

- Ensure compliance with the limit values specified in the technical specifications during transport, storage and operation.
- Do not use any damaged devices.
- The components must be protected against conductive contamination (e.g. by installing them in a cabinet with degree of protection IP54B to EN 60529).

Assuming that conductive contamination at the installation site can definitely be excluded, a lower degree of cabinet protection may be permitted.

## / WARNING

# Danger to life due to unexpected movement of machines when using mobile wireless devices or mobile phones

Using mobile radios or mobile phones with a transmit power > 1 W closer than approx. 2 m to the frequency converter may cause the devices to malfunction, affecting the functional safety of machines and, therefore, putting people at risk or causing material damage.

Switch off mobile radios and mobile telephones when you are close to the converter.



#### NOTICE

## Damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electric fields or electrostatic discharge can result in malfunctions as a result of damaged individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices.

- Package, store, transport and send the electronic components, modules or devices only in the original product packaging or in other suitable materials, e.g. conductive foam rubber or aluminum foil.
- Only touch components, modules and devices if you are grounded by means of one of the following measures:
  - Wearing an ESD armband or
  - Wearing ESD shoes or ESD grounding straps in ESD areas with conductive flooring
- Only place electronic components, modules or devices on conductive surfaces (table with ESD surface, conductive ESD foam, ESD packaging, ESD transport container, for example).

SINAMICS G120C converter

16



## /!\CAUTION

## Risk of burns due to touching hot surfaces

During operation and for a short time after the frequency converter shuts down, the surface of the device can reach a high temperature. Touching the surface of the converter can cause burns.

- Do not touch the device during operation.
- After shutting down the converter, wait for the device to cool down before touching it.

### Residual risks of power drive systems

The control and drive components of a drive system are approved for industrial and commercial use in industrial line supplies. Their use in public line supplies requires a different configuration and/or additional measures.

These components may only be operated in closed housings or in higher-level control cabinets with protective covers that are closed, and when all of the protective devices are used.

These components may only be handled by qualified and trained technical personnel who are knowledgeable and observe all of the safety instructions on the components and in the associated technical user documentation.

When assessing the machine's risk in accordance with the respective local regulations (e.g., EC Machinery Directive), the machine manufacturer must take into account the following residual risks emanating from the control and drive components of a drive system:

- 1. Unintentional movements of driven machine components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example:
  - Hardware defects and/or software errors in the sensors, controllers, actuators, and connection technology
  - Response times of the controller and drive
  - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
  - Condensation / conductive contamination
  - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
  - Use of radio devices / cellular phones in the immediate vicinity of the controller
  - External influences / damage

- 2. In the event of a fault, exceptionally high temperatures, including an open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the inverter, e.g.:
  - Component malfunctions
  - Software errors
  - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
  - External influences / damage

Inverters of the Open Type / IP20 degree of protection must be installed in a metal control cabinet (or protected by another equivalent measure) such that the contact with fire inside and outside the inverter is not possible.

- 3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
  - Component malfunctions
  - Influence of electrostatic charging
  - Induction of voltages in moving motors
  - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside of the specification
  - Condensation / conductive contamination
  - External influences / damage
- Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a
  risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc. if they are too
  close.
- 5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly.

#### Note

The components must be protected against conductive contamination (e.g. by installing them in a control cabinet with degree of protection IP54 according to IEC 60529 or NEMA 12).

Assuming that conductive contamination at the installation site can definitely be excluded, a lower degree of cabinet protection may be permitted.

For more information about residual risks of the components in a drive system, see the relevant sections in the technical user documentation.

Introduction

## 2.1 About this manual

### Who requires the operating instructions and what for?

These operating instructions primarily address fitters, commissioning engineers and machine operators. The operating instructions describe the devices and device components and enable the target groups being addressed to install, connect-up, set, and commission the converters safely and in the correct manner.

#### What is described in the operating instructions?

These operating instructions provide a summary of all of the information required to operate the converter under normal, safe conditions.

The information provided in the operating instructions has been compiled in such a way that it is sufficient for all standard applications and enables drives to be commissioned as efficiently as possible. Where it appears useful, additional information for entry level personnel has been added.

The operating instructions also contain information about special applications. Since it is assumed that readers already have a sound technical knowledge of how to configure and parameterize these applications, the relevant information is summarized accordingly. This relates, e.g. to operation with fieldbus systems and safety-related applications.

## What is the meaning of the symbols in the manual?



An operating instruction starts here.



This concludes the operating instruction.



The following text applies to the Basic Operator Panel BOP-2.



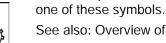
The following text applies if you are using a PC with STARTER.











See also: Overview of the inverter functions (Page 191).

The description of the corresponding inverter function starts with

## 2.2 Guide through this manual

In this manual, you will find background information on your inverter, as well as a full description of the commissioning procedure:

- Inverter components:
   Sizes, types, accessories
- ① Here you will find information about the hardware of your inverter and the commissioning tools:
  - Product overview (Page 21)
- Installing (Page 25)

Installation:
Install the inverter and connect up

Start commissioning

Adapt to the application:
Basic commissioning, configuring interfaces, setting functions

Backup data:
On PC/PG, operator panel or memory card

All information relating to the commissioning of your inverter is located in the following chapters:

- Basic commissioning (Page 66)
  - Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79)
  - Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)
  - Setting functions (Page 191)
- Backup data and series commissioning (Page 281)
- (5) Maintenance and diagnostics:

  Replacement of components, displays, alarms, faults

End of commissioning

- ⑤ Information regarding the maintenance and diagnostics of your inverter is located in the following chapters:
  - Repair (Page 303)
  - Alarms, faults and system messages (Page 321)
- Technical data
- The most important technical data for your inverter is located in this chapter:
  - Technical data (Page 339)
- Appendix

  Fundamentals, application examples, additional sources of information
- The appendix contains some background information and explanatory examples:
  - Appendix (Page 357)

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Description 3

## 3.1 Product overview

The SINAMICS G120C is a range of converters for controlling the speed of three phase motors. The converter is available in three frame sizes.

You find a label with the order number:

- On the front of the converter after removing the blind cover or the operator panel.
- On one side of the converter.

	Rated output power	Rated output current	Order number					
	based on Low (	Overload	Unfiltered			Filtered		
3.77	0.55 kW	1.7 A	6SL3210-1KE11-8U		1	6SL3210-1KE11-8A		1
	0.75 kW	2.2 A	6SL3210-1KE12-3U		1	6SL3210-1KE12-3A		1
The same of the sa	1.1 kW	3.1 A	6SL3210-1KE13-2U		1	6SL3210-1KE13-2A		1
	1.5 kW	4.1 A	6SL3210-1KE14-3U		1	6SL3210-1KE14-3A		1
Name -	2.2 kW	5.6 A	6SL3210-1KE15-8U		1	6SL3210-1KE15-8A		1
Frame Size A	3.0 kW	7.3 A	6SL3210-1KE17-5U		1	6SL3210-1KE17-5A		1
	4.0 kW	8.8 A	6SL3210-1KE18-8U		1	6SL3210-1KE18-8A		1
HELV	5.5 kW	12.5 A	6SL3210-1KE21-3U		1	6SL3210-1KE21-3A		1
Frame Size B	7.5 kW	16.5 A	6SL3210-1KE21-7U		1	6SL3210-1KE21-7A		1
2000.00	11.0 kW	25.0 A	6SL3210-1KE22-6U		1	6SL3210-1KE22-6A		1
100 mg 1 mg 100	15.0 kW	31.0 A	6SL3210-1KE23-2U		1	6SL3210-1KE23-2A		1
	18.5 kW	37.0 A	6SL3210-1KE23-8U		1	6SL3210-1KE23-8A		1
Frame Size C								
SINAMICS G120	C USS/MB (USS	6, Modbus RTU)		В			В	
SIN	AMICS G120C	P (PROFIBUS)		Р			Р	
SINAMICS G120	SINAMICS G120C PN (PROFINET, EtherNet/IP)						F	
	SINAMICS G120C CANopen			С			С	

Figure 3-1 Identifying the converter

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

3.2 Components, which you require depending on your application

## 3.2 Components, which you require depending on your application

## Line reactor

A line reactor protects the converter from the rough characteristics of an industrial grid. A line reactor supports the overvoltage protection, smoothes harmonics and bridges commutation notches.

#### Note

If the relative short-circuit voltage  $u_k$  of the line transformer is smaller than 1 %, you have to install a line reactor in order to ensure the optimal lifetime of your converter.

### **Braking resistor**

The braking resistor enables loads with a large moment of inertia to be braked quickly.

Converter		Braking resistor	Line reactor
Frame Size A	0.55 kW 1.1 kW	6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0
	1.5 kW		6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0
	2.2 kW 4.0 kW	6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0	
Frame Size B	5.5 kW 7.5 kW	6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0	6SL3203-0CE21-8AA0
Frame Size C	11.0 kW 18.5 kW	6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0

Q-Pulse Id

## 3.3 Commissioning tools

## Accessories for commissioning and data backup

Operator Panels for commission	Order number	
E	BOP-2 (Basic Operator Panel) - for snapping onto the frequency inverter	6SL3255-0AA00-4CA1
	Copying of drive parameters	
	Two-line display	
	Guided basic commissioning	
	IOP (Intelligent Operator Panel) - for snapping onto the frequency inverter	6SL3255-0AA00-4JA0
Company of the Compan	Copying of drive parameters	
	Plain text display	
	Menu-based operation and application wizards	
	Door mounting kit for IOP/BOP-2	6SL3256-0AP00-0JA0
	For installation of theBOP-2 or IOP in a control cabinet door.	
	Degree of protection with IOP: IP54 or UL Type 12	
	Degree of protection with BOP-2: IP55	
	IOP - with handheld	6SL3255-0AA00-4HA0
	For mobile use of the IOP	

## 3.3 Commissioning tools

PC tools for commissioning, diagnostics and controlling of the converter					
STARTER	PC Connection Kit Includes a STARTER DVD and USB port.	6SL3255-0AA00-2CA0			
	STARTER Commissioning tool (PC software) connection to the converter via USB port, PROFIBUS or PROFINET Downloading: STARTER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/1080498 5/130000)	STARTER on the DVD: 6SL3072-0AA00-0AG0			
STARTER	Drive ES Basic As an option to STEP 7 with routing function via network limits for PROFIBUS and PROFINET	6SW1700-5JA00-5AA0			
Memory cards: to save and transfer the converter settings					
SIEMENS SINAMICS SINA	MMC card	6SL3254-0AM00-0AA0			
	SD card	6ES7954-8LB00-0AA0			

Q-Pulse Id

Installing 4

## /!\warning

## Danger of fire through overheating due to insufficient ventilation clearances

Insufficient ventilation clearances increase the probability of failure and reduce the service life of devices. In the worst-case scenario, devices overheating can put persons at risk through smoke development and fire.

 Ensure compliance with the specified minimum clearance as ventilation clearance for the respective component. Minimum clearances can be found in the dimension drawings or in the "Product-specific safety instructions" at the start of the respective section.

## 4.1 Procedure for installing the converter

## Prerequisites for installing the converter

Check that the following prerequisites are fulfilled before you install the converter:

- Are the components, tools and small parts required for installation available?
- Are the ambient conditions permissible? See Technical data (Page 339).

## Installation sequence

- 1. Mount the converter.
- 2. If required, mount the line reactor.
- 3. If required, mount the braking resistor.
- 4. Connect the following components:
  - Converter motor
  - Converter line reactor line
  - Converter braking resistor
- 5. Wire the terminal strip of the control unit.
- When the installation has been complete and checked, power can then be applied to the converter.

You start to commission the converter once installation has been completed.

## 4.2 Mounting the converter

## Mounting orientation

Mount the converter in a control cabinet.

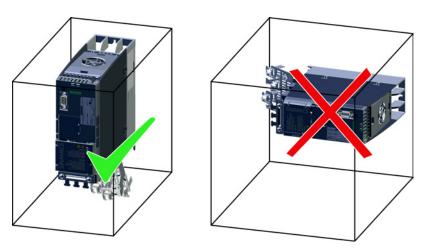


Figure 4-1 The converter must not be installed horizontally.

Devices that could impede the flow of cooling air must not be installed in this area. Make sure that the ventilation openings for the cooling air for the converter are not covered and that the flow of cooling air is not obstructed.

## 4.2.1 Mechanical installation

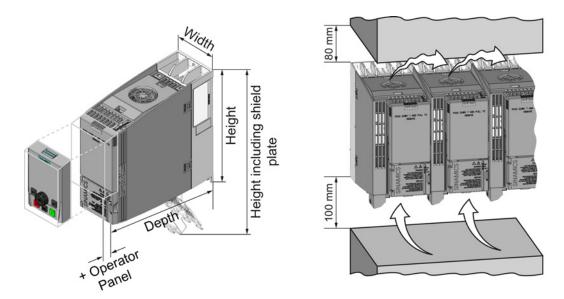


Figure 4-2 Dimensions and minimum spacing to other devices

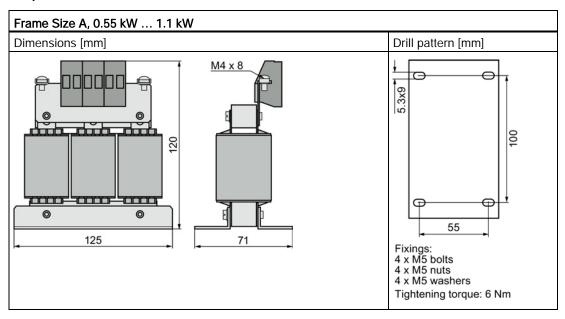
SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

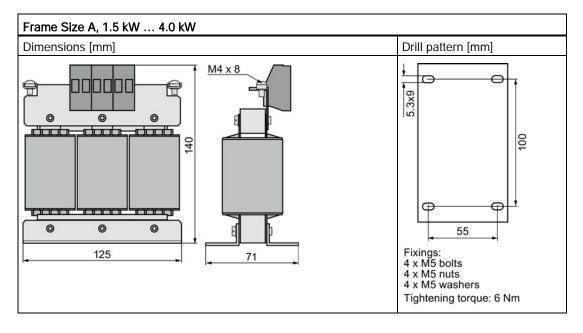
Table 4-1 Dimensions, drilling patterns, and fixing elements

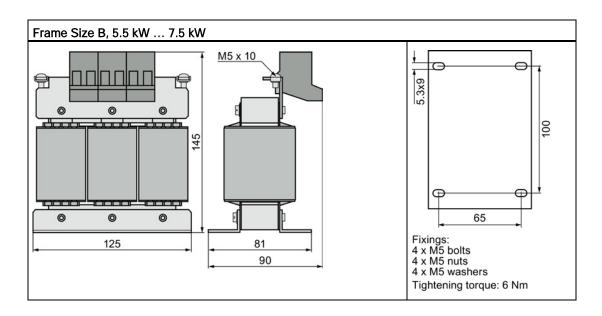
	Frame Size A 0.55 kW - 4.0 kW	Frame Size B 5.5 kW - 7.5 kW	Frame Size C 11 kW - 18.5 kW	
Height	196 mm	196 mm	295 mm	
Height including shield plate	276 mm	276 mm	375 mm	
Width	73 mm	100 mm	140 mm	
Depth of the converter with PROFINET interface	225.4 mm	225.4 mm	225.4 mm	
Depth of the converter with USS/MB, CANopen, or PROFIBUS interface	203 mm	203 mm	203 mm	
Additional depth when the Operator Panel is attached	+ 21 mm when Oper is attached	ator Panel IOP (Intelli	gent Operator Panel)	
	+ 6 mm when Operator Panel BOP-2 (Basic Operator Panel) is attached			
Drilling pattern	36.5 © 98 62.3	186	118	
Fixing elements	3 x M4 studs, 3 x M4 nuts, 3 x M4 washers	4 x M4 studs, 4 x M4 nuts, 4 x M4 washers	4 x M5 studs, 4 x M5 nuts, 4 x M5 washers	
Locked-rotor (starting) torque	2.5 Nm	2.5 Nm	2.5 Nm	

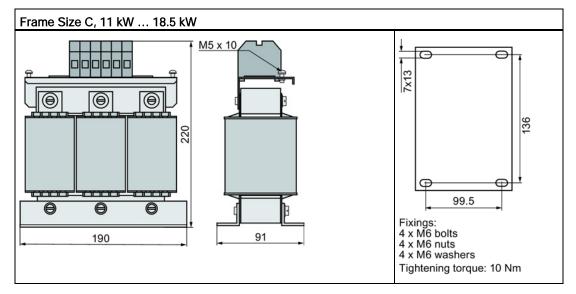
## 4.3 Mounting the line reactor

## Dimensions and drill patterns









Page 29 of 404

## Distances to other equipment

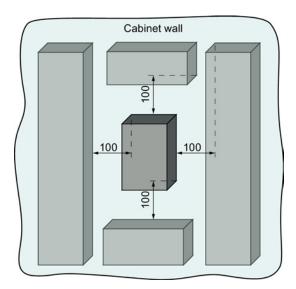


Figure 4-3 Distances of line reactors to other equipment [mm]

## 4.4 Mounting the braking resistor

### Mounting orientation

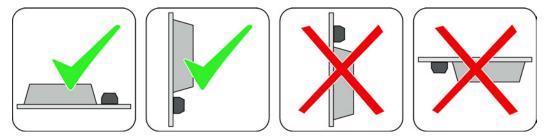


Figure 4-4 Permissible mounting orientation of the braking resistor



The operation of the braking resistor without housing is not permitted.



## / WARNING

#### Risk of fire

If an unsuitable braking resistor is used, this could result in a fire and severely damage, people, property and equipment. Use the adequate braking resistor and install it correctly.

The temperature of a braking resistor increases significantly during operation. Avoid coming into direct contact with braking resistors.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Page 30 of 404



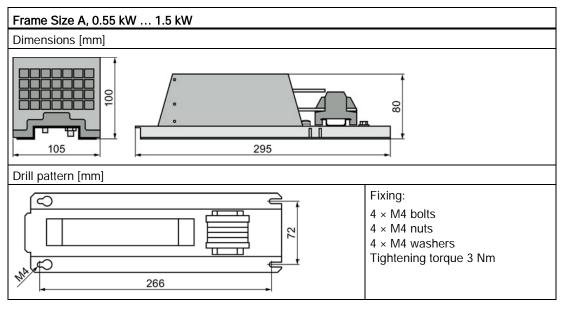
## /!\CAUTION

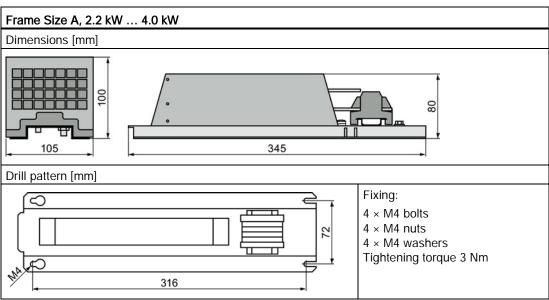
### Risk of burns due to touching hot surfaces

During operation and for a short time after the frequency converter shuts down, the surface of the device can reach a high temperature. Touching the surface of the converter can cause burns.

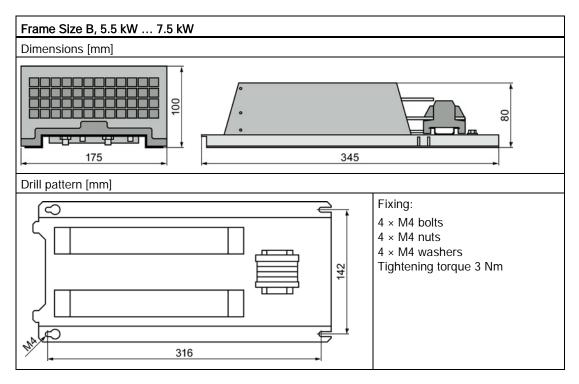
- Do not touch the device during operation.
- After shutting down the converter, wait for the device to cool down before touching it.

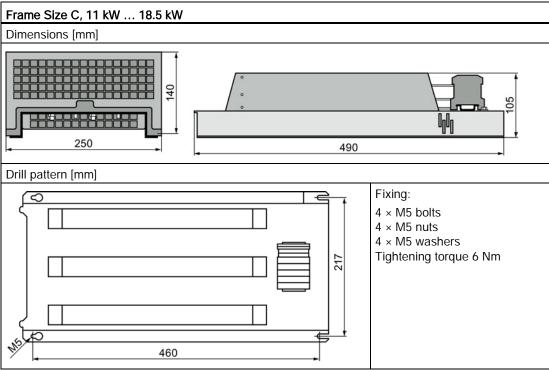
## Dimensions and drill patterns



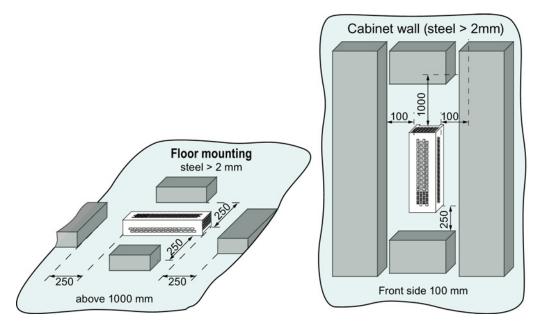


### 4.4 Mounting the braking resistor





## Distances to other equipment



Mount the resistor on a heat resistant surface with a high thermal conductivity. Do not install devices that could impede the flow of cooling air in this area. Do not cover the ventilation openings of the braking resistor.

## 4.5 Connecting the converter

## 4.5.1 Power distribution systems

The converter is designed for the following power distribution systems as defined in EN 60950.

Table 4- 2 Power distribution systems for the converter

TN-S Power System	TN-C-S Power System	TN-C Power System	TT Power System	IT Power System
L1 L2 L3 Exposed Conductive Parts	L1 L2 L3 PE/N PE Conductive Parts	L1 L2 L3 Exposed Conductive Parts	L1 L2 L3 N  - L1 L2 L3 Exposed Conductive Parts	L1 L2 L3 N O L1 L2 L3 N PE Conductive Parts
A TN-S power system has separate neutral and protective ground conductors throughout the system.	In a TN-C-S power system, the neutral and protective functions are combined in a single part of the system.	In a TN-C power system, the neutral and protective functions are combined in a single conductor throughout the system.	A TT power system has one point directly grounded, the exposed conductive parts of the installation being connected to a ground, which is electrically independent of the ground of the power system.	An IT power system has no direct connection to ground - instead the exposed parts of the electrical installation are grounded.

Q-Pulse Id

## 4.5.2 Connecting to the line supply



## / DANGER

## Danger to life when live parts are touched

Touching live parts can result in death or severe injury.

Note the following:

- Only work on electrical equipment if you are qualified to do so.
- When carrying out any work, always comply with the country-specific safety rules.

Follow the six steps to ensure safety:

- 1. Prepare for shutdown and inform team members who will be affected by the procedure.
- 2. Switch off the machine so that it is in a no-voltage state:
  - Switch off the machine.
  - Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
  - Check that it really is in a no-voltage condition, from phase conductor to phase conductor and phase conductor to protective conductor.
  - Check that all auxiliary circuits are also in a no-voltage state.
  - Ensure that the motor cannot move.
- 3. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems or water
- 4. Isolate or neutralize all hazardous energy sources by closing switches, grounding or short-circuiting or closing valves, for example.
- 5. Lock out all energy sources to prevent reclosing.
- 6. Make sure that the machine is completely locked out ... and that you have the right machine!

After you have completed the work, restore operational readiness in the inverse sequence.



## <u></u> ♠DANGER

#### Electric shock through contact with the motor connections

As soon as the converter is connected to the line supply, the motor connections of the converter may carry dangerous voltages. When the motor is connected to the converter, there is danger to life through contact with the motor terminals if the terminal box is open.

• Close the terminal box of the motor before connecting the converter to the line supply.

#### 4.5 Connecting the converter

## / WARNING

# Danger of death caused by high leakage currents when the external protective conductor is interrupted

The inverter conducts high leakage currents > 3.5 mA via the protective conductor. When the protective conductor is interrupted, touching live components can result in electric shock, which can lead to death or serious injuries.

- Connect a protective conductor, which satisfies at least one of the following conditions, to the inverter:
  - The protective conductor is routed so that it is protected against mechanical damage.
     Cables routed in control cabinets or enclosed machine enclosures are considered to be adequately protected.
  - The protective conductor routed as an individual conductor has a cross-section of ≥ 10 mm² Cu.
  - In a multi-core cable the protective conductor has a cross-section of ≥ 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup> Cu.
  - Two parallel protective conductors with the same cross-section are installed.
  - The protective conductor corresponds to the local regulations for equipment with increased leakage current.

#### **NOTICE**

#### Damage to the converter through inappropriate supply system

Operating the converter with integrated or external line filter on an ungrounded supply system will destroy the line filter.

• Therefore, always connect the converter with an integrated or external line filter only to supply systems with grounded star point (TN system).

## / WARNING

#### Fire hazard for the motor due to overload of the insulation

There is a greater load on the motor insulation due to a ground fault in an IT system. A possible result is the failure of the insulation with a risk for personnel through smoke development and fire.

- Use a monitoring device that signals an insulation fault.
- Correct the fault as quickly as possible so the motor insulation is not overloaded.

### **NOTICE**

#### Damage to the converter through fault in IT system

A ground fault on the motor cable during operation can result in a shutdown of the converter due to overcurrent. Under unfavorable conditions, the overcurrent may damage the converter.

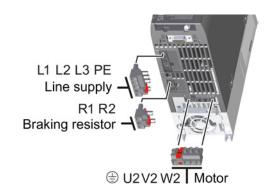
Use an output reactor in the IT system.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Page 36 of 404

## Overview of the connection plugs

The plugs for connecting the line supply, motor, and braking resistor can be found on the underside of the converter.



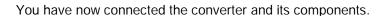
## Connecting the converter and its components



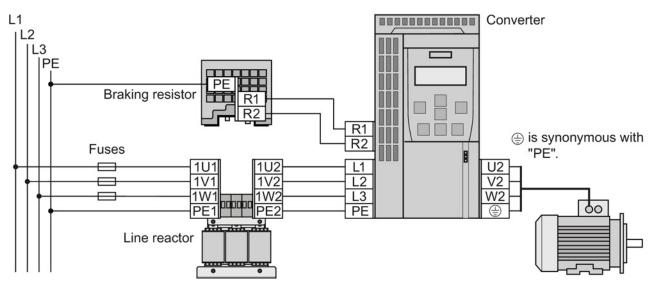
#### **Procedure**

To connect the converter and its components, proceed as follows:

- 1. Check the table below to ensure you are using the correct fuses.
- 2. If you are using a line reactor or braking resistor, use the table below to check whether these components are suitable for the converter.
- 3. Connect the converter and its components.
- 4. If an EMC-compliant installation is required, you must use shielded cables. Refer also to section: EMC-compliant installation (Page 49).



## 4.5 Connecting the converter



Converter		Fuse	UL/cUL fuse	Braking resistor	Line reactor	
FSA	0.55 kW 1.1 kW	3NA3801 (6 A)		6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0	
	1.5 kW	3NA3803 (10 A)	10 A Class J	03L3201-0BE14-3AA0		
	2.2 kW	3NA3003 (10 A)		6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0	6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0	
	3.0 kW 4.0 kW	3NA3805 (16 A)	15 A Class J	03L3201-0BL21-0AA0		
FSB	5.5 kW	3NA3807 (20 A)	20 A Class J	6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0	6SI 3203-0CE21-8AA0	
	7.5 kW	3NA3810 (25 A)	25 A Class J	0323201-00221-0770	03L3203-0CL21-0AA0	
FSC	11 kW	3NA3817 (40 A)	40 A Class J			
	15 kW	3NA3820 (50 A)	50 A Class J	6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0	
	18.5 kW	3NA3822 (63 A)	60 A Class J			

Converter		Converter cable cross-section		Line react	or		Braking resistor	
		(tightening torque)		(tightening torque)			(tightening torque)	
FSA	0.55 kW	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	14 AWG	4 mm <sup>2</sup>	12 AWG	PE M4		
	4 kW	(0.5 Nm) (4.5 lbf in)		(0.8 Nm)	(7 lbf in)	(3 Nm/26.5 lbf in)	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	14 AWG
FSB	5.5 kW	6 mm <sup>2</sup> 10 AWG		10 mm <sup>2</sup>	8 AWG		(0.5 Nm)	(4.5 lbf in)
	7.5 kW	(0.6 Nm)	(5.5 lbf in)	(1.8 Nm)	(16 lbf in)	PE M5		
FSC	11 kW	16 mm <sup>2</sup> 5 AWG		16 mm <sup>2</sup>	5 AWG	(5 Nm / 44 lbf in)	6 mm²	10 AWG
	18.5 kW	(1.5 Nm)	(13.5 lbf in)	(4 Nm)	(35 lbf in)		(0.6 Nm)	(5.5 lbf in)

Page 38 of 404

## Components for United States / Canadian installations (UL/CSA)

This equipment is capable of providing internal motor overload protection according to UL508C. Take the following actions In order to comply with UL508C:

- Use UL/CSA-certified J-type fuses, overload circuit-breakers or intrinsically safe motor protection devices.
- For each frame size A to C use class 1 75° C copper wire only.
- Install the converter with any external recommended suppressor with the following features:
  - Surge-protective devices; device shall be a Listed Surge-protective device (Category code VZCA and VZCA7).
  - Rated nominal voltage 480/277 V<sub>AC</sub>, 50/60 Hz, 3-phase.
  - Clamping voltage  $V_{PR}$  = 2000 V,  $I_N$  = 3 kA min, MCOV = 508 V<sub>AC</sub>, SCCR = 40 kA.
  - Suitable for Type 1 or Type 2 SPD application.
  - Clamping shall be provided between phases and also between phase and ground.
- Do not change the parameter p0610 (factory setting of p0610 = 12 means: the drive reacts on a motor overtemperature with an immediate alarm and after a certain time with a fault).

## 4.5.3 Operating a converter on the residual current device



## / WARNING

#### Live enclosure parts due to unsuitable protection equipment

The frequency converter can cause a direct current in the protective conductor. If an unsuitable residual current device (RCD) or residual current monitoring equipment (RCM) is used to protect against direct or indirect contact, the direct current in the protective conductor prevents the protective device from being triggered if a fault occurs.

As a result, parts of the converter without touch protection can carry a dangerous voltage.

Adhere to the conditions for residual current devices as listed below.

#### Requirements for using a residual current device

The converter is connected to a TN system.

### Conditions for operating the converter with a residual current device

Active 17/06/2014

You can operate the converter on a residual current device (RCD, ELCB, or RCCB) or residual current monitoring equipment (RCM) under the following conditions:

- You are using an FSA or FSB converter.
- You are using a super-resistant (universal current-sensitive) RCD/RCM, type B, such as a SIQUENCE circuit breaker from Siemens.
- RCD/RCM tripping current for filtered devices = 300 mA

SINAMICS G120C converter

### 4.5 Connecting the converter

- RCD/RCM tripping current for unfiltered devices = 30 mA
- Each converter is connected via its own RCD/RCM.
- Shielded motor cables must be shorter than 15 m.
- Unshielded motor cables must be shorter than 30 m.

## Measures for touch protection without RCD/RCM

Establish touch protection using one of the following measures:

- Double insulation
- Transformer for isolating the converter from the line supply

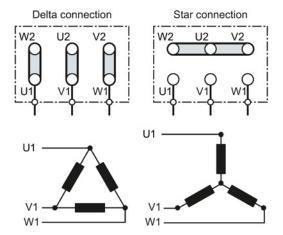
## 4.5.4 Connecting the motor

### Connecting a motor using a star or delta connection

With SIEMENS motors, you will see a diagram of both connection types on the inside of the cover of the terminal box:

- Star connection (Y)
- Delta connection (Δ)

The motor rating plate provides information about the correct connection data.



#### Examples for operating the inverter and motor on a 400 V line supply

Assumption: The motor rating plate states 230/400 V  $\Delta$ /Y.

Case 1: A motor is normally operated between standstill and its rated speed (i.e. a speed corresponding to the line frequency). In this case, you need to connect the motor in Y. Operating the motor above its rated speed is only possible in field weakening, i.e. the motor torque available is reduced above the rated speed.

Case 2: If you want to operate the motor with the "87 Hz characteristic", you need to connect the motor in  $\Delta$ .

With the 87 Hz characteristic, the motor's power output increases. The 87 Hz characteristic is mainly used with geared motors.

## 4.5.5 Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter

In the diagrams below, the complete breakdown of all user interfaces are explained.

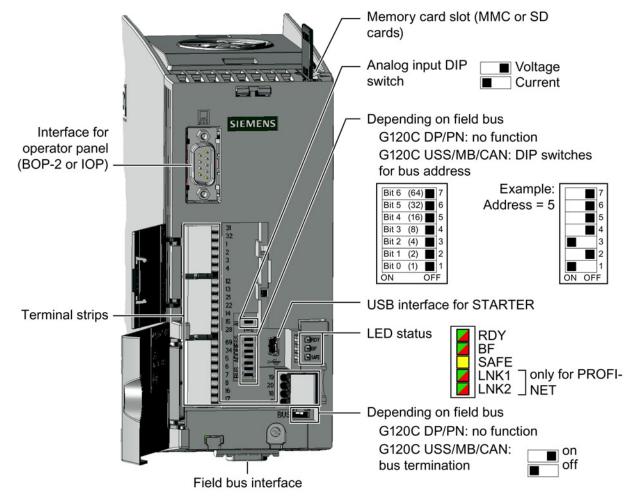
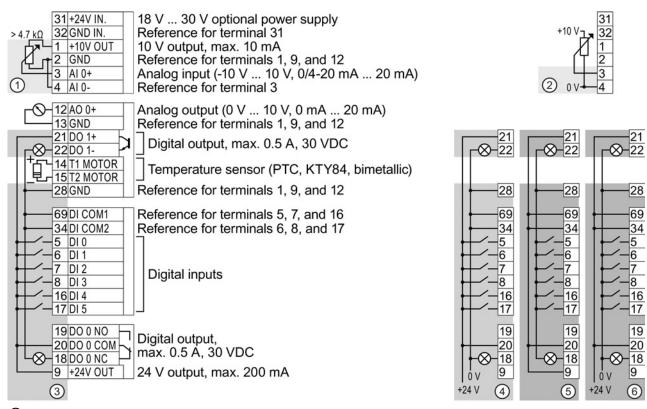


Figure 4-5 Interfaces and connectors

## 4.5.6 Terminal strips

## Wiring variations of the terminal strips



- 1 The analog input is supplied from the internal 10 V voltage.
- 2 The analog input is supplied from an external 10 V source.
- ③ Wiring when using the internal power supplies. Connecting a contact that switches to P potential.
- 4 Wiring when using external power supplies. Connecting a contact that switches to P potential.
- Wiring when using the internal power supplies. Connecting a contact that switches to M potential.
- Wiring when using external power supplies. Connecting a contact that switches to M potential.



## / WARNING

# Danger to life as a result of hazardous voltages when connecting an unsuitable power supply

Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched in the event of a fault.

 For all connections and terminals of the electronic boards, only use power supplies that provide PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) or SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) output voltages.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 4.5.7 Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces

The inputs and outputs of the frequency inverter and the fieldbus interface have specific functions when set to the factory settings.

When you put the frequency inverter into operation, you can change the function of each of its inputs and outputs and the setting of the fieldbus interface.

To make the setting process easier, the inverter has various predefined assignments (macros).

Only the inputs and outputs whose functions change by selecting a specific assignment, are shown on the following pages.

#### **Procedure**



To select one of the inverter's pre-assigned settings, proceed as follows:

- 1. Think about which of the input and output functions you are using in the application.
- 2. Find the I/O configuration (macro) that best suits your application.
- Note the macro number of the corresponding default setting.You must set this macro number when putting the frequency inverter into operation.

You have found the appropriate inverter pre-assignment.

Macro 1: Two fixed speeds	Macro 2: Two fixed speeds with safety function	Macro 3: Four fixed speeds
5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 right ON/OFF1 left Acknowledge Fixed speed 3 Fixed speed 4	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 Fixed speed 1 Fixed speed 2 Acknowledge Reserved for safety function  3 AI 0	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 Fixed speed 1 Fixed speed 2 Acknowledge Fixed speed 3 Fixed speed 4 3 AI 0
18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 Alarm 22 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V	18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 Speed 13 0 V 10 V	18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 Speed 13 0 V 10 V
DI 4 and DI 5 = high: The converter adds both fixed speeds.	DI 0 and DI 1 = high: The converter adds both fixed speeds.	Multiple DIs = high: The converter adds the corresponding fixed speeds.

## 4.5 Connecting the converter

Macro 4: PROFIBUS or PROFINET	Macro 5: PROFIBUS or PROFINET with safety function	
PROFIdrive telegram 352	PROFIdrive telegram 1	
5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 3 AI 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V	5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 Reserved for safety function 3 AI 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V	

Macro 7: Switching between Factory setting for converters with	Macro 8: Motorized potentiometer (MOP) with safety function	
PROFIdrive telegram 1    5   DI 0	5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5  3 AI 0 4 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 AO 0 Speed 13 0 V 10 V	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 6 DI 1 MOP raise 7 DI 2 MOP lower 8 DI 3 Acknowledge 16 DI 4 Reserved for safety function 3 AI 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 13 OV 10 V

Q-Pulse Id

Macro 9: Motorized potentiometer (MOP)	Macro 12: Two-wire control using method 1 Factory setting for converters without PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface.	Macro 13: Setpoint via analog input with safety function
5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 MOP raise MOP lower Acknowledge 3 AI 0 4 DO 0 Fault 19 20 Alarm 22 AO 0 V 10 V	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 6 DI 1 Reverse 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 3 AI 0 Setpoint I U -10 V 10 V  18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 Reverse 7 DI 2 Acknowledge

Macro 14: Switching between fieldbus a		
PROFIdrive telegram 1		
5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 3 AI 0	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 6 DI 1 External fault 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 8 DI 3 HIGH 16 DI 4 MOP raise 17 DI 5 MOP lower	
18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 13 0 V 10 V	18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 Speed 13 0 V 10 V	

## 4.5 Connecting the converter

Macro 15: Switching between analog (MOP)	Macro 17: Two-wire control using method 2  Macro 18: Two-wire control using method 3	
5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5  3 AI 0 4 Setpoint 1 ■ U -10 V 10 V 18 DO 0 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 AO 0 13 Al 0 12 AO 0 12 AO 0 13 Al 0 19 Alarm 20 OV 10 V	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 6 DI 1 External fault 7 DI 2 Acknowledge HIGH 16 DI 4 MOP raise 17 DI 5 MOP lower  3 AI 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22  12 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V	5 DI 0 ON/OFF1 right ON/OFF1 left 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 3 AI 0 Setpoint 4 U -10 V 10 V  18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 0 V 10 V

Macro 19: Three-wire control using method 1	Macro 20: Three-wire control using method 2	Macro 21: USS fieldbus Macro 22: CANopen fieldbus
5 DI 0	5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 8 DI 3 16 DI 4 17 DI 5  3 AI 0 4 Setpoint I ■ U -10 V 10 V 18 DO 0 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22 12 AO 0 Speed 13 ON November 10	USS setting: 38,400 baud, 2 PZD, PKW variable CANopen setting: 20 kBaud  5 DI 0 6 DI 1 7 DI 2 Acknowledge 16 DI 4 17 DI 5 3 AI 0 18 DO 0 Fault 19 20 21 DO 1 Alarm 22  12 AO 0 Speed 13  O V 10 V

Page 46 of 404

## 4.5.8 Wiring the terminal strip

#### **NOTICE**

#### Damage to the inverter when using long signal cables

Using long cables at the inverter's digital inputs and 24 V power supply can lead to overvoltage during switching operations. Overvoltage can damage the inverter.

 If you use cables of more than 30 m at the digital inputs and 24 V power supply, connect an overvoltage protection element between the terminal and the associated reference potential.

We recommend using the Weidmüller overvoltage protection terminal with designation MCZ OVP TAZ DIODE 24VDC.

#### Prerequisites

- Use suitable cables:
  - Solid or flexible cables.
  - Suitable cable cross-section: 0.5 mm² (21 AWG) to 1.5 mm² (16 AWG).
     When completely connecting up the unit, we recommend cables with a cross-section of 1 mm² (18 AWG).
- Do not use wire end ferrules.
- You have found an appropriate pre-assignment for the terminal strips, which you can now use to wire the inverter.

See also Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

- You have the appropriate tools:
  - Small screwdriver to open the spring-loaded terminals
  - Tool for stripping the cables

#### **Procedure**



To wire the inverter's terminal strip, proceed as follows:

- 1. Remove the last 10 mm (approx.) of the cable insulation.
- 2. Using the screwdriver, press on the orange operator control of the spring-loaded terminal hard enough to open the terminal.
- 3. Insert the cable into the terminal as far as it will go and remove the screwdriver.
- 4. Ensure that the cable is securely connected by pulling on it lightly.
- 5. Wire all the required terminals on the strip in this way.
- 6. Route the signal cables in such a way that you can completely close the front doors after wiring the terminal strip.

## 4.5 Connecting the converter

- 7. If you use shielded cables, then you must connect the shield to the mounting plate of the control cabinet or with the shield support of the inverter through a good electrical connection and a large surface area.
  - See also: EMC installation guideline (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/60612658)
- 8. Use a cable grip.

You have now wired the inverter's terminal strips.

#### 4.5.9 Fieldbus interface assignment

The fieldbus interface is on the underside of the converter.

## **CANopen**



- 1 Not used
- 2 CAN\_L, CAN signal (dominant, low)
- 3 CAN\_GND, CAN reference
- 5 (CAN \_SHLD), optional cable shield
- 6 (GND), optional CAN reference
- 7 CAN\_H, CAN signal (dominant, high)
- 8 ---
- 9 ---

## USS / Modbus RTU

- 1 0 V, reference potential
- 2 RS485N, receive and send (+)
- 3 RS485P, receive and send (-)
- 4 Cable shield

### **PROFIBUS** 0

- 1 Shield, ground connection
- 2 Not used
- 3 RxD/TxD-P, receive/send data P(B/B')
- 4 CNTR-P, control signal
- 5 DGND, data reference potential (C/C')
- 6 VP, supply voltage positive
- 8 RxD/TxD-N, receive/send data N(A/A')

Active 17/06/2014

## **PROFINET** EtherNet/IP



- 1 RX+, receive data +
- 2 RX-, receive data -
- 3 TX+, transmission data +
- 4 ---
- 6 TX-, transmission data -
- 7 ---
- 8 ---

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 4.6 EMC-compliant installation

## 4.6.1 Installing the converter in compliance with EMC rules

## Rules for EMC-compliant cable routing

#### **Preconditions**

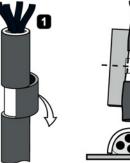
- The converter is mounted on a metal mounting plate. The mounting plate is unpainted and has good electrical conductivity.
- Use shielded cables for the following connections:
  - Motor and motor temperature sensor
  - Braking resistor
  - Fieldbus
  - Inputs and outputs of the terminal strip

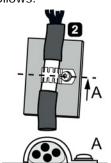
#### **Procedure**

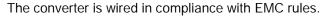
 $\square$ <sup>1</sup><sub>2</sub>

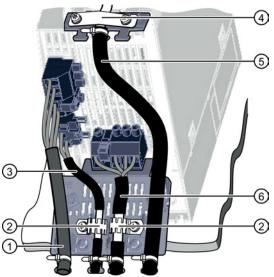
To install the converter cables in compliance with EMC rules, proceed as follows:

- 1. Expose the shields of the shielded cables.
- Place the shields on the mounting plate or on the converter shield plate using EMC clamps.









- EMC-compliant wiring shown using the example of a frame size A converter
  - 1) Unshielded line supply cable
  - (2) EMC clamps on the shield plate
  - (3) Shielded cable to the braking resistor
  - ② EMC clamp for the cable to the terminal strip
  - (5) Shielded cable to the terminal strip
  - (6) Shielded motor cable

4.6 EMC-compliant installation

## 4.6.2 EMC-compliant cabinet design

The most cost-effective method of implementing interference suppression measures within the control cabinet is to ensure that interference sources and potentially susceptible equipment are installed separately from each other. This must be taken into account already during the planning phase.

### EMC-zone concept within the control cabinet

The control cabinet has to be divided into EMC zones and the devices within the control cabinet have to be assigned to these zones. The example below illustrates this zone concept in greater detail.

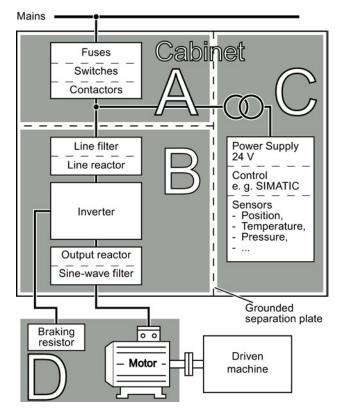
The different zones must be electromagnetically decoupled. One method is to ensure that the zones are not positioned directly next to each other (minimum distance app. 25 cm / 9.84 in). A better, more compact method, however, is to use separate metallic housings or separation plates with large surface areas.

Cables within each zone can be unshielded. Cables connecting different zones must be separated and must not be routed within the same cable harness or cable channel. If necessary, filters and/or coupling modules should be used at the interfaces of the zones. Coupling modules with electrical isolation are an effective means of preventing interference from spreading from one zone to another.

All communication and signal cables leaving the cabinet must be shielded. For longer, analog signal cables isolating amplifiers should be used. Sufficient space for bonding the cable shields must be provided, whereby the braided cable shield must be connected to the cabinet ground with excellent electrical conductivity and with a large contact area. Differences in the ground potential between the zones must be avoided to ensure that impermissible, high compensating currents are kept away from the cable shields.

Active 17/06/2014

Page 50 of 404



## Zone A: Supply connection

Limit values for conducted interference emissions and conducted interference immunity must not be exceeded

Zone B: Power electronics

Sources of interference

 Zone C: Controller and sensors Potentially susceptible equipment

## Zone D: Motor, braking resistor and according cables Sources of interference

Division of the cabinet and installation into different EMC zones

## Control cabinet design

- All metallic components of the cabinet (side panels, back walls, roof plates, and floor
  plates) must be connected to the cabinet frame with excellent electrical conductivity,
  ideally with a large contact area or by means of several point-like screwed connections
  (i.e. to create a Faraday cage).
- The cabinet doors must be connected to the cabinet frame with excellent electrical conductivity by means of short, finely stranded, braided grounding strips, which are ideally placed at the top, in the middle, and at the bottom of the doors.
- The PE busbar and EMC shield busbar must be connected to the cabinet frame with excellent electrical conductivity with a large contact area.
- All metallic housings of devices and additional components integrated in the cabinet (such as converter or line filter) must be connected to the cabinet frame with excellent electrical conductivity and with a large contact area. The best option here is to mount devices and additional components on a bare metal mounting plate (back plane) with excellent electrical conductivity. This mounting plate must be connected to the cabinet frame and, in particular, to the PE and EMC shield busbars with excellent electrical conductivity and a large contact area.

## 4.6 EMC-compliant installation

- All connections should be made so that they are permanent. Screwed connections on painted or anodized metal components must be made either by means of special contact washers, which penetrate the isolating surface and establish a metallically conductive contact, or by removing the isolating surface on the contact points.
- Contactor coils, relays, solenoid valves, and motor holding brakes must have interference suppressors to reduce high-frequency radiation when the contacts are opened (RC elements or varistors for AC currentoperated coils, and freewheeling diodes for DC current-operated coils). The interference suppressors must be connected directly on each coil.

## Cable routing inside the cabinet

- All power cables for the drive (line cables, DC link cables, connecting cables between the
  Braking Module and the associated braking resistor as well as motor cables) must be
  routed separately from signal and data cables. The minimum distance should be
  approximately 25 cm. Alternatively, the decoupling can be realized in the control cabinet
  using metal partitions (separating elements) connected to the mounting plate through a
  good electrical connection.
- Filtered line cables with a low noise level, i.e. line cables from the line supply to the line filter, must be separately routed away from non-filtered power cables with high noise levels (line cables between the line filter and rectifier, DC link cables, connecting cables between the Braking Module and the associated braking resistor as well as motor cables).
- Signal and data cables, as well as filtered line supply cables, may only cross non-filtered power cables at right angles to minimize coupled-in interference.
- Cables should be kept as short as possible and unnecessary cable lengths must be avoided.
- All cables are to be laid as close as possible to grounded enclosure parts such as mounting plates or cabinet frames. This reduces both noise radiation and interference injection.
- Signal and data cables, as well as their associated equipotential bonding cables, must always be routed in parallel and with the shortest distance possible between them.
- When unshielded single-conductor cables are used within a zone, the feed and return lines must be either routed in parallel with the minimum possible distance between them, or twisted with one another.
- Reserve cores of signal and data cables must be grounded at both ends to achieve an additional shielding effect.
- Signal and data cables should enter the cabinet only at one point (e.g. from below).

## Cables outside the cabinet

- All power cables (line cables, DC link cables, connecting cables between the Braking Module and the associated braking resistor as well as motor cables) must be routed separately from signal and data cables. The minimum distance should be approximately 25 cm.
- To achieve categories C2 and C3 according to EN 61800-3, a shielded line cable must be used between the inverter and motor, and for higher power ratings a symmetrical, 3conductor three-phase cable should be used. Shielded cables with symmetrical threephase conductors (L1, L2, and L3) and an integrated, 3-conductor, and symmetrically arranged PE conductor are ideal for this purpose.
- The shielded power cable to the motor must be routed separately from the cables to the motor temperature sensors (PTC/KTY) and the cable to the encoder, as the latter two are treated as signal cables.
- Signal and data cables must be shielded to minimize coupled-in interference (capacitive, inductive, and radiated).
- Particularly sensitive signal cables, such as setpoint and actual value cables and, in particular, tachometer, encoder and resolver cables must be routed without any interruption with the shield optimally connected at both ends.

#### Cable shields

- Shielded cables must have finely stranded braided shields. Shields that are not as finely braided, such as the concentric conductors used in Protodur NYCWY cables, do not have such an effective shielding effect. Foil shields have a significantly poorer shielding effect and are therefore unsuitable.
- Shields must be connected to the grounded housings at both ends with excellent electrical conductivity and a large contact area. Only when this method is used can coupled-in interference be minimized (capacitive, inductive, radiated).
- Wherever possible, cable shields should be connected directly after they enter the
  cabinet. The EMC shield bars should be used for power cables; the shield connection
  options provided in the built-in and cabinet units should be used for signal and data
  cables.
- Wherever possible, cable shields should not be interrupted by using intermediate terminals.
- For power cables as well as signal and data cables, the cable shields should be connected using the appropriate EMC shield clips. The shield clips must connect the shield through a large surface area with low associated inductance to the EMC shield bar or the shield connection option for signal cables.
- Only metal or metallized plug housings should be used for plug-in connections for shielded data cables (e.g. PROFIBUS cables).

## **Equipotential bonding**

- Equipotential bonding within a cabinet element has to be established by means of a
  suitable mounting plate (back plane), to which all metallic housings of the devices and
  additional components integrated in the cabinet element (e. g. converter or line filter) are
  connected. The mounting plate has to be connected to the cabinet frame and to the PE or
  EMC busbar of the cabinet element with excellent electrical conductivity and a large
  contact area.
- Equipotential bonding between several cabinet elements has to be established by means
  of a PE busbar which runs through all the cabinet elements. In addition, the frames of the
  individual cabinet elements must be screwed together multiple times with sufficient
  electrical conductivity by means of special contact washers. If extremely long rows of
  cabinets are installed in two groups back to back, the two PE busbars of the cabinet
  groups must be connected to each other wherever possible.
- Equipotential bonding within the drive system has to be established by connecting all electrical and mechanical drive components (transformer, cabinet, motor, gearbox, and driven machine) to the grounding system. These connections are established by means of standard heavy-power PE cables, which do not need to have any special high-frequency properties. In addition to these connections, the converter (as the source of the high-frequency interference) and all other components in each drive system (motor, gearbox, and driven machine) must be interconnected with respect to the high-frequency point of view. For this purpose cables with good high-frequency properties must be used.

## Grounding and high-frequency equipotential bonding measures

The following figure illustrates all grounding and high-frequency equipotential bonding measures using the example of a cabinet with a SINAMICS G120.

The ground connections ① represent the conventional grounding system for the drive components.

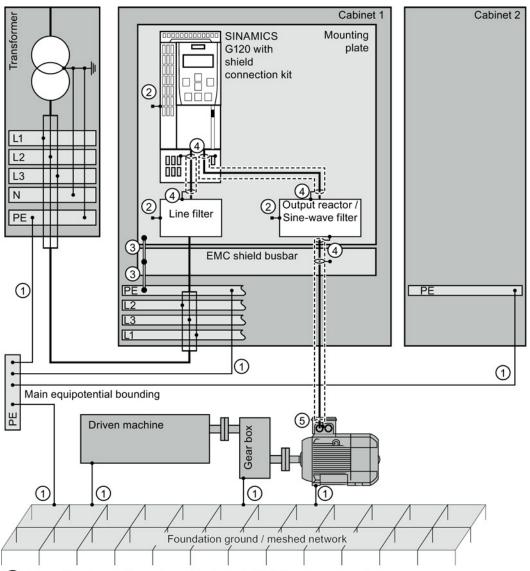
They are made with standard, heavy-power PE conductors without special high-frequency properties and ensure low frequency equipotential bonding as well as protection against injury.

The connections ② inside the cabinet provide solid bonding for high-frequency currents between the metal housings of the integrated components and the EMC shield busbar of the cabinet. These internal connections should be made via a large area using non-isolated metal construction components of the cabinet. In this case, the contact surface must be bare metal and each contact area must have a minimum cross-section of several cm². Alternatively, these connections can be made with short, finely stranded, braided copper wires with a large cross-section (≥ 95 mm² / 000 (3/0) (-2) AWG) between the integrated components and the EMC shield busbar.

The shield and the protective earth conductor of the motor cable provide the high-frequency equipotential bonding between the converter and the motor terminal box.

Therefore connect the protective earth conductor and the cable shield as well to the motor as to the converter.

Page 54 of 404



- 1 Conventional grounding system without special high-frequency properties
- ② Electrically conductive connection to the mounting plate through the largest possible surface area
- (3) High-frequency equipotential bonding
- 4 Connect shield with a large contact area and connect protective earth conductor
- (5) Connect shield via electrically conductive PG gland and connect protective earth conductor

Figure 4-6 Grounding and high-frequency equipotential bonding measures in the drive system and in the plant

## Additional measures

Finely stranded, braided copper cables have to be routed in parallel with the cable shields in the following cases:

- Old installations with already existing unscreened cables
- Cables with poor high-frequency properties
- Installations with bad grounding systems

The connections in the figure below provide a solid, high-frequency bonding between the motor housing, the motor terminal box, the gearbox, the driven machine and the EMC busbar.

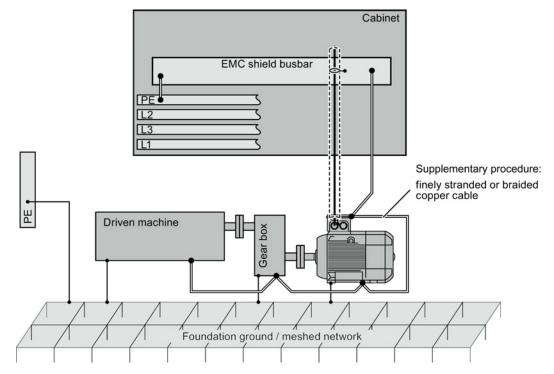


Figure 4-7 Additional high-frequency bonding of the drive system

Commissioning

## 5.1 Commissioning guidance



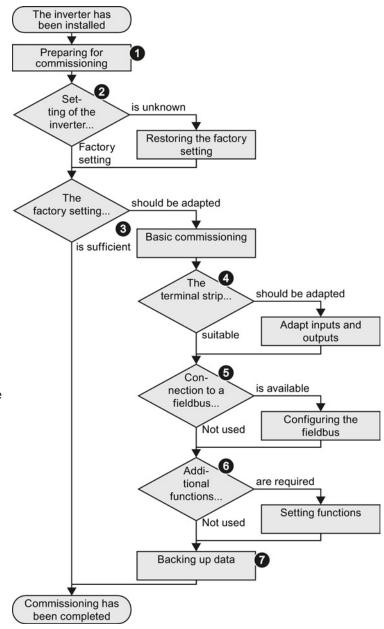
#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to commission the inverter:

- Define the requirements of your application placed on the drive.
   → (Page 58) .
- Reset the inverter when required to the factory setting.
  - → (Page 65) .
- Check whether the factory setting of the inverter is appropriate for your application.

If not, start with the basic commissioning.

- → (Page 66).
- Check whether you need to adapt the functions of the terminal strip that you specify in the basic commissioning.
  - → (Page 79).
- 5. If necessary, adapt the communications interface in the inverter.
  - → (Page 91) .
- 6. If necessary, set further functions in the inverter.
  - → (Page 191).
- 7. Save your settings.
  - → (Page 281) .





SINAMICS G120C converter

## 5.2 Preparing commissioning

#### Overview

Before starting commissioning, you must answer the following questions:

- What data does my converter have?
  - → Product overview (Page 21).
- What is the data for the connected motor?
  - → Collecting motor data (Page 58).
- · Which interfaces of the converter are active?
  - → Wiring examples for the factory setting (Page 60).
- Via which converter interfaces does the higher-level controller operate the drive?
- How is my converter set?
  - → Factory setting of the inverter control (Page 62).
- What technological requirements must the drive fulfill?
  - → Factory setting of the inverter control (Page 62).
  - → Defining additional requirements for the application (Page 64).

## 5.2.1 Collecting motor data

#### Which motor is connected to the inverter?

If you are using the STARTER commissioning tool and a Siemens motor, you only need the motor order number. Otherwise, note down the data on the motor rating plate.

### In which region of the world is the motor used?

- Europe IEC: 50 Hz [kW]
- North America NEMA: 60 Hz [hp] or 60 Hz [kW]

#### How is the motor connected?

Pay attention to the connection of the motor (star connection [Y] or delta connection  $[\Delta]$ ). Note the appropriate motor data for connecting.

## What is the operating temperature of the motor?

For commissioning you need the motor environmental temperature if it varies from 20° C.

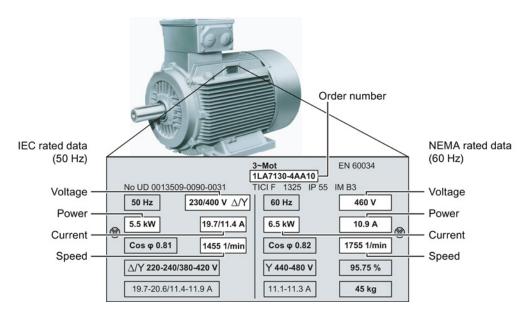
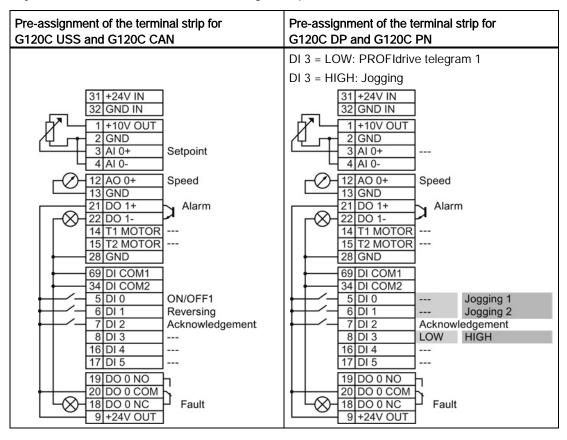


Figure 5-1 Motor data of the rating plate

## 5.2.2 Wiring examples for the factory setting

If you wish to use the factory setting of your converter, then you must wire the terminal strip of your converter as shown in the following examples.



## 5.2.3 Does the motor match the converter?

The converter is preset on a motor at the factory as shown in the figure below.

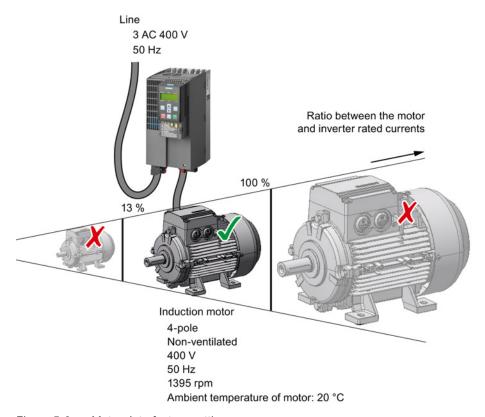


Figure 5-2 Motor data factory settings

The rated current of the motor must be in the range 13% to 100% of the rated converter current.

Example: With a converter with the rated current 10.2 A, you may operate induction motors whose rated currents are in the range 1.3 A to 10.2 A.

## 5.2.4 Factory setting of the inverter control

## Switching the motor on and off

The inverter is set in the factory so that after it has been switched on, the motor accelerates up to its speed setpoint in 10 seconds (referred to 1500 rpm). After it has been switched off, the motor also brakes with a ramp-down time of 10 seconds.

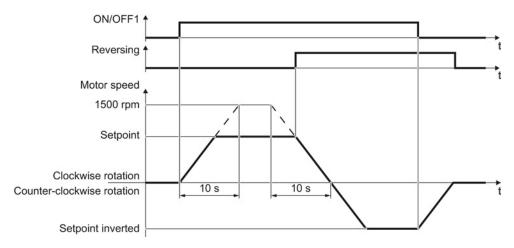


Figure 5-3 Switching on and switching off the motor and reversing in the factory setting

## Switching the motor on and off in the jog mode

For inverters with PROFIBUS interface, operation can be switched over using digital input DI 3. The motor is either switched on and off via PROFIBUS – or operated in the jog mode via its digital inputs.

For a control command at the respective digital input, the motor rotates with  $\pm 150$  rpm. The ramp-up and ramp-down times are also 10 seconds, referred to 1500 rpm.

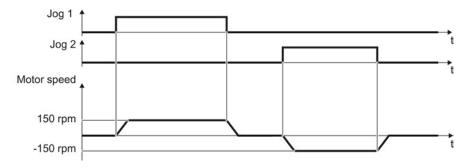


Figure 5-4 Jogging the motor in the factory setting

For induction motors, there are two different open-loop control or closed-loop control techniques:

- V/f control (calculation of the motor voltage using a characteristic curve)
- Closed-loop speed control (also: field-oriented control or vector control)

SINAMICS G120C converter

### Criteria for selecting either V/f control or vector control

In many applications, the V/f control suffices to change the speed of induction motors. Examples of typical applications for V/f control include:

- Pumps
- Fans
- Compressors
- Horizontal conveyors

When compared to V/f control, vector control offers the following advantages:

- The speed is more stable for motor load changes.
- Shorter accelerating times when the setpoint changes.
- Acceleration and braking are possible with an adjustable maximum torque.
- Improved protection of the motor and the driven machine as a result of the adjustable torque limiting.
- Full torque is possible at standstill.

Examples of typical applications in which speed control is used:

- Hoisting gear and vertical conveyors
- Winders
- Extruders

## It is not permissible to use vector control in the following cases:

- If the motor is too small in comparison to the converter (the rated motor power must not be less than one quarter of the rated converter power)
- When you operate several motors on one converter
- If a power contactor is used between the converter and motor, and is opened while the motor is powered up
- When the maximum motor speed exceeds the following values:

Converter pulse frequency		2 kHz	kHz 4 kHz and higher			her
Pole number of the motor	2-pole	4-pole	6-pole	2-pole	4-pole	6-pole
Maximum motor speed [rpm]	9960	4980	3320	14400	7200	4800

## 5.2 Preparing commissioning

## 5.2.5 Defining additional requirements for the application

## What speed limits should be set? (Minimum and maximum speed)

- Minimum speed factory setting 0 [rpm]
   The minimum speed is the lowest speed of the motor independent of the speed setpoint.
   A minimum speed is, for example, useful for fans or pumps.
- Maximum speed factory setting 1500 [rpm]
   The converter limits the motor speed to this value.

#### What motor ramp-up time and ramp-down time are needed for the application?

The ramp-up and ramp-down time define the maximum motor acceleration when the speed setpoint changes. The ramp-up and ramp-down time is the time between motor standstill and the maximum speed, or between the maximum speed and motor standstill.

- Ramp-up time factory setting 10 s
- Ramp-down time factory setting 10 s

## 5.3 Restoring the factory setting

There are cases where something goes wrong when commissioning a drive system e.g.:

- The line voltage was interrupted during commissioning and you were not able to complete commissioning.
- You got confused during the commissioning and you can no longer understand the individual settings that you made.
- You do not know whether the inverter was already operational.

In cases such as these, reset the inverter to the factory settings.

## Resetting the safety functions to the factory settings

If the safety functions are enabled in your inverter, then the safety function settings are password-protected. You must know the password to reset the safety function settings.

#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to restore the safety function settings in the inverter to the factory settings:



<ol> <li>Go online</li> <li>Call the safety functions screen form</li> <li>In the "Safety Integrated" screen form, press the button for restoring the factory setting.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Set p0010 = 30         Activate reset settings.</li> <li>p9761 =         Enter the password for the safety functions</li> <li>Start the reset with p970 = 5         When the inverter has reset the settings, p0970 = 0.</li> </ol>				
4. Switch off the inverter power supply.					
5. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark.					
6. Switch on the inverter power supply again.					

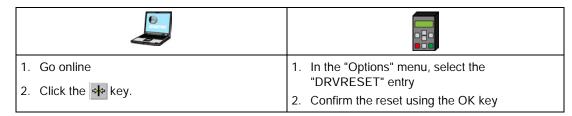
You have restored the safety function settings of your inverter to the factory settings.

## Restoring the inverter to the factory setting



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to restore the inverter settings to the factory settings:



You have restored the inverter factory settings.

SINAMICS G120C converter

## 5.4 Basic commissioning

## 5.4.1 Basic commissioning with Operator Panel BOP-2

## Installing the basic operator panel BOP-2



#### **Procedure**

For installing the BOP-2 operator panel you have to proceed as follows:

- 1. Remove the blind cover from the converter.
- 2. Place the bottom edge of the BOP-2 casing into the lower recess of the converter housing.
- 3. Push the BOP-2 towards the converter until the release-catch clicks into place on the converter housing.



The BOP-2 is installed. When you supply the voltage to the converter, the operator panel BOP-2 is ready to operate.

## 5.4.1.1 Basic commissioning

## Setting the basic commissioning data

Basic commissioning is the first step of the commissioning procedure. The BOP-2 operator panel guides you through the basic commissioning process and prompts you to enter the most important data for your inverter.

### Prerequisite



You have inserted the BOP-2 operator panel on the inverter and connected the inverter to a power supply.

The Operator Panel has powered up and displays setpoints and actual values.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

#### **Procedure**

To enter the data for basic commissioning, proceed as follows:

1. Press the ESC key.

2. Press one of the arrow keys until the BOP-2 displays the "SETUP" menu.

3. SETUP In the "SETUP" menu, press the OK key to start basic commissioning.

4. **RESET**If you wish to restore all of the parameters to the factory setting before the basic commissioning:

- 4.1. Switch over the display using an arrow key: nO → YES
- 4.2. Press the OK key.

5. CTRL MOD Select the motor control mode. The most important control modes are:

VF LIN V/f control with a linear characteristic for basic applications, e.g. horizontal conveyors.

VF QUAD V/f control with a square-law characteristic for basic

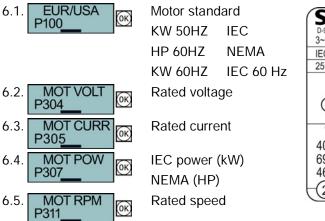
pump and fan applications.

SPD N EN We recommend that you use the closed-loop speed

control.

The control modes are described in the operating instructions of your inverter.

6. Transfer the data from the motor rating plate to the inverter:



	D-91056 3~Mot.	Erla 1L	ngen E100	<b>EN</b>	4AA(	)	E	0807/049	96382_	
ļ				100L	IMB:	_	IP:			
ļ	25 kg	T	h.Cl.	155(F)	-20°	,C	Tamb	40°C		
	0	N	E 6	Bearing 206-2Z 206-2Z SF	C3 7	15g 11g	ONT N	ervall: 40 NEMA M	G1-12	
	V		Hz	Α	k۷	V	PF	NOM.EF	Frpm	1
1	400	Δ	50	3.5	1.	5	0.73	84.5%	970	1
1	690	Υ	50	2.05	1.	5	0.73	84.5%	970	
1	460	Δ	60	3.15	1.	5	0.69	86.5%	1175	١
(	2		1	3	-(4	9			5	Ц

## 5.4 Basic commissioning

7. MOT ID P190<u>0</u>

Motor data identification

Select the method which the inverter uses to measure the data of the connected motor:

OFF No measurement of motor data.

STIL ROT Recommended setting: Measure the motor data at

standstill and with the motor rotating.

STILL Measure the motor data at standstill.

Select this setting if one of the following cases is applicable:

- You have selected the control mode "SPD N EN".
   However, the motor cannot rotate freely for example, if the traversing range is mechanically limited.
- You have selected V/f control as a control mode, e.g. "VF LIN" or "VF QUAD".

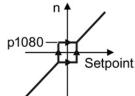
ROT Measuring the motor data while it is rotating.

8. MAc PAr P15 \_\_\_ Select the configuration for the interfaces of the inverter that is suitable for your application. You can find possible configurations in Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43)

coN 2 SP	Macro 1	Std ASPS	Macro 13
coN SAFE	Macro 2	Proc FB	Macro 14
coN 4 SP	Macro 3	Proc	Macro 15
coN Fb	Macro 4	2-wire 1	Macro 17
coN Fb S	Macro 5	2-wire 2	Macro 18
Fb SAFE	Macro 6	3-wire 1	Macro 19
Fb cdS	Macro 7	3-wire 2	Macro 20
MoP SAFE	Macro 8	USS	Macro 21
Std MoP	Macro 9	CAN	Macro 22
Std ASP	Macro 12		

9. MIN RPM P1080

Set the minimum speed of the motor.

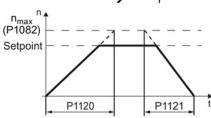


10. RAMP UP P112<u>0</u>

Set the ramp-up time of the motor.

11. RAMP DWN P112<u>1</u>

Set the ramp-down time of the motor.



12. FINISH

Complete the basic commissioning:

12.1. Switch over the display using an arrow key: nO → YES

12.2. Press the OK key.

You have entered all of the data that is necessary for the basic commissioning of your converter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

68

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## Identifying the motor data and optimizing the closed-loop control

Following basic commissioning, the inverter generally has to measure other motor data and optimize its current and speed controllers.

To start motor data identification, you must switch on the motor. It does not matter whether you use the terminal strip, fieldbus, or operator panel to enter the ON command.

## / WARNING

# Risk of injury or material damage as a result of machine motion when switching on the motor

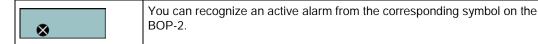
Switching on the motor for motor identification purposes may result in hazardous machine motion.

Secure dangerous machine parts before starting motor data identification:

- Before switching on check that no parts are loose on the machine or can be spun out.
- Before switching on ensure that nobody is working on the machine or located within its working area.
- Secure the machine's work area against unintended access.
- Lower hanging loads to the floor.

#### Preconditions

In the basic commissioning, you have selected the motor identification (MOT ID). In this
case, after the basic commissioning has been completed, the inverter issues the alarm
A07991.



The motor is cooled down to the ambient temperature.

If the motor is too hot, the motor data identification will provide incorrect values and the closed-loop speed control can become unstable.

Q-Pulse Id

## 5.4 Basic commissioning



#### **Procedure**

To initiate motor data identification and optimization of the motor control, proceed as follows:

1. HAND ⇒

Press the HAND/AUTO key. The BOP-2 displays the HAND symbol.

2.

Switch on the motor.

3.

Wait until the inverter switches off the motor after completion of the motor data identification. The measurement takes several seconds.



Save the measurements so that they are protected against power failure.



If you have also selected a rotating measurement in addition to the motor data identification, then the inverter again issues the alarm A07991.

5.

Switch the motor on again in order to optimize the speed control.



Wait until the inverter switches off the motor after completion of the optimization. The optimization can take up to one minute.

7. HAND

Switch the inverter control from HAND to AUTO.



Save the measurements so that they are protected against power failure.

You have now completed motor data identification and the closed-loop speed control has been optimized.

## 5.4.2 Basic commissioning with STARTER

#### STARTER and STARTER screen forms

STARTER is a PC-based tool to commission Siemens inverters. The graphic user interface of STARTER supports you when commissioning your inverter. Most inverter functions are combined in screen forms in STARTER.

The STARTER screen forms that are shown in this manual show general examples. You may therefore find that a screen contains more or fewer setting options than are shown in these instructions. A commissioning step may also be shown using an inverter other than the one you are using.

#### Overview: Commission the inverter in the online mode

We recommend that you commission the inverter using STARTER in the online mode. STARTER offers two options of going online with an inverter:

- Via the USB interface
- Via PROFIBUS or PROFINET

#### Precondition

You require the following to commission the inverter using STARTER:

- A pre-installed drive (motor and inverter)
- A computer with Windows XP or Windows 7, on which STARTER V4.3 or higher is installed.

You can find updates for STARTER in the Internet under: Download STARTER (<a href="http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804985/133100">http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804985/133100</a>)





Proceed as follows to carry out the basic commissioning of the inverter online using STARTER:

- 1. Adapt the inverter and PC interfaces:
  - Go online via USB:Adapting the USB interface (Page 72)
  - Go online via PROFINET:

Adapting the PROFINET interface (Page 73)

Configure the communication between inverter and PC: Configuring the PROFINET communication with STEP 7 (Page 376).

- 2. Create a STARTER project (Page 74).
- 3. Go online and commission the inverter using the wizards (Page 74).

This means that you have completed the basic commissioning.

#### 5.4 Basic commissioning

## 5.4.2.1 Adapt the interfaces

### Adapting the USB interface

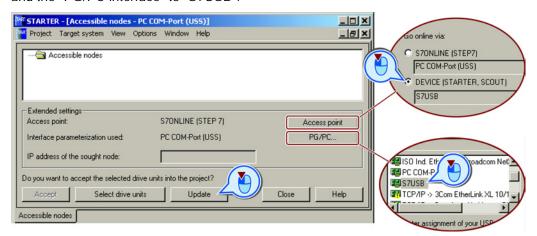


#### **Procedure**

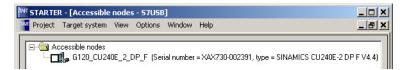
Proceed as follows to set the USB interface:

- 1. Switch on the converter power supply and connect the converter to the PC via USB.
- The USB drivers are installed if you are connecting the converter and PC together for the first time. Windows 7 automatically installs the drivers without you having to take any action. For older Windows versions, acknowledge the corresponding screen forms with OK.
- 3. Start the STARTER commissioning software.
- 4. If you are using STARTER for the first time, you must check the USB interface setting. To do this, click in STARTER on [13] ("Accessible nodes").

  If the interface is appropriately set, then the "Accessible nodes" screen form lists the converters, which are connected via the USB interface. In this case, go to Point 7. If incorrectly set, then the "No additional nodes found" message is displayed.
- 5. Acknowledge this message, and set the "Access point" to "DEVICE (STARTER, Scout)" and the "PG/PC interface" to "S7USB".



6. Then click on "Update". The connected converters are now displayed in "Accessible nodes".



- 7. Close this screen form without selecting the converter(s) that has/have been found.
- 8. Create your STARTER project (Page 74).

You have set the USB interface.

SINAMICS G120C converter

## Adapting the PROFINET interface

If you commission the inverter with STARTER via PROFINET, then you must correctly address your PC and allocate STARTER the interface via which it goes online with the inverter.

#### **Procedure**



To address the inverter, proceed as follows:

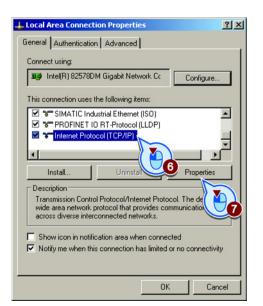
1. Establish the bus connection.

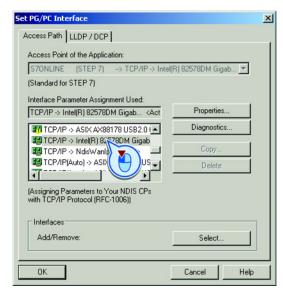
See Section Communication via PROFINET (Page 92))

- From the control panel, assign the IP address and the subnet mask address to your computer:
- 3. Go to "Start/Settings/Control Panel".
- 4. Select "Network Connections".
- Right-click to open the properties window of the LAN connection.
- In this window, select "Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)".
- 7. Select "Properties".
- 8. Set 192.168.0.100 as the IP address of the supervisor and 255.255.255.0 as subnet mask.

In the company network it is possible that the IP address and the subnet mask have different values. You can obtain these values from your network administrator.

- Open the SIMATIC Manager.
- 10. Assign the TCP/IP interface to "Intel(R) PRO/100 VE Network Connection" via "Tools/PG/PC interface".





You have allocated your computer the IP address and the address of the subnet mask, and defined the PC interface via which STARTER goes online with the inverter.

# 5.4.2.2 Generating a STARTER project

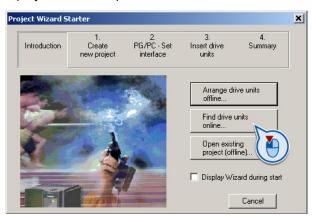
# Creating a STARTER project using project wizards



#### **Procedure**

To create a project with the STARTER project Wizards, proceed as follows:

- Using "Project / New with wizard" create a new project.
- 2. To start the wizard, click on "Search online for drive units ...".
- Follow the instructions of the Wizard, and set everything that you require for your particular project.



☐ My\_Project 1

Drive\_1

🚵 Insert single drive unit

🚊 👍 🚹 Control\_Unit

⊕ Documentation

Prive\_2

SINAMICS LIBRARIE

You have created your STARTER project.

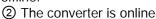
# 5.4.2.3 Go online and start wizard for basic commissioning



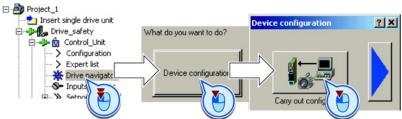
#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to start the basic commissioning online with the converter:

- 1. Select your project and go online: -
- 2. Select the device or the devices with which you wish to go online.
- 3. Download the hardware configuration found online in your project (PG or PC). STARTER shows you which converter it is accessing online and which offline:



- 3 The converter is offline
- 4. When you are online, double-click on "Control Unit".
- 5. Start the wizard for basic commissioning.



You are online and have started basic commissioning.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

74

# 5.4.2.4 Carry-out basic commissioning

# $\square$ <sup>1</sup>

#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to carry out basic commissioning:

 ■ Control structure Select the control mode.

See also Section: U/f control or speed control? (Page 62)

 ∑ Defaults of the setpoin Select the default setting of the converter interfaces.

See also Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces

(Page 43).

3. ✓ Drive setting Select the application for the converter:

Low overload for applications that only require a low dynamic

performance, e.g. pumps or fans.

High overload for applications requiring a high dynamic performance,

e.g. conveyor systems.

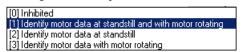
✓ Motor Select your motor.

5. Motor data Enter the motor data according to the rating plate of your motor.

If you have selected a motor based on its order number, the data has

already been entered.

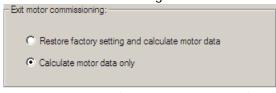
6. Drive functions If you have set the "Speed control" control mode, then we recommend setting "[1] Identify motor data at standstill and with motor rotating".



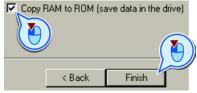
With this setting, the converter optimizes its speed controller.

If one of the following cases is applicable, select the setting "[2] Identify motor data at standstill":

- You have selected "Speed control" as control mode, however the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for mechanically limited traversing sections.
- You have set "V/f control" as control mode.
- 7. Important parameters Set the most important parameters to suit your application.
- 8. Calculation of the motor We recommend the setting "Calculate motor data only".



9. Set the check mark for "RAM to ROM (save data in the drive)" in order to save your data in the inverter so that it is not lost when the power fails.



Exit basic commissioning.

You have entered all of the data that is necessary for the basic commissioning of your inverter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

#### 5.4 Basic commissioning

# 5.4.2.5 Identifying motor data

#### **Preconditions**

- In the basic commissioning, you have selected the motor identification (MOT ID). In this
  case, after the basic commissioning has been completed, the converter issues the alarm
  A07991.
- The motor has cooled down to the ambient temperature.

If the motor is too hot, the motor data identification will provide incorrect values and the closed-loop speed control will become unstable.

# **⚠** DANGER

# Risk of injury or material damage as a result of machine movements when switching on the motor

Switching on the motor for identification purposes may result in hazardous machine movements.

Secure dangerous machine parts before starting motor data identification:

- Before switching on, check that no parts are loose on the machine or can be spun out.
- Before switching on, ensure that nobody is working on the machine or located within its working area.
- · Secure the machine's work area against unintended access.
- Lower hanging/suspended loads to the floor.

# $\square$ <sup>1</sup>

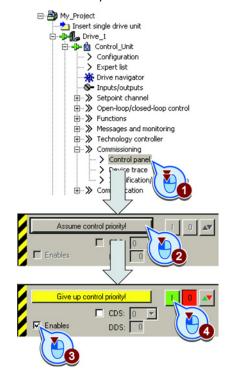
#### **Procedure**

To initiate motor data identification and optimization of the motor control, proceed as follows:

- Open by double-clicking on the control panel in STARTER.
- 2. Assume master control for the converter.
- 3. Set the "Enable signals"
- 4. Switch on the motor.

The converter starts the motor data identification. This measurement can take several minutes. After the measurement, the converter switches off the motor.

- Relinquish the master control after the motor data identification.
- 6. Click the Save (RAM to ROM) button.



You have now completed motor data identification.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

76

5.4 Basic commissioning

# Self-optimization of the closed-loop control

If you have also selected a rotating measurement with self-optimization of the speed control in addition to the motor data identification, then you must switch on the motor again as described above and wait for the optimization run to be completed.

5.4 Basic commissioning

Adapting the terminal strip

6

This chapter describes how you adapt the function of individual inputs and outputs of the inverter.

If you adapt the function of an input or output, you overwrite the settings made during the basic commissioning.

See also the following chapter:

- Basic commissioning (Page 66)
- Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43)
- Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 369)

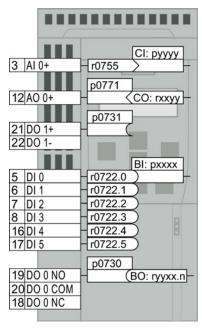


Figure 6-1 Internal connection of the inputs and outputs

# 6.1 Digital inputs

		BI: pxx	XX
5	DI 0	r0722.0 )	
6	DI 1	r0722.1	
7	DI 2	r0722.2	
8	DI 3	r0722.3	
16	DI 4	r0722.4	
	DI 5	r0722.5	

To change the function of a digital input, you must -interconnect the status parameter of the digital input with a binector input of your choice.

Binector inputs are marked with "BI" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Table 6-1 Binector inputs (BI) of the inverter (selection)

ВІ	Significance	ВІ	Significance
p0810	Command data set selection CDS bit 0	p1036	Motorized potentiometer, setpoint, lower
p0840	ON/OFF1	p1055	Jog bit 0
p0844	OFF2	p1056	Jog bit 1
p0848	OFF3	p1113	Setpoint inversion
p0852	Enable operation	p1201	Flying restart enable signal source
p0855	Unconditionally release holding brake	p2103	Acknowledge faults
p0856	Enable speed controller	p2106	External fault 1
p0858	Unconditionally close holding brake	p2112	External alarm 1
p1020	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0	p2200	Technology controller enable
p1021	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1	p3330	Two/three-wire control, control command 1
p1022	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 2	p3331	Two/three-wire control, control command 2
p1023	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 3	p3332	Two/three-wire control, control command 3
p1035	Motorized potentiometer, setpoint, raise		

A complete list of the binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

# Changing the function of a digital input

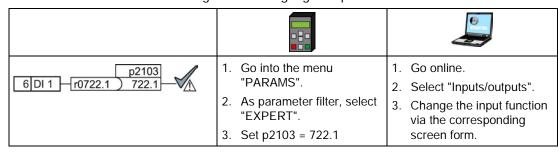
#### Example

You want to acknowledge inverter fault messages using digital input DI 1.

# Procedure



Proceed as follows to acknowledge faults using digital input DI 1:



You have interconnected digital input DI 1 with the command to acknowledge faults.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Page 80 of 404

# **Advanced settings**

You can debounce the digital input signal using parameter p0724.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2220 f of the List Manual.

# Analog input as digital input

When required, you can use the analog input as additional digital input.

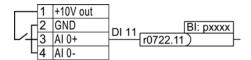


Figure 6-2 Additional digital input

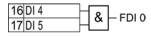
# 6.2 Fail-safe input

This manual describes the STO safety function with control via a fail-safe input. All other safety functions, further fail-safe digital inputs of the inverter and the control of the safety functions via PROFIsafe are described in the Safety Integrated Function Manual.

# Specifying the fail-safe input

If you use the STO safety function, then you must configure the terminal strip during the basic commissioning for a fail-safe input, e.g. with p0015 = 2 (see Section Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43)).

The inverter combines digital inputs DI 4 and DI 5 to form a fail-safe input.



You must enable STO to select the STO safety function via FDI 0. See also Section: Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO) (Page 261).

### What devices can be connected?

The fail-safe input is designed for the following devices:

- Connection of safety sensors, e.g. emergency stop command devices or light curtains.
- Connection of pre-processing safety relays, e.g. fail-safe controllers.

# Signal states at the fail-safe input

The inverter expects signals with the same state at its fail-safe input:

- High signal: The safety function is deselected.
- Low signal: The safety function is selected.

#### Special measures for wiring of a fail-safe input

The inverter evaluates deviations in the two signals of the fail-safe input. The inverter thus detects, for example the following faults:

- Cable break
- Defective sensor

The inverter cannot detect the following faults:

- Cross-circuit of the two cables
- Short-circuit between signal cable and 24 V power supply

You have the following options to reduce the risk of damaged cables during operation of your machine or plant:

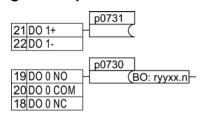
- Use shielded cables with grounded shield.
- Lay signal cables in steel pipes.

These special types of cable routing are normally required only if the cables are laid over larger distances, e.g. between remote control cabinets.

Examples of connecting a fail-safe input can be found in Section: Connecting fail-safe digital inputs (Page 391).

SINAMICS G120C converter

# 6.3 Digital outputs



To change the function of a digital output, you must interconnect the parameter of the digital output with a binector output of your choice.

Binector outputs are marked with "BO" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Table 6-2 Binector outputs (BO) of the inverter (selection)

0	Deactivating digital output	r0052.9	Process data control
r0052.0	Drive ready	r0052.10	f_actual >= p1082 (f_max)
r0052.1	Drive ready for operation	r0052.11	Alarm: Motor current/torque limit
r0052.2	Drive running	r0052.12	Brake active
r0052.3	Drive fault active	r0052.13	Motor overload
r0052.4	OFF2 active	r0052.14	Motor CW rotation
r0052.5	OFF3 active	r0052.15	Inverter overload
r0052.6	Closing lockout active	r0053.0	DC braking active
r0052.7	Drive alarm active	r0053.2	f_actual > p1080 (f_min)
r0052.8	Setpoint/actual value discrepancy	r0053.6	f_actual ≥ setpoint (f_setpoint)

The complete list of binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

## Changing the function of a digital output

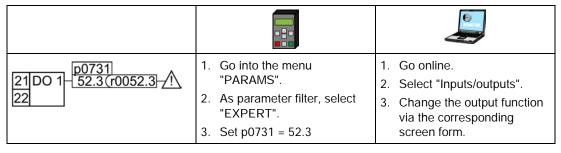
#### **Example**

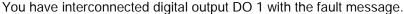
You want to output inverter fault messages using digital output DO 1.



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to interconnect digital output DO 1 with the fault message:





# Advanced settings

You can invert the signal of the digital output using parameter p0748.

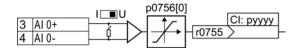
For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2230 f of the List Manual.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 6.4 Analog input

# 6.4 Analog input



Proceed as follows to change the function of an analog input:

- 1. Define the analog input type.
- 2. Adapt the characteristic of the analog input.
- 3. Adapt the internal interconnection of the analog input.

# Define the analog input type



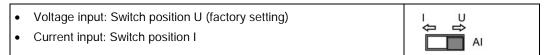
## **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to define the analog input type:

1. Set p0756 to the appropriate value.

AI 0	Unipolar voltage input	0 V +10 V	p0756[0] =	0
	Unipolar voltage input monitored	+2 V +10 V		1
	Unipolar current input	0 mA +20 mA		2
	Unipolar current input monitored	+4 mA +20 mA		3
	Bipolar voltage input	-10 V +10 V		4
	No sensor connected			8

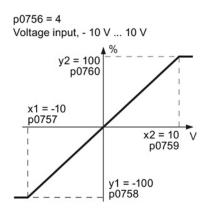
2. Set the switch associated with the analog input. The switch is on the converter behind the upper front door.



You have now defined the analog input type.

# Characteristics of the analog input

If you change the analog input type using p0756, then the inverter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog input. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0757, p0758) and (p0759, p0760). Parameters p0757 ... p0760 are assigned to an analog input via their index, e.g. parameters p0757[0] ... p0760[0] belong to analog input 0.



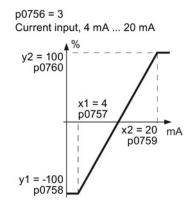


Figure 6-3 Examples for scaling characteristics

Parameter	Description
p0757	x-coordinate of 1st characteristic point [V or mA]
p0758	y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of p200x] p200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. p2000 is the reference speed
p0759	x-coordinate of 2nd characteristic point [V or mA]
p0760	y-coordinate of 2nd characteristic point [% of p200x]
p0761	Wire breakage monitoring response threshold

### Adapting the characteristic of the analog input

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

#### Example

The inverter should convert a 6 mA ... 12 mA signal into the value range -100 % ... 100 % via analog input 0. The wire break monitoring of the inverter should respond when 6 mA is fallen below.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to adapt the characteristic to match the example:

1. Set p0756[0] = 3

You have defined analog input 0 as current input with wire break monitoring.

After the change p0756 = 3, the inverter sets the scaling characteristic to the following values (see the example above for the scaling characteristic):

p0757[0] = 4,0; p0758[0] = 0,0; p0759[0] = 20; p0760[0] = 100

SINAMICS G120C converter

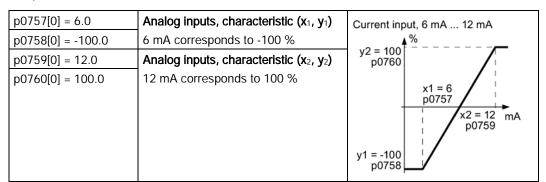
Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 6.4 Analog input

2. Set DIP switch for AI 0 to current input ("I"):



3. Adapt the characteristic:



You have adapted the characteristic of the analog input to match the example.

# Internal interconnection of the analog input

You define the analog input function by interconnecting a connector input of your choice with parameter p0755. Parameter p0755 is assigned to the particular analog input via its index, e.g. parameter p0755[0] is assigned to analog input 0.

Table 6-3 Connector inputs (CI) of the inverter (selection)

CI	Significance	CI	Significance
p1070	Main setpoint	p1522	Torque limit, upper
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	p2253	Technology controller setpoint 1
p1503	Torque setpoint	p2264	Technology controller actual value
p1511	Supplementary torque 1		

A complete list of the connector inputs is provided in the List Manual.

# Adapting the internal interconnection of the analog input

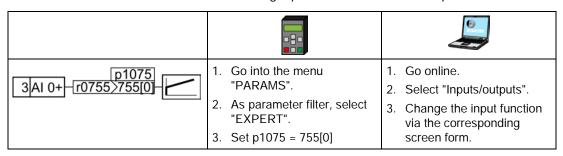
# Example

The inverter should receive the additional setpoint via analog input Al 0.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to interconnect the analog input with the additional setpoint:



You have interconnected the analog input with the additional setpoint.

## Skip frequency band

Interferences in the cable can corrupt small signals of a few millivolts. To be able to enter a setpoint of exactly 0 V via an analog input, you must specify a skip frequency band.

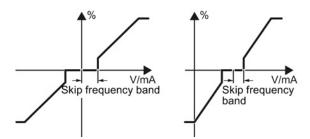
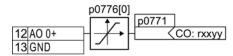


Figure 6-4 Skip frequency band of the analog input

p0764[0]	Skip frequency band of the analog input Al 0 (factory setting: 0)

# 6.5 Analog output



Proceed as follows to change the function of an analog output:

- 1. Define the analog output type.
- 2. Set the characteristic of the analog output.
- 3. Adapt the internal interconnection of the analog output.

# Define the analog output type

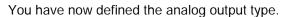


#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to define the analog output type:

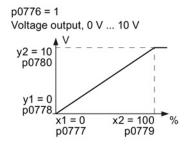
Set parameter p0776 to the appropriate value:

Current output (factory setting)	0 mA +20 mA	p0776[0] =	0
Voltage output	0 V +10 V		1
Current output	+4 mA +20 mA		2



# Characteristics of the analog output

If you change the analog output type, then the inverter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog output. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0777, p0778) and (p0779, p0780).



p0776 = 2 Current output, 4 mA ... 20 mA y2 = 20 mA y1 = 4 p0778 x1 = 0 x2 = 100 % p0777 p0779

Figure 6-5 Examples for scaling characteristics

Parameters p0777 ... p0780 are assigned to an analog output via their index, e.g. parameters p0777[0] ... p0770[0] belong to analog output 0.

Table 6-4 Parameters for the scaling characteristic

Parameter	Description	
p0777	X coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of p200x]	
	p200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. p2000 is the reference speed.	
p0778	Y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [V or mA]	
p0779	X coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [% of p200x]	
p0780	Y coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [V or mA]	

SINAMICS G120C converter

88

# Setting the characteristic of the analog output

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

#### Example:

The inverter should convert a signal in the value range -100% ... 100% into a 6 mA ... 12 mA output signal via analog output 0.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to adapt the characteristic to match the example:

1. Set p0776[0] = 2.

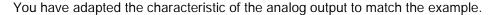
You have defined analog output 0 as current output.

After changing p0776 = 2, the inverter sets the scaling characteristic parameters to the following values:

$$p0777[0] = 0.0$$
;  $p0778[0] = 4.0$ ;  $p0779[0] = 100.0$ ;  $p0780[0] = 20.0$ 

2. Adapt the characteristic:

p0777[0] = 0.0	Analog output, characteristic (x <sub>1</sub> , y <sub>1</sub> )	Current output, 6 mA 12 mA
p0778[0] = 6.0	0.0% corresponds to 6 mA	y2 = 12 mA
p0779[0] = 100.0	Analog output, characteristic (x2, y2)	p0780
p0780[0] = 12.0	100% corresponds to 12 mA	v1 = 6
		p0778
		x1 = 0



## Internal interconnection of the analog output

You define the analog output function by interconnecting parameter p0771 with a connector output of your choice. Parameter p0771 is assigned to the particular analog input via its index, e.g. parameter p0771[0] is assigned to analog output 0.

Table 6-5 Connector outputs (CO) of the inverter (selection)

СО	Significance	со	Significance
r0021	Actual frequency	r0026	Actual DC-link voltage
r0024	Output actual frequency	r0027	Output current
r0025	Output actual frequency		

A complete list of the connector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 9572 f of the List Manual.

## 6.5 Analog output

# Adapting the internal interconnection of the analog output

## Example

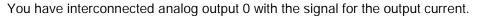
You wish to output the inverter output current via analog output 0.

## **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to interconnect analog output 0 with the signal for the output current:

12AO 0+ 27 <r0027- i < th=""><td><ol> <li>Go into the menu "PARAMS".</li> <li>As parameter filter, select "EXPERT".</li> <li>Set p0771 = 27</li> </ol></td><td><ol> <li>Go online.</li> <li>Select "Inputs/outputs".</li> <li>Change the output function via the corresponding screen form.</li> </ol></td></r0027- i <>	<ol> <li>Go into the menu "PARAMS".</li> <li>As parameter filter, select "EXPERT".</li> <li>Set p0771 = 27</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Go online.</li> <li>Select "Inputs/outputs".</li> <li>Change the output function via the corresponding screen form.</li> </ol>



# Advanced settings

You can manipulate the signal that you output via an analog output, as follows:

- Absolute-value generation of the signal (p0775)
- Signal inversion (p0782)

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Configuring the fieldbus

# Fieldbus interfaces of the converter

The converter is available in different versions for communication with higher-level controls with the subsequently listed fieldbus interfaces:

Fieldbus	Interface	Profile
PROFIBUS DP (Page 95)	SUB D female connector	PROFIdrive and PROFIsafe <sup>1</sup>
PROFINET IO (Page 92)	Two RJ45 connectors	-
EtherNet/IP (Page 118)	Two RJ45 connectors	-
USS (Page 132)	RS485 connector	-
Modbus RTU (Page 143)	RS485 connector	-
CANopen (Page 154)	SUB D male connector	-
	<sup>1</sup> You find information on PROFIsafe in the Function Manual Safety Integrated, see also section: Manuals for your inverter (Page 395).	

# 7.1 Communication via PROFINET

The Control Unit provides the following functions

IRT without isochronous mode

MRP
 Media redundancy, not bumpless with 200 ms

Precondition: Ring topology

MRPD Media redundancy, bumpless

Precondition: IRT and the ring topology created in the

control

Diagnostic alarms
 According to error classes specified in the PROFIdrive

profile. See Activate diagnostic messages via STEP 7

(Page 380).

 Device replacement without removable data storage medium Precondition: Topology created in the control

Shared Device Only for Control Units with fail-safe functions (see

Safety Function Manual)

The Control Units have two RJ45 sockets, which you can use to implement a line topology. You can implement all topologies by using switches.

#### Additional information on PROFINET in the Internet

General information about PROFINET can be found at Industrial Communication (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127).

The configuration of the functions is described in the PROFINET system description (<a href="http://www.automation.siemens.com/mcms/automation/en/industrial-communications/profinet/Pages/Default.aspx">http://www.automation.siemens.com/mcms/automation/en/industrial-communications/profinet/Pages/Default.aspx</a>) manual.

# 7.1.1 What do you need for communication via PROFINET?

Check the communication settings using the following table. If you answer "Yes" to the questions, you have correctly set the communication settings and can control the converter via the fieldbus.

Questions	Answer/description	Example
Is the converter correctly connected to the PROFINET?	See: Connect the converter to PROFINET (Page 93)	
Do the IP address and device name in the converter and controller match?	See Configuring communication to the control (Page 94)	See Configuring the controller and converter in HW Config (Page 376)
Is the same telegram set in the converter as in the higher-level controller?	Set the telegram in the converter, see: Select telegram – procedure (Page 94)	See: Configuring the controller and converter in HW Config (Page 376)
Are the signals that the converter and the controller exchange via PROFINET correctly interconnected?	PROFIdrive-compliant interconnection in the converter, see: PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET (Page 99)	See: STEP 7 programming examples (Page 382)

Page 92 of 404

#### 7.1.2 Connect the converter to PROFINET

# Connecting up

Connect the inverter (IO device) and your PG/PC (IO supervisor) via PROFINET cables with the control. The maximum permissible cable length is 100 m.

See also Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).

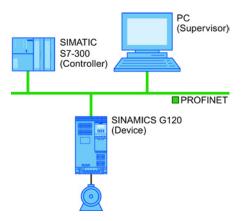


Figure 7-1 Example: PROFINET in a line topology

#### Recommended PROFINET connectors and pin assignment

We recommend the following connector with order number: 6GK1901-1BB10-2Ax0 for connecting the PROFINET cable.

Instructions for assembling the SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RF45 Plug 180 can be found on the Internet under product information " "Assembly instructions for SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RJ45 Plug (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/37217116/133300)".

#### Laying and shielding the PROFINET cable

Information can be found on the Internet: PROFIBUS user organization installation guidelines (<a href="http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/">http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/</a>).

# Communication with the controller, even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You must supply the Control Unit with 24 V DC at terminals 31 and 32 if you wish to maintain communication with the control system when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of short interruptions of the 24 V voltage supply, the inverter may report a fault without communications with the controller being interrupted.

# 7.1.3 Configuring communication to the control

# Loading GSDML

In order to establish communication between the inverter and control system via PROFINET, you need the device file of the inverter "GSDML" for your control. You can then configure the communication.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to load the GSDML of the inverter:

Load the GSDML of the inverter into the PROFINET-Controller, i.e. into your control system. You can load the GSDML of your inverter in two ways:

- You can find the GSDML of the SINAMICS inverter on the Internet (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133100).
- The GSDML is saved in the inverter. If you insert the memory card in the inverter and set p0804 = 12, the GSDML will be written to the /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG folder on the memory card as a compressed file (PNGSD.ZIP).

Unpack the GSDML before you use the device file.

You have loaded the GSDML of the inverter.

# 7.1.4 Select telegram – procedure

#### Precondition

In the basic commissioning, you have selected a setting with fieldbus.

See also Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to set a specific telegram in the inverter:

Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 to the appropriate value.

You have set a specific telegram in the inverter.

Parameter	Descrip	Description		
p0015	Configu	Macro drive unit Configure the interface in basic commissioning, and select a telegram. See also the ection: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).		
p0922	PROFIC	drive Telegram selection		
	Set the	send and receive telegram, see also Cyclic communication (Page 99)		
	1: 20:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 (factory setting) Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6		
	352	SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6		
	353:	SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4		
	354:	SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4		
	999:	See Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 103).		

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 7.1.5 Activating diagnostics via the control

The converter provides the functionality to transmit fault and alarm messages (diagnostic messages) to the higher-level control according to the PROFIdrive error classes.

The functionality must be selected in the higher-level control (see example of STEP 7 (Page 380)) and activated by powering up.

# 7.2 Communication via PROFIBUS

# 7.2.1 What do you need for communication via PROFIBUS?

Check the communication settings using the following table. If you answer "Yes" to the questions, you have correctly set the communication settings and can control the inverter via the fieldbus.

Questions	Description	Examples
Is the inverter correctly connected to the PROFIBUS?	See Section: Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS (Page 96).	
Have you configured the communication between the inverter and the higher-level controller?	See Section: Configuring communication to the control (Page 96)	See also Section: Configuring the PROFIBUS communication with
Do the addresses in the inverter and the higher-level controller match?	See Section: Setting the address (Page 97).	STEP 7 (Page 372).
Is the same telegram set in the higher-level controller and in the inverter?	Adapt the telegram in the inverter. See Section: Select telegram – procedure (Page 98).	
Are the signals that the inverter and the controller exchange via PROFIBUS correctly interconnected?	Adapt the interconnection of the signals in the controller to the inverter. For the PROFIdrive-compliant interconnection in the inverter, see also Section: PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET (Page 99).	See also Section: STEP 7 programming examples (Page 382).

# 7.2.2 Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS

# Permissible cable lengths, routing and shielding the PROFIBUS cable

For a data transfer rate of 1 Mbit/s, the maximum permissible cable length is 100 m.

You will find additional information on this topic in the Internet:

- Product support (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/1971286)
- PROFIBUS user organization installation guidelines (http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/)

#### Recommended PROFIBUS connectors

We recommend connectors with the following order numbers for connecting the PROFIBUS cable:

- 6GK1500-0FC00
- 6GK1500-0EA02

#### Pin assignment at the inverter

For the pin assignment at the inverter refer to Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).

# Communication with the controller, even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You must supply the Control Unit with 24 V DC at terminals 31 and 32 if you wish to maintain communication with the control system when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of short interruptions of the 24 V voltage supply, the inverter may report a fault without communications with the controller being interrupted.

# 7.2.3 Configuring communication to the control

To configure communication between the inverter and control system, you generally require the description file GSD of the inverter.

When STEP 7 and STARTER are installed, you do not need GSD.



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to configure communication to the control system using GSD:

- 1. Obtain the GSD file of the inverter. You have two options:
  - You can find the GSD of the SINAMICS inverter on the Internet (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133100).
  - The GSD is saved in the inverter. If you insert the memory card in the inverter and set p0804 = 12, the inverter writes the GSD to the /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG folder on the memory card.

SINAMICS G120C converter

96

- 2. Import the GSD into the configuring tool of your control system.
- Configure the communication between the control and the inverter in your control.
   See also Section: Configuring the PROFIBUS communication with STEP 7 (Page 372).

You have configured the communication to the control system.

# 7.2.4 Setting the address

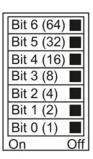
You set the PROFIBUS address of the inverter using the address switch on the Control Unit, using parameter p0918 or in STARTER.

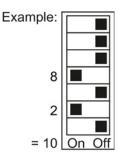
Using parameter p0918 (factory setting: 126) or using STARTER, you can only set the address, if all address switches are set to "OFF" (0) or "ON" (1).

If you have specified a valid address using the address switches, this address will always be the one that takes effect and parameter p0918 cannot be changed.

Valid address range: 1 ... 125

The positions of the address switches are described in Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).







#### **Procedure**

To change the bus address, proceed as follows:

- 1. Set the address using one of the subsequently listed options:
  - using the address switches
  - with an operator panel using p0918
  - in STARTER using screen form "Control Unit/Communication/Fieldbus", or using the expert list with p0918
- 2. Switch on the inverter power supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit.
- 3. Switch on the voltages again after all LEDs at the inverter have gone dark.

This means that you have changed the bus address.

# 7.2.5 Select telegram – procedure

## Precondition

In the basic commissioning, you have selected a setting with fieldbus.

See also Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to set a specific telegram in the inverter:

Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 to the appropriate value.

You have set a specific telegram in the inverter.

Parameter	Descrip	Description		
p0015	Configu	acro drive unit onfigure the interface in basic commissioning, and select a telegram. See also the ction: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).		
p0922	PROFI	Fldrive Telegram selection		
	Set the	send and receive telegram, see also Cyclic communication (Page 99)		
	1: 20:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 (factory setting)		
	352	Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6		
	353:	SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4		
	354:	SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4		
	999:	See Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 103).		

# 7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

# 7.3.1 Cyclic communication

The send and receive telegrams of the converter for cyclic communication are structured as follows:

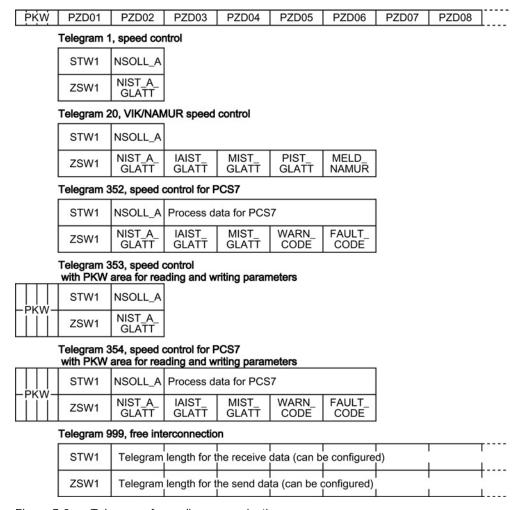


Figure 7-2 Telegrams for cyclic communication

Table 7-1 Explanation of the abbreviations

Abbreviation	Explanation	Abbreviation	Explanation
STW1/2	Control word 1/2	PIST_GLATT	Actual active power
ZSW1/2	Status word 1/2	M_LIM	Torque limit
NSOLL_A	Speed setpoint	FAULT_CODE	Fault number
NIST_A_GLATT	Smoothed actual speed value	WARN_CODE	Alarm number
IAIST_GLATT	Smoothed actual current value	MELD_NAMUR	Fault word according to the
MIST_GLATT	Actual torque		VIK-NAMUR definition

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## Interconnection of the process data

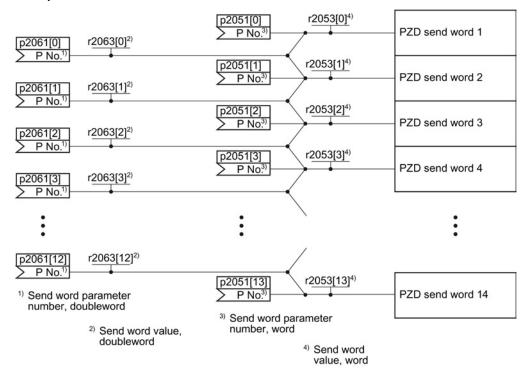


Figure 7-3 Interconnection of the send words

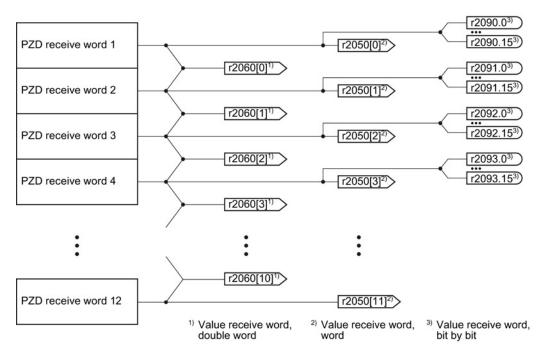


Figure 7-4 Interconnection of the receive words

The telegrams use - with the exception of telegram 999 (free interconnection via BICO) - the word by word transfer of send and receive data (r2050/p2051).

SINAMICS G120C converter

If you require an individual telegram for your application (e.g. for transferring double words), you can adapt one of the predefined telegrams via parameters p0922 and p2079. For details, please refer to the List Manual, function diagrams 2420 and 2472.

# 7.3.1.1 Control and status word 1

The control and status words fulfill the specifications of PROFIdrive profile version 4.1 for the "closed-loop speed controlled" mode.

# Control word 1 (STW1)

Control word 1 (bits 0 ... 10 in accordance with PROFIdrive profile and VIK/NAMUR, bits 11 ... 15 specific to the inverter).

Bit	Bit Significance		Explanation	Signal	
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		interconnection in the inverter	
0	0 = OFF1		The motor brakes with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator. The inverter switches off the motor at standstill.	p0840[0] = r2090.0	
	0 → 1 = ON		The inverter goes into the "ready" state. If, in addition bit 3 = 1, then the inverter switches on the motor.		
1	0 = OFF2		Switch off the motor immediately, the motor then coasts down to a standstill.	p0844[0] = r2090.1	
	1 = No OFF2		The motor can be switched on (ON command).		
2	0 = Quick stop (C	OFF3)	Quick stop: The motor brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time p1135 down to standstill.	p0848[0] = r2090.2	
	1 = No quick stop (OFF3)  The motor can be switched on (ON command).				
3	0 = Inhibit operation		Immediately switch-off motor (cancel pulses).	p0852[0] =	
	1 = Enable operation		Switch-on motor (pulses can be enabled).	r2090.3	
4	0 = Disable RFG		The inverter immediately sets its ramp-function generator output to 0.	p1140[0] = r2090.4	
	1 = Do not disable RFG		The ramp-function generator can be enabled.		
5	0 = Stop RFG		The output of the ramp-function generator stops at the actual value.	p1141[0] = r2090.5	
1 = Enable RFG  The output of the ramp-function generator follow setpoint.		The output of the ramp-function generator follows the setpoint.			
6	0 = Inhibit setpoint		The inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator.	p1142[0] = r2090.6	
	1 = Enable setpo	pint	Motor accelerates with the ramp-up time p1120 to the setpoint.		
7	0 → 1 = Acknowledge faults		Acknowledge fault. If the ON command is still active, the inverter switches to "closing lockout" state.	p2103[0] = r2090.7	
8, 9	9 Reserved				
10	0 = No control via	a PLC	Inverter ignores the process data from the fieldbus.	p0854[0] =	
	1 = Control via P	LC	Control via fieldbus, inverter accepts the process data from the fieldbus.	r2090.10	

# 7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

Bit	Significance		Explanation	Signal
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		interconnection in the inverter
11	1)	0 = Direction reversal	Invert setpoint in the inverter.	p1113[0] = r2090.11
12	Not used			
13	1)	1 = MOP up	Increase the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1035[0] = r2090.13
14	1)	1 = MOP down	Reduce the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1036[0] = r2090.14
15	CDS bit 0	Reserved	Changes over between settings for different operation interfaces (command data sets).	p0810 = r2090.15

<sup>1)</sup> If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

# Status word 1 (ZSW1)

Status word 1 (bits 0 ... 10 in accordance with PROFIdrive profile and VIK/NAMUR, bits 11 ... 15 specific to the inverter).

Bit	Significance		Comments	Signal
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		interconnection in the inverter
0	1 = Ready to start		Power supply switched on; electronics initialized; pulses locked.	p2080[0] = r0899.0
1	1 = Ready		Motor is switched on (ON/OFF1 = 1), no fault is active. With the command "Enable operation" (STW1.3), the inverter switches on the motor.	p2080[1] = r0899.1
2	1 = Operation ena	abled	Motor follows setpoint. See control word 1, bit 3.	p2080[2] = r0899.2
3	1 = Fault active		The inverter has a fault. Acknowledge fault using STW1.7.	p2080[3] = r2139.3
4	1 = OFF2 inactive		Coast down to standstill is not active.	p2080[4] = r0899.4
5	1 = OFF3 inactive		Quick stop is not active.	p2080[5] = r0899.5
6	1 = Closing lockout active		It is only possible to switch on the motor after an OFF1 followed by ON.	p2080[6] = r0899.6
7	1 = Alarm active		Motor remains switched on; no acknowledgement is necessary.	p2080[7] = r2139.7
8	1 = Speed deviation within the tolerance range		Setpoint / actual value deviation within the tolerance range.	p2080[8] = r2197.7
9	1 = Master control requested		The automation system is requested to accept the inverter control.	p2080[9] = r0899.9
10	1 = Comparison speed reached or exceeded		Speed is greater than or equal to the corresponding maximum speed.	p2080[10] = r2199.1
11	0 = I, M or P limit reached		Comparison value for current, torque or power has been reached or exceeded.	p2080[11] = r1407.7

Bit	Significance		Comments	Signal
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		interconnection in the inverter
12	1)	1 = Holding brake open	Signal to open and close a motor holding brake.	p2080[12] = r0899.12
13	3 0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature			p2080[13] = r2135.14
14	1 = Motor rotates clockwise		Internal inverter actual value > 0	p2080[14] =
	0 = Motor rotates	counterclockwise	Internal inverter actual value < 0	r2197.3
15	1 = CDS display	0 = Alarm, inverter thermal overload		p2080[15] = r0836.0 / r2135.15

<sup>1)</sup> If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

# 7.3.1.2 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection

When you have selected a telegram, the converter interconnects the corresponding signals with the fieldbus interface. Generally, these interconnections are protected so that they cannot be changed. With the appropriate converter settings, these interconnections can be changed.

# Extend telegram

Every telegram can be extended by "attaching" additional signals.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to extend a telegram:

- 1. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 = 999.
- 2. Set parameter p2079 to the appropriate value of the corresponding telegram.
- 3. Interconnect additional PZD send words and PZD receive words with signals of your choice via parameters r2050 and p2051.

You have extended the telegram.

Parameter	Descr	Description		
p0922	PROF	PROFIdrive telegram selection		
	999:	Free telegram configuration		
p2079	PROF	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended		
	1: Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 20: Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 352: SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6 353: SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4 354: SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4			

### 7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

Parameter	Description
r2050[011]	PROFIdrive PZD receive word Connector output to interconnect the PZD (setpoints) in the word format received from the PROFIdrive controller.
p2051[011]	PROFIdrive PZD send word Selection of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive controller.

Selection of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive controller. For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

# Freely selecting the signal interconnection of the telegram

The signals in the telegram can be freely interconnected.



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to change the signal interconnection of a telegram:

- 1. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p0922 = 999.
- 2. Using STARTER or an operator panel, set parameter p2079 = 999.
- 3. Interconnect additional PZD send words and PZD receive words with signals of your choice via parameters r2050 and p2051.

You have freely interconnected the signals transferred in the telegram.

Parameters	Description					
p0922	PROFIdrive telegram selection					
	999: Free telegram configuration					
p2079	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended					
	999:	Free telegram configuration				
r2050[011]	PROFIdrive PZD receive word  Connector output to interconnect the PZD (setpoints) in the word format received from the PROFIdrive controller.					
p2051[011]		Fldrive PZD send word tion of the PZD (actual values) in the word format to be sent to the PROFIdrive oller.				

For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

Q-Pulse Id

# 7.3.1.3 Structure of the parameter channel

## Structure of the parameter channel

The parameter channel consists of four words. 1. and 2nd word transfer the parameter number and index as well as the type of job (read or write) The 3rd and 4th word contains the parameter contents. The parameter contents can be 16-bit values (such as baud rate) or 32-bit values (e.g. CO parameters).

Bit 11 in the 1st word is reserved and is always assigned 0.

Parameter channel									
PKE (1st word) IND (2nd word) PWE (3rd and 4th word)									
15 12 11	10 0	15 8	7 0	15 0	15 0				
AK S	PNU	Subindex	Page index	PWE 1	PWE 2				
М									

You can find examples of telegrams at the end of this section.

# Request and response IDs

Bits 12 to 15 of the first word of the parameter channel contain the request and response identifier. The possible identifiers and further explanations can be found in the following tables.

#### Overview of the request identifiers controller → inverter

Request	Description	Response identifier		
identifier		positive	negative	
0	No request	0	7/8	
1	Request parameter value	1/2	7/8	
2	Change parameter value (word)	1	7/8	
3	Change parameter value (double word)	2	7/8	
4	Request descriptive element 1)	3	7/8	
6 <sup>2)</sup>	Request parameter value (field) 1)	4/5	7/8	
72)	Change parameter value (field, word) 1)	4	7/8	
82)	Change parameter value (field, double word) 1)	5	7/8	
9	Request number of field elements	6	7/8	

<sup>1)</sup> The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

Active 17/06/2014

The following request IDs are identical: 1 = 6, 2 = 7 3 = 8. We recommend that you use identifiers 6, 7, and 8.

# Overview of the response identifiers inverter → controller

The response identifier depends on the request identifier.

Response identifier	Description
0	No response
1	Transfer parameter value (word)
2	Transfer parameter value (double word)
3	Transfer descriptive element 1)
4	Transfer parameter value (field, word) 2)
5	Transfer parameter value (field, double word) 2)
6	Transfer number of field elements
7	Inverter cannot process the request (with error number)
8	No master controller status / no authorization to change parameters of the parameter channel interface

- 1) The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).
- 2) The required element of the indexed parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

# Overview of the error numbers in response identifier 7 (inverter cannot process the request)

For response identifier 7, the inverter sends one of the following error numbers in the highest word of the parameter channel to the controller.

No.	Description
00 hex	Illegal parameter number (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	Parameter value cannot be changed (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	Lower or upper value limit exceeded (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	Incorrect subindex (access to a subindex that does not exist.)
04 hex	No array (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	<b>Incorrect data type</b> (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	<b>Setting not permitted, only resetting</b> (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	<b>Descriptive element cannot be changed</b> (change request to a descriptive element error value that cannot be changed)
0B hex	No master control (change request but with no master control, see also p0927.)
0C hex	Keyword missing
11 hex	Request cannot be executed due to the operating state (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	<b>Inadmissible value</b> (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)
65 hex	Parameter number is currently deactivated (depending on the mode of the inverter)
66 hex	Channel width is insufficient (communication channel is too small for response)
68 hex	Illegal parameter value (parameter can only assume certain values)
6A hex	Request not included / task is not supported (the valid request identifications can be found in table "Request identifications controller → inverter")

Page 106 of 404

No.	Description
6B hex	No change access for a controller that is enabled. (operating status of the inverter prevents a parameter change)
86 hex	Write access only for commissioning (p0010 = 15) (operating status of the inverter prevents a parameter change)
87 hex	Know-how protection active, access locked
C8 hex	Change request below the currently valid limit (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	Change request above the currently valid limit (example: a parameter value is too large for the inverter power)
CC hex	Change request not permitted (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

# Offset and page index of the parameter numbers

Parameter numbers < 2000 PNU = parameter number.

Write the parameter number into the PNU (PKE bit 10 ... 0).

Parameter numbers ≥ 2000 PNU = parameter number - offset.

Write the parameter number minus the offset into the PNU

(PKE bit 10 ... 0).

Write the offset in the page index (IND bit  $7 \dots 0$ ).

Parameter number	Offset	Page index								
		Hex	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0000 1999	0	0 hex	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2000 3999	2000	80 hex	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6000 7999	6000	90 hex	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8000 9999	8000	20 hex	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
10000 11999	10000	A0 hex	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
20000 21999	20000	50 hex	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
30000 31999	30000	F0 hex	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
60000 61999	60000	74 hex	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0

# **Indexed parameters**

For indexed parameters, you must write the index as hex value into the subindex (IND bit  $15 \dots 8$ ).

#### 7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

#### Parameter contents

Parameter contents can be parameter values or connector parameters. For interconnecting connector parameters please see section: Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 369).

Enter the parameter value, right-justified, as follows in the 4th word of the parameter channel:

• 8-bit values: 4. Word, bit 0 ... 7,

bits 8 ... 15 of the 4th word and the 3rd word are zero.

• 16-bit values: 4. Word, bits 0 ... 15, The 3rd word is zero.

• 32-bit values: 3. and 4th word

Enter a connector parameter as follows:

• Number of the connector parameter: 3. Word

• Drive object of the connector parameter: 4. Word, bits 10 ... 15

• The index or bit field number of the connector parameter: 4. Word, bits 0 ... 9

# Telegram examples

# Read request: Read out serial number of the Power Module (p7841[2])

To obtain the value of the indexed parameter p7841, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel with the following data:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 6 (request parameter value (field))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 1841 (Parameter number without offset)
   Parameter number = PNU + offset (page index)
   (7841 = 1841 + 6000)
- IND, bit 8 ... 15 (subindex): = 2 (Index of the parameter)
- Because you want to read the parameter value, words 3 and 4 in the parameter channel for requesting the parameter value are irrelevant. They should be assigned a value of 0, for example.

Parameter channel									
F	PKE, 1st word IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word								
15 12 11	10 0	15 8	7 0	15 0	15 10	9 0			
AK	Parameter number	arameter number Subindex Page index		Parameter value	Drive object Index				
0 1 1 0 0	11100110001	00000010	10010000	000000000000000000	000000	0000000000			

Figure 7-5 Telegram for a read request from p7841[2]

### Write request: Assign digital input 2 with the function ON/OFF1 (p0840[1] = 722.2)

In order to link digital input 2 with OFF1/ON, you must assign parameter p0840[1] (source, ON/OFF1) the value 722.2 (DI 2). To do this, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel as follows:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 7 hex (change, parameter value (field, word))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 348 hex (840 = 348 hex, no offset, as 840 < 1999)
- IND bit 8 ... 15 (subindex): = 1 hex (CDS1 = index1)
- PWE1, bit 0 ... 15: = 2D2 hex (722 = 2D2 hex)
- PWE2, bit 10 ... 15: = 3f hex (drive object for SINAMICS G120, always 63 = 3f hex)
- PWE2, bit 0 ... 9: = 2 hex (index of parameter (DI 2 = 2))

	Parameter channel						
F	PKE, 1st word IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word						
15 12 11	15 12 11 10 0 15 8 7		7 0	15 0	15 10 9 0		
AK	Parameter number	Subindex	Page index	Parameter value	Drive Object Index		
0 1 1 1 0	0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0	00000001	00000000	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0	1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0		

Figure 7-6 Telegram, to assign DI 2 with ON/OFF1

### Write request: Change restart mode (p1210)

The restart mode is inhibited in the factory setting (p1210 = 0). In order to activate the automatic restart with "acknowledge all faults and restart for an ON command", p1210 must be set to 26:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 7 (change parameter value (field, word))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 4BA hex (1210 = 4BA hex, no offset, as 1210 < 1999)
- IND, bit 8 ... 15 (subindex): = 0 hex (parameter is not indexed)
- IND, bit 0 ... 7 (page index): = 0 hex (offset 0 corresponds to 0 hex)
- PWE1, bit 0 ... 15: = 0 hex
- PWE2, bit 0 ... 15: = 1A hex (26 = 1A hex)

Parameter channel						
F	PKE, 1st word IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word					
15 12 11	5 12 11 10 0 15 8 7 0		15 0	15 0		
AK	Parameter number	Subindex	Page index	Parameter value (bit 16 31)	Parameter value (bit 0 15)	
0 1 1 1 0	0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0					

Figure 7-7 Telegram, to activate the automatic restart with p1210 = 26

### Other application examples

See also: Reading and writing parameters via PROFIBUS (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/8894584).

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

#### 7.3.1.4 Slave-to-slave communication

"Direct data exchange" is sometimes called "slave-to-slave communication" or "data exchange broadcast". Here, slaves exchange data without any direct involvement of the master.

Example: An inverter uses the actual speed value of another inverter as its speed setpoint.

#### **Definitions**

- Publisher: Slave, which sends data for direct data exchange.
- Subscriber: Slave, which receives the data for direct data exchange from the publisher.
- Links and access points define the data that is used for direct data exchange.

#### Restrictions

- Direct data exchange in the current firmware version is only possible for inverters with PROFIBUS communication.
- A maximum of 12 PZDs are permissible for each drive.
- To a publisher, a maximum of 4 links are possible.

#### **Procedure**



To configure direct data exchange, proceed as follows:

- 1. In the control, define:
  - Which inverters operate as publisher (sender) or subscriber (receiver)?
  - Which data or data areas do you use for direct data exchange?
- 2. In the inverter, define:

How does the subscriber process the data transferred using direct data exchange?

You have configured direct data exchange.

See also Section: Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7 (Page 389).

# 7.3.2 Acyclic communication

You can communicate with the inverter both cyclically and acyclically via PROFIBUS and PROFINET.

The inverter supports the following types of acyclic communication:

- Reading and writing parameters via "data set 47" (up to 240 bytes per write or read request)
- Reading-out profile-specific parameters
- Data exchange with a SIMATIC panel (Human Machine Interface)

You can find a STEP 7 program example for acyclic data transfer in Section Application examples (Page 372).

Page 110 of 404

# Reading parameter values

Table 7- 2 Request to read parameters

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference 01 hex FF hex	01 hex: Read request	
	01 hex	Number of parameters (m) 01 hex 27 hex	2
Address, parameter 1	Attribute  10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes 00 hex EA hex	4
	20 hex: Parameter description	(for parameters without index: 00 hex)	
	Parameter number 0001 hex FFFF hex		6
	Number of the 1st index 0000 hex FFFF hex (for parameters without index: 0000 hex)		
Address, parameter 2			
Address, parameter m			

Table 7-3 Inverter response to a read request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference (identical to a read request)	<ul><li>01 hex: Inverter has executed the read request.</li><li>81 hex: Inverter was not able to completely execute the read request.</li></ul>	0
	01 hex	Number of parameters (m) (identical to the read request)	2
Values, parameter 1	Format  02 hex: Integer8  03 hex: Integer16  04 hex: Integer32  05 hex: Unsigned8  06 hex: Unsigned16  07 hex: Unsigned32  08 hex: FloatingPoint  10 hex OctetString  13 hex TimeDifference  41 hex: Byte  42 hex: Word  43 hex: Double word  44 hex: Error	Number of index values or - for a negative response - number of error values	4
	Value of the 1st index or - for a negative region of the 1st index or - for a negative region of the 1st index or - for a negative region.		6
Values, parameter 2			
Values, parameter m			

# 7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

# Changing parameter values

Table 7- 4 Request to change parameters

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference 01 hex FF hex	02 hex: Change request	0
	01 hex	Number of parameters (m) 01 hex 27 hex	2
Address, parameter 1	10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes 00 hex EA hex (00 hex and 01 hex have the same significance)	4
	Parameter number 0001 hex FFFF hex	,	6
	Number of the 1st index 0001 hex FFF	F hex	8
Address, parameter 2			
Address, parameter m			
Values, parameter 1	Format 02 hex: Integer 8 03 hex: Integer 16 04 hex: Integer 32 05 hex: Unsigned 8 06 hex: Unsigned 16 07 hex: Unsigned 32 08 hex: Floating Point 10 hex Octet String 13 hex Time Difference 41 hex: Byte 42 hex: Word 43 hex: Double word  Value of the 1st index	Number of index values 00 hex EA hex	
			$\Box$
Values, parameter 2			
Values, parameter m			

Table 7-5 Response, if the inverter has executed the change request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference (identical to a change request)	02 hex	
	01 hex	Number of parameters (identical to a change	2
		request)	

Table 7- 6 Response if the inverter was not able to completely execute the change request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference (identical to a change request)	82 hex	0
	01 hex	<b>Number of parameters</b> (identical to a change request)	2
Values, parameter 1	Format 40 hex: Zero (change request for this data block executed) 44 hex: Error (change request for this data block not executed)	Number of error values 00 hex or 02 hex	4
	Only for "Error" - <b>error value 1</b> You can find the error values in the table at	the end of this section.	6
	Only for "Error" - <b>error value 2</b> Error value 2 is either zero, or it contains the occurred.	e number of the first index where the error	8
Values, parameter 2			
Values, parameter m			

Table 7-7 Error value in the parameter response

Error value 1	Significance
00 hex	Illegal parameter number (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	Parameter value cannot be changed (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	Lower or upper value limit exceeded (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	Incorrect subindex (access to a parameter index that does not exist)
04 hex	No array (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	Incorrect data type (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	Setting not permitted, only resetting (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	Descriptive element cannot be changed (change request to a descriptive element that cannot be changed)
09 hex	Description data not available (access to a description that does not exist, parameter value is available)
0B hex	No master control (change request but with no master control)
0F hex	<b>Text array does not exist</b> (although the parameter value is available, the request is made to a text array that does not exist)
11 hex	Request cannot be executed due to the operating state (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	<b>Inadmissible value</b> (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)
15 hex	Response too long (the length of the actual response exceeds the maximum transfer length)
16 hex	<b>Illegal parameter address</b> (illegal or unsupported value for attribute, number of elements, parameter number, subindex or a combination of these)
17 hex	Illegal format (change request for an illegal or unsupported format)
18 hex	Number of values not consistent (number of values of the parameter data to not match the number of elements in the parameter address)
19 hex	Drive object does not exist (access to a drive object that does not exist)

Error value 1	Significance
6B hex	No change access for a controller that is enabled.
6C hex	Unknown unit.
6E hex	Change request is only possible when the motor is being commissioned (p0010 = 3).
6F hex	Change request is only possible when the power unit is being commissioned (p0010 = 2).
70 hex	Change request is only possible for quick commissioning (basic commissioning) (p0010 = 1).
71 hex	Change request is only possible if the inverter is ready (p0010 = 0).
72 hex	Change request is only possible for a parameter reset (restore to factory setting) (p0010 = 30).
73 hex	Change request possible only during commissioning of the safety functions (p0010 = 95).
74 hex	Change request is only possible when a technological application/unit is being commissioned (p0010 = 5).
75 hex	Change request is only possible in a commissioning state (p0010 ± 0).
76 hex	Change request is not possible for internal reasons (p0010 = 29).
77 hex	Change request is not possible at download.
81 hex	Change request is not possible at download.
82 hex	Transfer of the control authority (master) is inhibited by BI: p0806.
83 hex	<b>Desired interconnection is not possible</b> (the connector output does not supply a float value although the connector input requires a float value)
84 hex	<b>Inverter does not accept a change request</b> (inverter is busy with internal calculations. See parameter r3996 in the inverter List Manual. See also Section: Manuals for your inverter (Page 395))
85 hex	No access methods defined.
86 hex	Write access only during commissioning of the data records (p0010 = 15) (operating status of the inverter prevents a parameter change.)
87 hex	Know-how protection active, access locked
C8 hex	Change request below the currently valid limit (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	Change request above the currently valid limit (example: a parameter value is too large for the inverter power)
CC hex	Change request not permitted (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

# Other application examples

See also: Reading and writing parameters via PROFIBUS (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/8894584).

Q-Pulse Id

# 7.4.1 PROFlenergy

The non-proprietary PROFlenergy profile provides the following functions:

- switches off plant or plant sections in non-operational periods
- monitors the energy flow
- signals the plant or system state

# PROFlenergy functions of the inverter

The higher-level control transfers commands to the inverter acyclically. The following commands and queries are available for the control:

#### Control commands

- Start\_Pause
   Signal for the start and duration of a pause
- End\_Pause
   Signal for the return into the productive state

### Status queries

- PEM\_Status
   Actual device status: Energy-saving mode or productive state
- Query\_Measurement Energy usage

# Basic settings in the inverter

Parameter p5611 defines the responses to the PROFlenergy command "Start\_Pause".

Enabling PROFlenergy	p5611.0 = 0	Yes	
	p5611.0 = 1		No
For "Start_Pause", the drive initiates OFF1	p5611.1= 0		No
	p5611.1= 1	Yes	
Transition into the energy-saving mode from S4	p5611.2 = 0		No
	p5611.2 = 1	Yes	

Table 7-8 Dependency on the settings of p5611.0 ... p5611.2

Bit 0	Bit 1	Bit 2		
0	0	0	Energy-saving mode enabled.	
			Display in r5613	
			no additional "automatic" responses.	
			Set the responses to PROFlenergy commands on the inverter side.	
1	0/1	0/1	Energy-saving mode not enabled. No response to PROFlenergy commands from the control	
0	1	0	Energy-saving mode enabled with the following responses:	
			Display in r5613	
			OFF1 is set if the "Start_Pause" command is received from the control.	
			<ul> <li>The command is immediately effective in the inverter states "switching on inhibited" (S1) or "ready to start" (S2).</li> </ul>	
			<ul> <li>In the "operation" state (S4), OFF1 only becomes effective if the inverter has been brought into the "switching on inhibited" (S1) or "ready to start" (S2) state as a result of other commands, either from the control or inverter side.</li> </ul>	
			The inverter cannot be switched on as long as the "Start_Pause" command is present.	
			The OFF1 command is withdrawn with "End_Pause".	
0	1	1	Energy-saving mode enabled with the following responses:	
			Display in r5613	
			OFF1 is set if the "Start_Pause" command is received from the control.  The command is immediately effective in the inverter states "switching on inhibited" (S1), "ready to start" (S2), "ready" (S3) and operation (S4).	
			With the "End_Pause" command, the pulses are re-enabled and the motor starts, if one of the states "ready" (S3) or "operation" (S4) is present.	

# Additional settings and displays

# **Settings**

Minimum pause time: p5602
is the time that the machine requires to change into the energy-saving mode and back
into the production mode.



- Maximum pause time: p5606
- Signal source to set the inverter into state S1 (switching on inhibited): p5614 (e.g. p5614 = 722.0, means that you bring the inverter into the "switching-on inhibited" state via DI0).
- Reset the energy usage display to 0: p0040

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# Displaying

Display value	in the inverter	in the PROFlenergy profile
Power output at the motor shaft	r0032 in kW	ID 34 in W
Power factor	r0038	ID166
Balance from the energy drawn and fed back	r0039[1], in kWh	ID 200 in Wh
Interconnectable display of the PROFlenergy state	r5613	
Energy saved - with respect to the adjustable characteristic (p3320 p3329)	r0041	

### 7.5 Communication via EtherNet/IP

Via EtherNet/IP you can enter commands and setpoints, read-out status information and actual values, change parameter values and reset faults.

Process data (setpoints, actual values, etc.) are transferred in EtherNet/IP using assemblies. In addition to the assemblies, there are objects that you can use to set the communication. The objects and assemblies supported by the inverter are described in Section Supported objects (Page 121)

### 7.5.1 Connect converter to Ethernet/IP

The Control Units have two RJ45 sockets for connection to the control system, which you can use to implement a line topology. You can implement all topologies by using switches.

We recommend the following connector with order number: 6GK1901-1BB10-2Ax0 for connecting an EtherNet cable.

Instructions for assembling the SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RF45 Plug 180 can be found on the Internet under product information " "Assembly instructions for SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RJ45 Plug (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/37217116/133300)".

#### **Procedure**



To connect the inverter to a control system via Ethernet, proceed as follows:

- 1. Connect the inverter to the control system via an Ethernet cable.
- 2. Either

create a generic I/O module (Page 130) in your control system for cyclic data exchange between the control system and the inverter

load the EDS file of the ODVA into the control system. You can find the file in the internet at:

You have connected the inverter to the control system via EtherNet/IP.

See also Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals and LEDs on the CU (Page 41).

### Routing and shielding the Ethernet cable

Information can be found on the Internet: EtherNet/IP guidelines (<a href="http://www.odva.org/Home/ODVATECHNOLOGIES/EtherNetIP/EtherNetIPLibrary/tabid/76/lng/en-US/Default.aspx">http://www.odva.org/Home/ODVATECHNOLOGIES/EtherNetIP/EtherNetIPLibrary/tabid/76/lng/en-US/Default.aspx</a>).

### Commissioning the inverter in an EtherNet/IP network

To commission the inverter, using STARTER you must access the inverter via the USB interface. To do this, connect the computer to the inverter via the USB interface. See also Basic commissioning with STARTER (Page 71).

SINAMICS G120C converter

# 7.5.2 What do you need for communication via Ethernet/IP?

Check the communication settings using the following questions. If you answer "Yes" to the questions, you have correctly set the communication settings and can control the inverter via the fieldbus.

- Is the inverter correctly connected to the EtherNet/IP?
- Is the EDS file (<a href="http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511">http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511</a>) installed in your control system?
- Have the bus interface and IP address been correctly set?
- Have the signals that the inverter and the control system exchange been correctly interconnected?

# 7.5.3 Communication settings for Ethernet/IP

### General communication settings

In order to be able to communicate with a higher-level control system via EtherNet/IP, you must set parameter p2030 = 10.

Further, you must set the following data:

•	IP address	in p8921	currently valid value in r8931
•	Subnet mask	in p8923	currently valid value in r8933
•	Default gateway	in p8922	currently valid value in r8932
•	Name of station	in p8920	currently valid value in r8930

These parameters apply if p2030 = 10 is set, for EtherNet/IP, even if the parameter name indicates PROFINET.

Modified addresses only become effective if you switch-off the inverter and switch it on again; this includes any external 24 V supply that is being used.

### Additional settings for communication via EtherNet/IP

#### Setting the communication profile

The inverter has two communication profiles

- p8980 = 0: SINAMICS profile (factory setting)
   A drive profile defined by Siemens for EtherNet/IP based on PROFIdrive
- p8980 = 1: ODVA AC/DC drive profile
   A drive profile defined by the ODVA organization

#### Telegram selection

You select the telegram using p0922.

You can select any of the listed telegrams if you are working with the SINAMICS profile.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

#### 7.5 Communication via EtherNet/IP

If you use the AC/DC profile of the ODVA, select the standard telegram, p0922 = 1. You cannot work with the EDS file if you wish to use the assemblies described in Section Supported objects (Page 121). In this case, you must integrate the inverter into your control system.

### Setting the bus monitoring time

You set the bus monitoring using parameter p8840 in the inverter.

If you set this parameter to 0, the inverter continues to operate even if the bus develops a fault condition. If you set a time  $\neq$  0, then the inverter switches off with F08501 "Setpoint timeout" if the control system does not issue any signals within this time.

# 7.5.4 Additional settings if you are working with the AC/DC profile

If you change the following settings in the inverter by accessing the appropriate parameters, you must switch-off the inverter and switched it on again in order that these changes become effective. The changes become immediately effective when making the changes via the control system with objects 90 hex or 91 hex.

### Setting the off response for the motor

You set the standard off response for the inverter using parameter p8981:

- p8981 = 0: OFF1 (factory setting), also corresponds to the setting in the SINAMICS profile
- p8981 = 1: OFF2

You can find details on OFF1 and OFF2 in section Switching the motor on and off (Page 193)

### Setting the speed and torque scaling

You scale the speed and torque display using parameter p8982 or p8983. Setting range: 25 to 2-5.

### Displaying the maximum process data that can be transferred (PZD)

- r2067[0] maximum interconnected PZD length receiving
- p2067[1] maximum interconnected PZD length sending

# 7.5.5 Supported objects

# EtherNet/IP objects supported by the G120

Object cla	iss	Object name	Objects	ODVA objects	SINAMICS
hex	dec		required		objects
1 hex	1	Identity object	х		
4 hex	4	Assembly object	х		
6 hex	6	Connection Manager object	х		
28 hex	30	Motor Data Object		х	
29 hex	31	Supervisor Object		х	
2A hex	42	Drive Object		х	
32C hex	44	Siemens Drive Object			х
32D hex	45	Siemens Motor Data Object			х
90 hex	144	Parameter object			х
91 hex	145	Parameter object free access (DS47)			х
F5 hex	245	TCP/IP Interface object 1)	х		
F6 hex	246	Ethernet Link object 1)	х		
401 hex 43E he	1025 10 86	Parameter object			х

<sup>1)</sup> these objects are part of the EtherNet/IP system management.

# ODVA AC/DC assembly

Numbe	er	required/	Туре	Name
hex	dec	optional		
14 hex	20	Required	Sending	Basic Speed Control Output
15 hex	21	Optional	Sending	Extended Speed Control Output
16 hex	22	Optional	Sending	Speed and Torque Control Output
17 hex	23	Optional	Sending	Extended Speed and Torque Control Output
18 hex	24	Optional	Sending	Process Control Output
19 hex	25	Optional	Sending	Extended Process Control Output
46 hex	70	Required	Receiving	Basic Speed Control Input
47 hex	71	Optional	Receiving	Extended Speed Control Input
48 hex	72	Optional	Receiving	Speed and Torque Control Input
49 hex	73	Optional	Receiving	Extended Speed and Torque Control Input
4A hex	74	Optional	Receiving	Process Control Input
4B hex	75	Optional	Receiving	Extended Process Control Input

# Assembly Basic Speed Control, Instance Number: 20, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0			
0						Fault		RUN			
U						Reset		Forward			
1											
2	Speed Ref	Speed Reference (Low Byte)									
3	Speed Ref	Speed Reference (High Byte)									

# Assembly Basic Speed Control, Instance Number: 70, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0			
0						Running Forward		Faulted			
1			N. N			00					
2	Speed Acti	peed Actual (Low Byte)									
3	Speed Actu	Speed Actual (High Byte)									

# Assembly Basic Speed Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 120, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0						Fault		RUN
						Reset		Forward
1		**				*		~
2		erence (Low	, ,					
3		erence (High						
4	Data Out 1	Value (Low	Byte)					
5	Data Out 1	Value (High	n Byte)					
6		Value (Low						
7		Value (High						
8		Value (Low						
9		Value (High						
10		Value (Low						
11	Data Out 4	Value (High	n Byte)					
12		Value (Low						
13		Value (High						
14	Data Out 6	Value (Low	Byte)					
15		Value (High						
16	Data Out 7	' Value (Low	Byte)					
17	Data Out 7	' Value (High	n Byte)					
18		Value (Low	_ ,					
19	Data Out 8	Value (High	n Byte)					
20	Data Out 9 Value (Low Byte)							
21	Data Out 9 Value (High Byte)							
22	Data Out 10 Value (Low Byte)							
23	Data Out 1	0 Value (Hig	jh Byte)					

Q-Pulse Id

# Assembly Basic Speed Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 170, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0				
0						Running		Faulted				
						Forward		1 autou				
1												
2	-	peed Actual (Low Byte)										
3		ual (High Byl										
4		/alue (Low B										
5	Data In 1 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
6	Data In 2 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
7	Data In 2 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
8	Data In 3 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
9	Data In 3 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
10		/alue (Low B										
11	Data In 4 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
12	Data In 5 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
13	Data In 5 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
14	Data In 6 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
15	Data In 6 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
16	Data In 7 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
17	Data In 7 V	/alue (High E	Byte)									
18	Data In 8 V	/alue (Low B	yte)									
19	Data In 8 V	Data In 8 Value (High Byte)										
20	Data In 9 Value (Low Byte)											
21	Data In 9 Value (High Byte)											
22	Data In 10	Data In 10 Value (Low Byte)										
23	Data In 10	Value (High	Byte)									

# Assembly Extended Speed Control, Instance Number: 21, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0		NetRef	Net CtrL			Fault	RUN	RUN	
U		Neuter	Net our			Reset	Reverse	Forward	
1									
2	Speed Ref	Speed Reference (Low Byte)							
3	Speed Reference (High Byte)								

# Assembly Extended Speed Control, Instance Number: 71, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0	At Reference	Ref From Net	Crtl From Net	Ready	Running Reverse	Running Forward	Warning	Faulted	
1	Drive State		20			50	3		
2	Speed Actual (Low Byte)								
3	Speed Actual (High Byte)								

# Assembly Extended Speed Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 121, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0		NetRef	Net CtrL			Fault Reset	RUN Reverse	RUN Forward
1						Reset	Neverse	1 Ol Wald
2	Speed Re	eference (Low I	3vte)					
3		eference (High	<u> </u>					
4		1 Value (Low E						
5		1 Value (High I	<u> </u>					
6		2 Value (Low E	<u> </u>					
7		2 Value (High	•					
8	Data Out	3 Value (Low E	Byte)					
9	Data Out	3 Value (High	Byte)					
10	Data Out	4 Value (Low E	Byte)					
11	Data Out	4 Value (High	Byte)					
12	Data Out	5 Value (Low E	Byte)					
13	Data Out	5 Value (High	Byte)					
14	Data Out	6 Value (Low E	Byte)					
15	Data Out	6 Value (High	Byte)					
16	Data Out	7 Value (Low E	Byte)					
17	Data Out	7 Value (High	Byte)					
18	Data Out	8 Value (Low E	Byte)					
19	Data Out	8 Value (High	Byte)					
20	Data Out	9 Value (Low E	Byte)					
21	Data Out	9 Value (High I	Byte)					
22	Data Out	10 Value (Low	Byte)					
23	Data Out	10 Value (High	Byte)					

# Assembly Extended Speed Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 171, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0		
0	At	Ref From	Ref From	Ready	Running	Running	Warning	Faulted		
	Reference	Net	Net		Reverse	Forward				
1	Drive State									
2	Speed Actu	al (Low Byte)								
3	Speed Actu	al (High Byte)								
4	Data In 1 Va	Data In 1 Value (Low Byte)								
5	Data In 1 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
6	Data In 2 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>)</del> )							
7	Data In 2 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
8	Data In 3 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>)</del>							
9	Data In 3 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
10	Data In 4 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>)</del>							
11	Data In 4 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
12	Data In 5 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>;</del> )							
13	Data In 5 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
14	Data In 6 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>)</del> )							
15	Data In 6 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
16	Data In 7 Va	alue (Low Byte	<del>)</del>							
17	Data In 7 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
18	Data In 8 Va	alue (Low Byte	9)							
19	Data In 8 Va	alue (High Byt	e)							
20	Data In 9 Va	alue (Low Byte	5)							
21	Data In 9 Value (High Byte)									
22	Data In 10 \	/alue (Low By	te)							
23	Data In 10 \	/alue (High By	rte)							

# Assembly Basic Speed and Torque Control , Instance Number: 22, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0			
0						Fault Reset		RUN Forward			
1											
	Speed Re	eference (Low	Byte)								
3	Speed Re	eference (High	Byte)								
4	Torque R	Torque Reference (High Byte)									
5	Torque R	Torque Reference (High Byte)									

# Assembly Basic Speed and Torque Control , Instance Number: 72, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0						Running Forward		RUN Forward
1								
2	Speed Actua	Speed Actual (Low Byte)						
3	Speed Actua	l (High Byte)						
4	Torque Actual (High Byte)							
5	Torque Actua	al (High Byte)						

# Assembly Basic Speed and Torque Control with parameter assembly , Instance Number: 122, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0						Fault Reset		RUN Forward
1								
2	Speed Re	eference (Low B	yte)					
3	Speed Re	eference (High B	yte)					
4	Torque R	eference (High I	3yte)					
5	Torque R	eference (High E	Byte)					
6	Data Out	1 Value (Low By	/te)					
7	Data Out	1 Value (High B	yte)					
8	Data Out	2 Value (Low By	/te)					
9	Data Out	2 Value (High B	yte)					
10	Data Out	3 Value (Low By	/te)					
11	Data Out	3 Value (High B	yte)					
12	Data Out	4 Value (Low By	/te)					
13	Data Out	4 Value (High B	yte)					
14	Data Out	5 Value (Low By	/te)					
15	Data Out	5 Value (High B	yte)					
16	Data Out	6 Value (Low By	yte)					
17	Data Out	6 Value (High B	yte)					
18	Data Out	7 Value (Low By	/te)					
19	Data Out	7 Value (High B	yte)					
20	Data Out	8 Value (Low By	/te)					
21	Data Out	8 Value (High B	yte)					
22	Data Out	9 Value (Low By	/te)					
23	Data Out	9 Value (High B	yte)					
24	Data Out	10 Value (Low E	Byte)					
25	Data Out	10 Value (High	Byte)					

# Assembly Basic Speed and Torque Control with parameter assembly , Instance Number: 172, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0		
						Running Forward		Faulted		
1						1 Ol Wala				
2	Speed Ac	Speed Actual (Low Byte)								
3	Speed Ac	tual (High Byte	)							
4	Torque A	ctual (High Byte	;)							
5	Torque A	ctual (High Byte	;)							
6	Data In 1	Value (Low Byt	e)							
7	Data In 1	Value (High By	te)							
8	Data In 2	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
9	Data In 2	Value (High By	te)							
10	Data In 3	Value (Low Byt	e)							
11	Data In 3	Value (High By	te)							
12	Data In 4	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
13	Data In 4	Value (High By	te)							
14	Data In 5	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
15	Data In 5	Value (High By	te)							
16	Data In 6	Value (Low Byt	e)							
17	Data In 6	Value (High By	te)							
18	Data In 7	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
19	Data In 7	Value (High By	te)							
20	Data In 8	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
	Data In 8	Value (High By	te)							
22	Data In 9	Value (Low Byt	:e)							
23	Data In 9	Value (High By	te)							
24	Data In 10	Value (Low B	yte)							
25	Data In 10	) Value (High B	yte)							

# Extended Speed and Torque Control, Instance Number: 23, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0		NetRef	Net CtrL			Fault Reset	RUN Reverse	RUN Forward
1								
2	Speed Refer	Speed Reference (Low Byte)						
3	Speed Refer	ence (High By	rte)					
4	Torque Reference (High Byte)							
5	Torque Reference (High Byte)							

# Extended Speed and Torque Control, Instance Number: 73, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0	At Reference	Ref From Net	Crtl From Net	Ready	Running Reverse	Running Forward	Warning	Faulted	
1	Drive State	Drive State							
2	Speed Actua	Speed Actual (Low Byte)							
3	Speed Actua	ıl (High Byte)							
4	Torque Actual (High Byte)								
5	Torque Actua	Torque Actual (High Byte)							

# Basic Speed and Torque Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 123, type: Output

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0		NetRef	Net CtrL			Fault Reset	RUN Reverse	RUN Forward
1				•		·		
2	Speed Ref	ference (Low By	/te)					
3	Speed Ref	ference (High B	yte)					
4	Torque Re	eference (High E	Byte)					
5	Torque Re	eference (High E	Byte)					
6	Data Out 1	l Value (Low By	rte)					
7	Data Out 1	I Value (High B	yte)					
8	Data Out 2	2 Value (Low By	rte)					
9	Data Out 2	2 Value (High By	yte)					
10	Data Out 3	3 Value (Low By	rte)					
11	Data Out 3	3 Value (High By	yte)					
12	Data Out 4	1 Value (Low By	rte)					
13	Data Out 4	1 Value (High B	yte)					
14	Data Out 5	Value (Low By	rte)					
15	Data Out 5	Value (High By	yte)					
16	Data Out 6	6 Value (Low By	rte)					
17	Data Out 6	S Value (High By	yte)					
18	Data Out 7	7 Value (Low By	rte)					
19	Data Out 7	7 Value (High By	yte)					
20	Data Out 8	3 Value (Low By	rte)					
21	Data Out 8	3 Value (High B	yte)					
22	Data Out 9	9 Value (Low By	rte)					
23	Data Out 9	Value (High By	yte)					
24	Data Out 1	10 Value (Low E	Byte)					
25	Data Out 1	10 Value (High I	Byte)					

# Basic Speed and Torque Control with parameter assembly, Instance Number: 173, type: Input

Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
0	At Reference	Ref From Net	Crtl From Net	Ready	Running Reverse	Running Forward	Warning	Faulted	
1	Drive State	Drive State							
2	Speed Actu	ual (Low Byte)							
3	Speed Actu	ual (High Byte)							
4	Torque Act	ual (High Byte)							
5	Torque Act	ual (High Byte)							
6	Data In 1 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
7	Data In 1 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
8	Data In 2 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
9	Data In 2 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
10	Data In 3 V	'alue (Low Byte	e)						
11	Data In 3 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
12	Data In 4 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
13	Data In 4 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
14	Data In 5 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
15	Data In 5 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
16	Data In 6 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
17	Data In 6 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
18	Data In 7 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
19	Data In 7 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
20	Data In 8 V	alue (Low Byte	e)						
21	Data In 8 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
22	Data In 9 V	'alue (Low Byte	e)						
23	Data In 9 V	alue (High Byte	e)						
24	Data In 10	Value (Low Byt	te)						
25	Data In 10	Value (High By	rte)						

# 7.5.6 Create generic I/O module

For certain control systems, you cannot use the EDS file provided by the ODVA. In these cases, you must create a generic I/O module in the control system for the cyclic communication.

#### Procedure



Proceed as follows to create a generic I/O module:

- 1. In your control system, via "New module" create a new "I/O module", "Generic" type.
- 2. In the control system, enter the lengths for the process data for cyclic communication, which you have selected in STARTER, r2067[0] (input), r2067[1] (output), for example: Standard telegram 2/2.
- 3. In STARTER, set the same values for IP address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and the Name of Station as in the control system (see Communication settings for Ethernet/IP (Page 119))

You have created a generic I/O module for cyclic communication with the inverter.

# 7.6 Communication via RS485

# 7.6.1 Integrating inverters into a bus system via the RS485 interface

### Connecting to a network via RS485

Connect the inverter to your fieldbus via the RS485 interface. Position and assignment of the RS485 interface can be found in Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41). This connector has short-circuit proof, isolated pins.

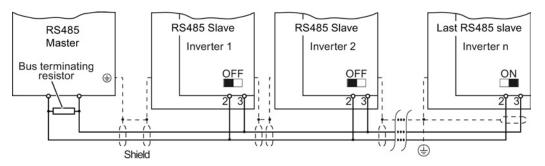


Figure 7-8 Communication network via RS485

You must switch-in the bus-terminating resistor for the first and last nodes. The position of the bus-terminating resistor can be found in Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).

#### Note

During bus operation the first and last bus subscriber must be constantly supplied with power as otherwise the communication with the other subscribers is broken.

With the exception of the first or last slave, when required you can remove slaves from the bus. To do this, withdraw the bus connector. When doing this, communication to the other nodes (stations) is not interrupted.

# Communication with the controller, even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You must supply the Control Unit with 24 V DC at terminals 31 and 32 if you wish to maintain communication with the control system when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of short interruptions of the 24 V voltage supply, the inverter may report a fault without communications with the controller being interrupted.

### 7.6.2 Communication via USS

The USS protocol is a serial-data connection between one master and one or more slaves. A master is, for example:

- A programmable logic controller (e.g. SIMATIC S7-200)
- A PC

The inverter is always a slave.

A maximum of 31 slaves is possible.

The maximum cable length is 100 m.

Information about how to connect the inverter to the USS fieldbus is provided in Section Integrating inverters into a bus system via the RS485 interface (Page 131).

# 7.6.2.1 Basic settings for communication

### Setting the address

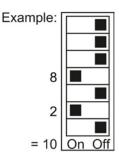
You set the bus address of the inverter using the address switches on the Control Unit, using parameter p2021 or in STARTER.

Valid address range: 1 ... 30

If you have specified a valid address using the address switches, this address will always be the one that takes effect, and parameter p2021 (factory setting: 0) will not be able to be changed.

The positions of the address switches are described in Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).

Bit 6		
Bit 5	(32)	
Bit 4	(16)	
Bit 3	(8)	
Bit 2	(4)	
Bit 1	(2)	
Bit 0	(1)	
On		Off





#### **Procedure**

To change the bus address, proceed as follows:

- 1. Set the address using one of the subsequently listed options:
  - using the address switches
  - with an operator panel using p2021
  - in STARTER using screen form "Control Unit/Communication/Fieldbus", or using the expert list with p2021
- 2. Switch on the inverter power supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit.
- 3. Switch on the voltages again after all LEDs at the inverter have gone dark.

This means that you have changed the bus address.

Page 132 of 404

# **Additional settings**

Parameter	Description	on					
p0015 = 21		Macro drive device Select the I/O configuration					
p2020	Setting th	Setting the baud rate					
	Value	Baud rate	Value	Baud rate			
	4 5 6 7 8	4800 9600 19200		57600 76800 93750 115200 187500			
p2022	Fieldbus Sets the	Fieldbus interface USS PZD number Sets the number of 16-bit words in the PZD part of the USS telegram Setting range: 0 8 (0 8 words)					
p2023	Fieldbus Sets the I Setting ra	interface USS PIV number number of 16-bit words in the PIV par	rt of the U	SS telegram			
	• 127:	variable length					
p2040	Sets the	interface monitoring time [ms] monitoring time to monitor the proces data is received within this time, an ap					

# 7.6.2.2 Telegram structure

### Overview

A USS telegram comprises a series of elements with a defined sequence. Each element contains 11 bits.

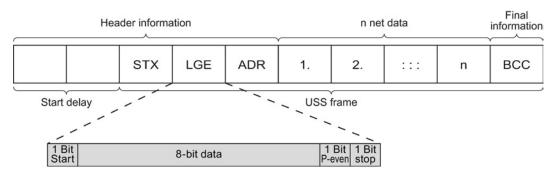


Figure 7-9 Structure of a USS telegram

Telegram part	Description						
Start delay / response delay	There is always a start and/or response delay between two telegrams (see alsoTime-out and other errors (Page 141))						
STX	An ASCII character (02 hex) indicates the beginning of the message.						
LGE	The telegram length "LGE" is calculated as follows: LGE = user data (n bytes) + ADR (1 byte) + BCC (1 byte)						
ADR	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0  Special Mirror Broadcast              • Bit 7 = 0: Normal data exchange.  Bit 7 = 1, to transfer telegrams that require a net data structure different from the device profile.  • Bit 6 = 0: Normal data exchange.  Bit 6 = 1: Testing the bus connection: The converter returns the telegram unchanged to the master.  • Bit 5 = 0: Normal data exchange.  (Bit 5 = 1: Not supported in the converter.)  • Bits 0 4: Address of the converter.						
Net data	See section User data range of the USS telegram (Page 134).						
BCC	Checksum (exclusive or) across all telegram bytes – with the exception of BCC.						

# 7.6.2.3 User data range of the USS telegram

The user data area consists of the following elements:

- Parameter channel (PIV) for writing and reading parameter values
- Process data (PZD) for controlling the drive.

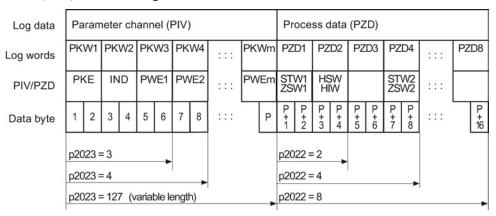


Figure 7-10 USS telegram - user data structure

#### Parameter channel

In parameter p2023 you specify the parameter channel length.

#### Parameter channel with fixed and variable length

- p2023 = 0
   With this setting, no parameter values are transferred.
- p2023 = 3
   You can select this setting if you only want to read or write 16-bit data or alarm signals.
- p2023 = 4: If you want to read or write 32-bit values (for example indexed parameters or bit parameters, e.g. r0722.2), then this setting is required. In this case, the send or receive telegram always contains four words, even if only three would be required. The values are enter right-justified in the 4th word.
- p2023 = 127:
   If you set p2023 = 27 (variable length), the send and response telegrams are as long as the task actually requires.

#### Process data

Parameter p2022 defines the length for the process data. You can transfer up to eight process data items in one telegram (p2022 =  $0 \dots 8$ ). For p2022 = 0, no process data is transferred.

# 7.6.2.4 USS parameter channel

### Structure of the parameter channel

Depending on the setting in p2023, the parameter channel has a fixed length of three or four words, or a variable length, depending on the length of the data to be transferred.

1. and 2nd word contain the parameter number and index as well as the type of job (read or write). The other words of the parameter channel contain parameter contents. The parameter contents can be 8-bit values, 16-bit values (such as baud rate) or 32-bit values (e.g. CO parameters). The parameter contents are entered right justified in the word with the highest number. Words that are not required are assigned 0.

Bit 11 in the 1st word is reserved and is always assigned 0.

The diagram shows a parameter channel that is four words long.

Parameter channel							
PKE, 1st word	PKE, 1st word IND (2nd word) PWE (3rd and 4th word)						
15 12 11 10 0	15 8	7 0	15 0	15 0			
AK S PNU	Page index	Subindex	PWE 1, high word	PWE 2, low word			
AK S PNU	Page index	Subindex	PWE 1, high word	PWE 2, low wo			

You can find examples of telegrams at the end of this section.

# Request and response IDs

Bits 12 to 15 of the first word of the parameter channel contain the request and response identifier. The possible identifiers and further explanations can be found in the following tables.

### Overview of the request identifiers controller -- inverter

Request	Description	Response	e identifier
identifier		positive	negative
0	No request	0	7 / 8
1	Request parameter value	1/2	7 / 8
2	Change parameter value (word)	1	7 / 8
3	Change parameter value (double word)	2	7 / 8
4	Request descriptive element 1)	3	7 / 8
6 <sup>2)</sup>	Request parameter value (field) 1)	4/5	7/8
72)	Change parameter value (field, word) 1)	4	7 / 8
82)	Change parameter value (field, double word) 1)	5	7 / 8
9	Request number of field elements	6	7 / 8

<sup>1)</sup> The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

# Overview of the response identifiers inverter -- controller

The response identifier depends on the request identifier.

Response identifier	Description
0	No response
1	Transfer parameter value (word)
2	Transfer parameter value (double word)
3	Transfer descriptive element 1)
4	Transfer parameter value (field, word) 2)
5	Transfer parameter value (field, double word) 2)
6	Transfer number of field elements
7	Inverter cannot process the request (with error number)
8	No master controller status / no authorization to change parameters of the parameter channel interface

<sup>1)</sup> The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

2) The required element of the indexed parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

The following request IDs are identical: 1 = 6, 2 = 7 3 = 8. We recommend that you use identifiers 6, 7, and 8.

# Overview of the error numbers in response identifier 7 (inverter cannot process the request)

For response identifier 7, the inverter sends one of the following error numbers in the highest word of the parameter channel to the controller.

No.	Description
00 hex	Illegal parameter number (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	Parameter value cannot be changed (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	Lower or upper value limit exceeded (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	Incorrect subindex (access to a subindex that does not exist.)
04 hex	No array (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	<b>Incorrect data type</b> (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	<b>Setting not permitted, only resetting</b> (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	<b>Descriptive element cannot be changed</b> (change request to a descriptive element error value that cannot be changed)
0B hex	No master control (change request but with no master control, see also p0927.)
0C hex	Keyword missing
11 hex	Request cannot be executed due to the operating state (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	<b>Inadmissible value</b> (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)
65 hex	Parameter number is currently deactivated (depending on the mode of the inverter)
66 hex	Channel width is insufficient (communication channel is too small for response)
68 hex	Illegal parameter value (parameter can only assume certain values)
6A hex	Request not included / task is not supported (the valid request identifications can be found in table "Request identifications controller → inverter")
6B hex	No change access for a controller that is enabled. (operating status of the inverter prevents a parameter change)
86 hex	Write access only for commissioning (p0010 = 15) (operating status of the inverter prevents a parameter change)
87 hex	Know-how protection active, access locked
C8 hex	Change request below the currently valid limit (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	Change request above the currently valid limit (example: a parameter value is too large for the inverter power)
CC hex	Change request not permitted (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

### Parameter number

Parameter numbers < 2000 PNU = parameter number.

Write the parameter number into the PNU (PKE bit 10 ... 0).

Parameter numbers ≥ 2000 PNU = parameter number - offset.

Write the parameter number minus the offset into the PNU

(PKE bit 10 ... 0).

Write the offset in the page index (IND bit 15 ... 8).

Table 7- 9 Offset and page index of the parameter numbers

Parameter number	Offset	Page inc	Page index							
		Hex	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8
0000 1999	0	0 hex	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2000 3999	2000	80 hex	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6000 7999	6000	90 hex	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8000 9999	8000	20 hex	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
10000 11999	10000	A0 hex	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
20000 21999	20000	50 hex	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
30000 31999	30000	F0 hex	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
60000 61999	60000	74 hex	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0

# Indexed parameters

For indexed parameters, you must write the index as hex value into the subindex (IND bit  $7 \dots 0$ ).

### Parameter contents

Parameter contents can be parameter values or connector parameters. You require two words for connector parameters. For interconnecting connector parameters please see Section Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 369).

Enter the parameter value in the parameter channel right-justified as follows:

• 8-bit values: Low word, bit 0 ... 7,

bits 8 ... 15 are zero.

• 16-bit values: Low word, bits 0 ... 15,

• 32-bit values: Low word and high word

Enter a connector parameter right-justified as follows:

Number of the connector parameter:

High word

Drive object of the connector parameter:
 Low word, bits 10 ... 15

• The index or bit field number of the connector parameter: Low word, bits 0 ... 9

Page 138 of 404

# Telegram examples, parameter channel length = 4

## Read request: Read out serial number of the Power Module (p7841[2])

To obtain the value of the indexed parameter p7841, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel with the following data:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 6 (request parameter value (field))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 1841 (Parameter number without offset)
   Parameter number = PNU + offset (page index)
   (7841 = 1841 + 6000)
- IND, bit 0 ... 7 (subindex): = 2 (Index of the parameter)
- Because you want to read the parameter value, words 3 and 4 in the parameter channel for requesting the parameter value are irrelevant. They should be assigned a value of 0, for example.

	Parameter channel					
Р	PKE (1st word) IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word				- low, 4th word	
15 12 11	10 0	15 8	7 0	15 0	15 10	9 0
AK	Parameter number	Page index	Subindex	Parameter value	Drive Object	Index
0 1 1 0 0						

Figure 7-11 Telegram for a read request from p7841[2]

#### Write request: Changing the automatic restart mode (p1210)

Parameter p1210 defines the automatic restart mode:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 7 (change parameter value (field, word))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 4BA hex (1210 = 4BA hex, no offset, as 1210 < 1999)
- IND, bit 8 ... 15 (page index): = 0 hex (offset 0 corresponds to 0 hex)
- IND, bit 0 ... 7 (subindex): = 0 hex (parameter is not indexed)
- PWE1, bit 0 ... 15: = 0 hex
- PWE2, bit 0 ... 15: = 1A hex (26 = 1A hex)

	Parameter channel					
	PKE, 1st word IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word					PWE2 - low, 4th word
15 12 11	2 11		15 0	15 0		
AK	AK Parameter number Page index Subindex		Parameter value (bit 16 31)	Parameter value (bit 0 15)		
0 1 1 1 0						

Figure 7-12 Telegram, to activate the automatic restart with p1210 = 26

# Write request: Assign digital input 2 with the function ON/OFF1 (p0840[1] = 722.2)

In order to link digital input 2 with ON/OFF1, you must assign parameter p0840[1] (source, ON/OFF1) the value 722.2 (DI 2). To do this, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel as follows:

- PKE, bit 12 ... 15 (AK): = 7 hex (change, parameter value (field, word))
- PKE, bit 0 ... 10 (PNU): = 348 hex (840 = 348 hex, no offset, as 840 < 1999)
- IND bit 0 ... 7 (subindex): = 1 hex (command data set, CDS1 = index1)
- PWE1, bit 0 ... 15: = 2D2 hex (722 = 2D2 hex)
- PWE2, bit 10 ... 15: = 3f hex (drive object for SINAMICS G120, always 63 = 3f hex)
- PWE2, bit 0 ... 9: = 2 hex (index or bit number of the parameter: DI 2 = r0722.2)

2	Parameter channel					
PKE, 1st word IND, 2nd word PWE1 - high, 3rd word PWE2 - low, 4th word				- low, 4th word		
15 12 11	10 0	15 8	7 0	15 0	15 10	9 0
AK	Parameter number	Page index	Subindex	Parameter value	Drive Object	Index
0 1 1 1 0	01101001000	00000000	00000001	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0	1 1 1 1 1 1	00000000010

Figure 7-13 Telegram, to assign DI 2 with ON/OFF1

### 7.6.2.5 USS process data channel (PZD)

### Description

The process data channel (PZD) contains the following data depending on the transmission direction:

- Control words and setpoints for the slave
- Status words and actual values for the master.

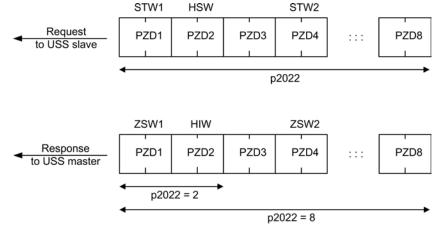


Figure 7-14 Process data channel

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Q-Pulse Id

The first two words are:

- Control 1 (STW1) and main setpoint (HSW)
- Status word 1 (ZSW1) and main actual value (HIW)

If p2022 is greater than or equal to 4, then the converter receives the additional control word (STW2).

You define the sources of the PZD using parameter p2051.

For further information, please refer to the List Manual.

#### 7.6.2.6 Time-out and other errors

You require the telegram runtimes in order to set the telegram monitoring. The character runtime is the basis of the telegram runtime:

Table 7- 10 Character runtime

Baud rate in bit/s	Transmission time per bit	Character run time (= 11 bits)
9600	104.170 μs	1.146 ms
19200	52.084 µs	0.573 ms
38400	26.042 µs	0.286 ms
115200	5.340 µs	0.059 ms

The telegram runtime is longer than just purely adding all of the character runtimes (=residual runtime). You must also take into consideration the character delay time between the individual characters of the telegram.

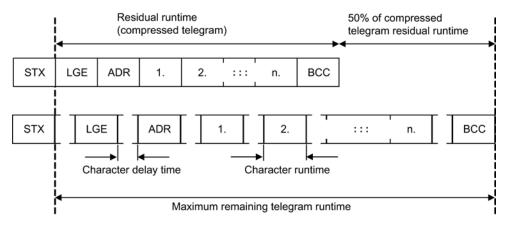


Figure 7-15 Telegram runtime as the sum of the residual runtime and character delay times

The total telegram runtime is always less than 150% of the pure residual runtime.

Before each request telegram, the master must maintain the start delay. The start delay must be  $> 2 \times$  character runtime.

The slave only responds after the response delay has expired.

Active 17/06/2014

#### 7.6 Communication via RS485

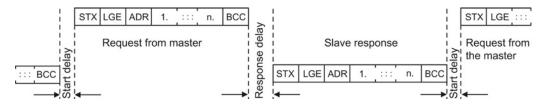


Figure 7-16 Start delay and response delay

The duration of the start delay must at least be as long as the time for two characters and depends on the baud rate.

Table 7- 11 Duration of the start delay

Baud rate in bit/s	Transmission time per character (= 11 bits)	Min. start delay
9600	1.146 ms	> 2.291 ms
19200	0.573 ms	> 1.146 ms
38400	0.286 ms	> 0.573 ms
57600	0.191 ms	> 0.382 ms
115200	0.059 ms	> 0.117 ms

Note: The character delay time must be shorter than the start delay.

### Telegram monitoring of the master

With your USS master, we recommend that the following times are monitored:

Response delay: Response time of the slave to a request from the master

The response delay must be < 20 ms, but longer than the start

delay

• Telegram runtime: Transmission time of the response telegram sent from the slave

### Telegram monitoring of the converter

The converter monitors the time between two requests of the master. Parameter p2040 defines the permissible time in ms. If a time p2040  $\pm$  0 is exceeded, then the converter interprets this as telegram failure and responds with fault F01910.

150% of the residual runtime is the guide value for the setting of p2040, i.e. the telegram runtime without taking into account the character delay times.

For communication via USS, the converter checks bit 10 of the received control word 1. If the bit is not set when the motor is switched on ("Operation"), the converter responds with fault F07220.

Page 142 of 404

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

### 7.6.3 Communication over Modbus RTU

### Overview of communication using Modbus

The Modbus protocol is a communication protocol with linear topology based on a master/slave architecture.

Modbus offers three transmission modes:

#### Modbus ASCII

Data in ASCII code. The data throughput is lower compared to RTU.

# Modbus RTU (RTU: Remote Terminal Unit)

Data in binary format. The data throughput is greater than in ASCII code.

#### Modbus TCP

Data as TCP/IP packets. TCP port 502 is reserved for Modbus TCP. Modbus TCP is currently undergoing definition as a standard (IEC PAS 62030 (pre-standard)).

The Control Unit supports Modbus RTU as a slave with even parity.

1 Bit Start	8 bits of data	1 Bit 1 Bit P-even stop

# Communication settings

- Communication using Modbus RTU takes place over the RS485 interface with a maximum of 247 slaves.
- The maximum cable length is 100 m.
- Two 100 k $\Omega$  resistors are provided to polarize the receive and send cables.

#### Note

### It is not permitted to change over the units

The "Unit changover (Page 232)" function is not permissible with this bus system!

# 7.6.3.1 Basic settings for communication

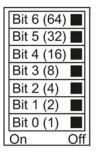
You set the bus address of the inverter using the address switches on the Control Unit, using parameter p2021 or in STARTER.

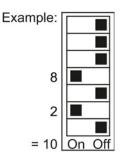
Using parameter p2021 (factory setting: 1) or using STARTER, you can only set the address, if all address switches are set to "OFF" (0).

Valid address range: 1 ... 247

If you have specified a valid address using the address switches, this address will always be the one that takes effect, and parameter p2021 (factory setting: 1) will not be able to be changed.

The positions of the address switches are described in Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).







#### **Procedure**

To change the bus address, proceed as follows:

- 1. Set the address using one of the subsequently listed options:
  - using the address switches
  - with an operator panel using p2021
  - in STARTER using screen form "Control Unit/Communication/Fieldbus", or using the expert list with p2021
- 2. Switch on the inverter power supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit.
- 3. Switch on the voltages again after all LEDs at the inverter have gone dark.

This means that you have changed the bus address.

# Additional settings

Parameter	Description		
p0015 = 21	Macro drive unit		
	Selecting the I/O configuration		
p2030 = 2	Fieldbus protocol selection 2: Modbus		
p2020	Fieldbus baud rate Factory setting = 19200 bit/s		
p2024	Modbus timing (see Section "Baud rates and mapping tables (Page 146)")		
	• Index 0: Maximum slave telegram processing time:  The time after which the slave must have sent a response to the master.		
	• Index 1: Character delay time:  Character delay time: Maximum permissible delay time between the individual characters in the Modbus frame (Modbus standard processing time for 1.5 bytes).		
	<ul> <li>Index2: Inter-telegram delay:         Maximum permissible delay time between Modbus telegrams (Modbus standard processing time for 3.5 bytes).     </li> </ul>		
p2029	Fieldbus fault statistics Displays receive faults on the fieldbus interface		
p2040	Process data monitoring time  Determines the time after which an alarm is generated if no process data is transferred		
	<b>Note:</b> You must adapt the time depending on the number of slaves and the baud rate is set on the bus (factory setting = 100 ms).		

### 7.6.3.2 Modbus RTU telegram

#### Description

For Modbus, there is precisely one master and up to 247 slaves. The master always starts the communication. The slaves can only transfer data at the request of the master. Slave-to-slave communication is not possible. The Control Unit always operates as slave.

The following figure shows the structure of a Modbus RTU telegram.

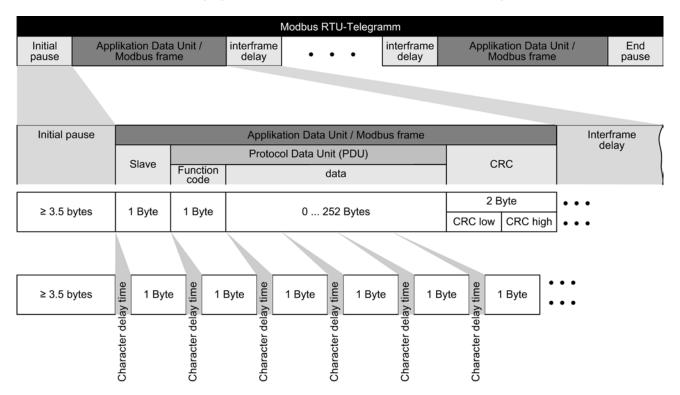


Figure 7-17 Modbus with delay times

The data area of the telegram is structured according to the mapping tables.

### 7.6.3.3 Baud rates and mapping tables

### Permissible baud rates and telegram delay

The Modbus RTU telegram requires pauses for the following cases:

- Start detection
- Between the individual frames
- End detection

Minimum duration: Processing time for 3.5 bytes (can be set via p2024[2]).

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

A character delay time is also permitted between the individual bytes of a frame. Maximum duration: Processing time for 1.5 bytes (can be set via p2024[1]).

Table 7- 12 Baud rates, transmission times, and delays

Baud rate in bit/s (p2020)	Transmission time per character (11 bits)	Minimum pause between two telegrams (p2024[2])	Maximum pause between two bytes (p2024[1])
4800	2.292 ms	≥ 8.021 ms	≤ 3.438 ms
9600	1.146 ms	≥ 4.010 ms	≤ 1.719 ms
19200 (factory setting)	0.573 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.859 ms
38400	0.286 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.75 ms
57600	0.191 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.556 ms
76800	0.143 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.417 ms
93750	0.117 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.341 ms
115200	0.095 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.278 ms
187500	0.059 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.171 ms

#### Note

The factory setting for p2024[1] and p2024[2] is 0. The converter specifies the associated values depending on the protocol selection (p2030) or the baud rate.

### Modbus register and Control Unit parameters

The Modbus protocol contains register or bit numbers for addressing memory. You must assign the appropriate control words, status words and parameters to these registers in the slave.

The converter supports the following addressing ranges:

Addressing range	Remark
40001 40065	Compatible with Micromaster MM436
40100 40522	

The valid holding register addressing range extends from 40001 to 40522. Access to other holding registers generates the fault "Exception Code".

The registers 40100 to 40111 are described as process data.

Active 17/06/2014

#### Note

R"; "W"; "R/W" in the column Modbus access stands for read (with FC03); write (with FC06); read/write.

## 7.6 Communication via RS485

Table 7- 13 Assigning the Modbus register to the parameters of the Control Unit

Modbus Reg. No.	Description	Modbu s access	Unit	Scaling factor	On/O or value		Data / parameter
Process	data						
Control d	ata						
40100	Control word	R/W		1			Process data 1
40101	Main setpoint	R/W		1			Process data 2
Status da	nta						
40110	Status word	R		1			Process data 1
40111	Main actual value	R		1			Process data 2
Paramete	er data						
Digital ou	itputs						
40200	DO 0	R/W		1	HIGH	LOW	p0730, r747.0, p748.0
40201	DO 1	R/W		1	HIGH	LOW	p0731, r747.1, p748.1
40202	DO 2	R/W		1	HIGH	LOW	p0732, r747.2, p748.2
Analog o	utputs						
40220	AO 0	R	%	100	-100.0 .	100.0	r0774.0
40221	AO 1	R	%	100	-100.0 .	100.0	r0774.1
Digital in	outs						
40240	DI 0	R		1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.0
40241	DI 1	R		1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.1
40242	DI 2	R		1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.2
40243	DI 3	R		1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.3
40244	DI 4	R		1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.4
40245	DI 5	R		1	HIGH LOW		r0722.5
Analog ir	puts						
40260	AI 0	R	%	100	-300.0 .	300.0	r0755 [0]
40261	AI 1	R	%	100	-300.0 .	300.0	r0755 [1]
40262	Al 2	R	%	100	-300.0 .	300.0	r0755 [2]
40263	AI 3	R	%	100	-300.0 300.0		r0755 [3]
Converte	r identification						
40300	Powerstack number	R		1	0 3	32767	r0200
40301	Converter firmware	R		0.0001	0.00 327.67		r0018
Converte	r data						
40320	Rated power of the power unit	R	kW	100	0 3	27.67	r0206
40321	Current limit	R/W	%	10	10.0 400.0		p0640
40322	Ramp-up time	R/W	S	100	0.00 650.0		p1120
40323	Ramp-down time	R/W	S	100	0.00 650.0		p1121
40324	Reference speed	R/W	RPM	1	6.000	. 32767	p2000

Q-Pulse Id

Modbus Reg. No.			On/Off text or value range	Data / parameter		
-	r diagnostics	400033				
40340	Speed setpoint	R	RPM	1	-16250 16250	r0020
40341	Actual speed value	R	RPM	1	-16250 16250	r0022
40342	Output frequency	R	Hz	100	- 327.68 327.67	r0024
40343	Output voltage	R	V	1	0 32767	r0025
40344	DC-link voltage	R	V	1	0 32767	r0026
40345	Actual current value	R	A	100	0 163.83	r0027
40346	Actual torque value	R	Nm	100	- 325.00 325.00	r0031
40347	Actual active power	R	kW	100	0 327.67	r0032
40348	Energy consumption	R	kWh	1	0 32767	r0039
40349	Control priority	R		1	HAND AUTO	r0807
Fault diag		110		1 '	TIMIND MOTO	10007
40400	Failure number, index 0	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [0]
40400	Failure number, index 0	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [1]
40401	Failure number, index 1	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [1]
40403	Failure number, index 2	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [3]
40404	Failure number, index 2	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [4]
40405	Failure number, index 4	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [5]
40406	Failure number, index 5	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [6]
40407	Failure number, index 6	R		1	0 32767	r0947 [7]
40407	Alarm number	R		1	0 32767	r2110 [0]
40408		R		1	099	
	PRM ERROR code	K		1	099	
	gy controller	DAM	l	1	0 1	2200 r2240 0
40500	Technology controller enable	R/W	%	1	0 1	p2200, r2349.0
40501	Technology controller MOP	R/W	%	100	-200.0 200.0	p2240
	gy controller adjustment	D/4/	1	100	0.00 (0.0	00/5
40510	Time constant for actual-value filters of the technology controller	R/W		100	0.00 60.0	p2265
40511	Scaling factor for actual value of the technology controller	R/W	%	100	0.00 500.00	p2269
40512	Proportional amplification of the technology controller	R/W		1000	0.000 65.000	p2280
40513	Integral time of the technology controller	R/W	S	1	0 60	p2285
40514	Time constant D-component of the technology controller	R/W		1	0 60	p2274
40515	Max. limit of technology controller	R/W	%	100	-200.0 200.0	p2291
40516	Min. limit technology controller		%	100	-200.0 200.0	p2292
PID diagr	3				•	•
40520	Effective setpoint acc. to internal technology controller MOP rampfunction generator		%	100	-100.0 100.0	r2250
40521	Actual value of technology controller R % 100 -100.0 100.0 after filter		r2266			
40522	Output signal technology controller	R	%	100	-100.0 100.0	r2294

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

#### 7.6.3.4 Write and read access via FC 03 and FC 06

#### Function codes used

For data exchange between the master and slave, predefined function codes are used for communication via Modbus.

The Control Unit uses the Modbus function code 03, FC 03 (read holding registers) for reading, and the Modbus function code 06, FC 06 (preset single register) for writing.

### Structure of a read request via Modbus function code 03 (FC 03)

Any valid register address is permitted as the start address.

The controller can access more than one register via FC 03 with a request. The number of addressed registers is contained in bytes 4 and 5 of the read request.

Table 7- 14 Invalid read requests

Read request	Converter response	
Invalid register address	Exception code 02 (invalid data address)	
Read a write-only register	Telegram in which all values are set to 0.	
Read a reserved register		
Controller addresses more than 125 registers	Exception code 03 (invalid data value)	
The start address and the number of registers of an address are located outside of a defined register block	Exception code 02 (invalid data address)	

Table 7- 15 Structure of a read request for slave number 17

Example	Example					
	Byte	Description				
11 h	0	Slave address				
03 h	1	Function code				
00 h	2	Register start address "High" (register 40110)				
6D h	3	Register start address "Low"				
00 h	4	Number of registers "High" (2 registers: 40110; 40111)				
02 h	5	Number of registers "Low"				
xx h	6	CRC "Low"				
xx h	7	CRC "High"				

Active 17/06/2014

Page 150 of 404

The response returns the corresponding data set:

Table 7-16 Slave response to the read request

Example					
	Byte	Description			
11 h	0	Slave address			
03 h	1	Function code			
04 h	2	Number of bytes (4 bytes are returned)			
11 h	3	Data of first register "High"			
22 h	4	Data of first register "Low"			
33 h	5	Data of second register "High"			
44 h	6	Data of second register "Low"			
xx h	7	CRC "Low"			
xx h	8	CRC "High"			

### Structure of a write request via Modbus function code 06 (FC 06)

Start address is the holding register address.

Using FC 06, precisely one register can always be addressed with one request. The value to be written to the addressed register is contained in bytes 4 and 5 of the write request.

Table 7- 17 Write request and response of the converter

Write request	Converter response
Incorrect address (a holding register address does not exist)	Exception code 02
Write to a "read-only" register	Modbus error telegram (exception code 04 - device failure)
Write to a reserved register	

Active 17/06/2014

If an incorrect address is entered (a holding register address does not exist), exception code 02 (invalid data address) is returned. An attempt to write to a "read-only" register or a reserved register is replied to with a Modbus error telegram (exception code 4 - device failure). In this instance, the detailed internal error code that occurred on the last parameter access via the holding registers can be read out via holding register 40499.

Table 7-18 Structure of a write request for slave number 17

Example	Example					
	Byte	Description				
11 h	0	Slave address				
06 h	1	Function code				
00 h	2	Register start address "High" (write register 40100)				
63 h	3	Register start address "Low"				
55 h	4	Register data "High"				
66 h	5	Register data "Low"				
xx h	6	CRC "Low"				
xx h	7	CRC "High"				

The response returns the register address (bytes 2 and 3) and the value (bytes 4 and 5) that was written by the higher-level controller to the register.

Table 7- 19 Slave response to the write request

Example	Example				
	Byte	Description			
11 h	0	Slave address			
06 h	1	Function code			
00 h	2	Register start address "High"			
63 h	3	Register start address "Low"			
55 h	4	Register data "High"			
66 h	5	Register data "Low"			
xx h	6	CRC "Low"			
xx h	7	CRC "High"			

## 7.6.3.5 Communication procedure

### Procedure for communication in a normal case

Normally, the master sends a telegram to a slave (address range 1 ... 247). The slave sends a response telegram to the master. This response telegram mirrors the function code; the slave enters its own address in the telegram and so the slave identifies itself with the master.

The slave only processes orders and telegrams which are directly addressed to it.

### **Communication errors**

If the slave detects a communication error on receipt (parity, CRC), it does not send a response to the master (this can lead to "setpoint timeout").

### Logical error

If the slave detects a logical error within a request, it responds to the master with an "exception response". In this case, the slave sets the highest bit in the function code to 1 in the response. If, for example, it receives an unsupported function code from the master, the slave responds with an "exception response" with code 01 (illegal function code).

Table 7-20 Overview of exception codes

Exception code	Modbus name	Remark
01	Illegal function code	An unknown (unsupported) function code was sent to the slave.
02	Illegal Data Address	An invalid address was requested.
03	Illegal data value	An invalid data value was detected.
04	Server failure	Slave has terminated during processing.

## Maximum processing time, p2024[0]

The slave-response time is the time in which the Modbus master expects a response to a request. Set the same slave-response time (p2024 [0] in the inverter) in the master and slave.

### Process data monitoring time (setpoint timeout), p2040

The alarm "Setpoint timeout" (F1910) is issued by the Modbus if p2040 is set to a value > 0 ms and no process data is requested within this time period.

The alarm "Setpoint timeout" only applies for access to process data (40100, 40101, 40110, 40111). The alarm "Setpoint timeout" is not generated for parameter data (40200 ... 40522).

#### Note

Adjust the time (factory setting = 100 ms) depending on the number of slaves and the baud rate set on the bus.

#### General information on CAN

You can find general information on CAN in the CAN Internet pages (<a href="http://www.can-cia.org">http://www.can-cia.org</a>); you can obtain an explanation of CAN terminology in the CANdictionary under CAN downloads (<a href="http://www.can-cia.org/index.php?id=6">http://www.can-cia.org/index.php?id=6</a>).

### Integrating a converter in a CANopen network

To integrate a converter in a CANopen network, we recommend the EDS file on the Internet (<a href="http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511">http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511</a>). This file is the description file of the SINAMICS G120 converter for CANopen networks. In this way, you can use the objects of the DSP 402 device profile.

## 7.7.1 CANopen Converter functions

CANopen is a CAN-based communication protocol with linear topology that operates on the basis of communication objects (COB).

There are two ways you can setup the communication between the inverter and the controller:

- Via the Predefined connection set (Page 167)
- Via Free PDO mapping (Page 169)

### Communication objects (COB)

The inverter operates with communication objects from the following profiles:

- CANopen communication profile CiA 301
- Device profile CiA 402 (Drives And Motion Control)
- Indicator profile DR 303-3

Specifically, these are:

- NMT Network management (NMT service) (Page 155)
   Network management objects for controlling CANopen communication and for monitoring the individual nodes on the basis of a master-slave relationship
- SDO SDO services (Page 158)
   Service data objects for reading and changing parameters
- PDO PDO and PDO services (Page 163)
   Process data objects to transfer process data; TPDO to send, RPDO to receive
- SYNC
   Synchronization objects
- EMCY

Time stamp and fault messages

### COB ID

A communication object contains the data to be transferred and a unique 11-bit COB ID. The COB ID also defines the priority for processing the communication objects. The communication object with the lowest COB ID always has the highest priority.

#### COB ID for individual communication objects

You will find the specifications for the COB IDs of the individual communication objects below:

• COB ID<sub>NMT</sub> = 0 Cannot be changed

• COB ID<sub>SYNC</sub> = free Pre-assigned with 80 hex

COB ID<sub>EMCY</sub> = free 80 hex + node ID = COB ID <sub>EMCY</sub>

• COB ID<sub>TPDO</sub> = free In the free PDO mapping \*)

• COB ID<sub>RPDO</sub> = free In the free PDO mapping \*)

• COB ID<sub>TSDO</sub> = 580 + node ID

• COB ID<sub>RSDO</sub> = 600 + node ID

COB IDNode Guarding/Heartbeat = 700 + node ID

### 7.7.1.1 Network management (NMT service)

Network management (NMT) is node-oriented and has a master-slave topology.

The NMT services can be used to initialize, start, monitor, reset, or stop nodes. Two data bytes follow each NMT service. All NMT services have the fixed COB ID = 0.

The SINAMICS converter is an NMT slave and can adopt the following states in CANopen:

### Initializing

The converter initializes itself after power on. In the factory setting, the converter then enters the "Pre-Operational" state, which also corresponds to the CANopen standard. Using p8684, you can set that after the bus has booted, the converter does not go into the "Pre-Operational" state, but instead, into the "Stopped" or "Operational" state.

#### Pre-Operational

In this state, the node cannot process any process data (PDO). However, the controller can use SDO parameters to change or operate the converter, which means that you can also enter setpoints via SDO.

<sup>\*)</sup> In the "Predefined Connection Set", see SectionPredefined connection set (Page 167) .

#### Operational

In this state, the node can process both SDO and PDO.

#### Stopped

In this state, the node cannot process either PDO or SDO. The "Stopped" state terminates one of the following commands:

- Enter Pre-Operational
- Start Remote Node
- Reset Node
- Reset Communication

The NMT recognizes the following transitional states:

#### • Start Remote Node:

Command for switching from the "Pre-Operational" communication state to "Operational". The drive can only transmit and receive process data (PDO) in "Operational" state.

#### Stop Remote Node:

Command for switching from "Pre-Operational" or "Operational" to "Stopped". The node only processes NMT commands in the "Stopped" state.

#### Enter Pre-Operational:

Command for switching from "Operational" or "Stopped" to "Pre-Operational". In this state, the node cannot process any process data (PDO). However, the controller can use SDO parameters to change or operate the converter, which means that you can also enter setpoints via SDO.

#### Reset Node:

Command for switching from "Operational", "Pre-Operational" or "Stopped" to "Initialization". When the Reset Node command is issued, the converter resets all the objects (1000 hex - 9FFF hex) to the state that was present after "Power On".

## Reset Communication:

Command for switching from "Operational", "Pre-Operational" or "Stopped" to "Initialization". When the Reset Communication command is issued, the converter resets all the communication objects (1000 hex - 1FFF hex) to the state that was present after "Power On".

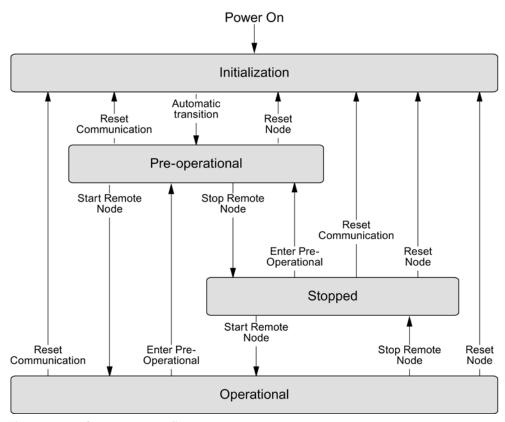


Figure 7-18 CANopen state diagram

Command specifier and Node\_ID indicate the transition states and addressed nodes:

#### Overview of NMT commands

NMT master - request → NMT slave - message				
Command Byte 0 (command specifier, CS) Byte 1				
Start	1 (01hex)	Node ID of the addressed node		
Stop	2 (02hex)	Node ID of the addressed node		
Enter Pre-Operational	128 (80hex)	Node ID of the addressed node		
Reset Node	129 (81hex)	Node ID of the addressed node		
Reset Communication	130 (82 hex)	Node ID of the addressed node		

The NMT master can simultaneously direct a request to one or more slaves. The following is applicable:

- Requirement of a slave:
   The controller accesses the slave with its node ID (1 127).
- Requirement for all slaves: Node ID = 0

The current state of the node is displayed via p8685. It can also be changed directly using this parameter:

• p8685 = 0 Initializing (display only)

• p8685 = 4 Stopped

p8685 = 127
 Pre-Operational (factory setting)

• p8685 = 128 Reset Node

• p8685 = 129 Reset Communication

You can also change the NMT state in STARTER via "Control\_Unit / Communication / CAN" under the "Network-Management" tab.

### 7.7.1.2 SDO services

You can access the object directory of the connected drive unit using the SDO services. An SDO connection is a peer-to-peer coupling between an SDO client and a server.

The drive unit with its object directory is an SDO server.

The identifiers for the SDO channel of a drive unit are defined according to CANopen as follows.

Receiving: Server  $\leftarrow$  client: COB ID = 600 hex + node ID Transmitting: Server  $\Rightarrow$  client: COB ID = 580 hex + node ID

#### **Properties**

The SDOs have the following properties:

- An SDO connection exists only in the Pre-Operational and Operational states
- Transmission is confirmed
- Asynchronous transmission (matches the acyclical communication via PROFIBUS DB)
- Transmission of values > 4 bytes (normal transfer)
- Transmission of values ≤ 4 bytes (expedited transfer)
- All drive unit parameters can be addressed via SDO

#### Structure of the SDO protocols

The basic structure of the SDO protocols is shown below:

Byte 0	Byte 1 2	Byte 3	Byte 4 7
CS (Access mode)	Index (Object number)	Sub index (Parameter index)	
	Header data	1	User data / cancellation code

Byte 0 (CS = command specifier) contains the access type of the protocol:

Write 4 bytes Read 3 bytes • 2F hex: 4B hex: 2B hex: Write 3 bytes Read 2 bytes 47 hex: 27 hex: Write 2 bytes 43 hex: Read 1 byte 23 hex: Write 1 byte 60 hex: Write confirmation Read request Error 40 hex: 80 hex: Read 4 bytes 4F hex:

### 7.7.1.3 Access to SINAMICS parameters via SDO

If you wish to change converter parameters in CANopen using the controller, use the SDO service.

You also configure RPDO and TPDO telegrams via SDO. You can find the objects that are available to do this in Section List of objects (Page 173).

### Object numbers for SDO jobs

In CAN, access the converter parameters with the SDO service via manufacturer-specific objects in the range from 2000 hex to 470F hex of the CANopen object directory.

Because you cannot directly address all of the parameters using this area, you require for an SDO job always the parameter number itself and the offset dependent on the parameter number.

### Selection of parameter range and the associated offset

Offset	Offset value
p8630[2] = 0	0
p8630[2] = 1	10000
p8630[2] = 2	20000
p8630[2] = 3	30000
	p8630[2] = 0 p8630[2] = 1 p8630[2] = 2

Calculate object number for an SDO job

The object number for the SDO job is calculated as follows: object number hex = (number of the converter parameter - offset value) hex + 2000 hex

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

159

#### **Examples of object numbers**

Parameter number	Number of the converter parameter - offset value Object number				
	Decimal	Hexadecimal			
• p0010:	10 dec	A hex	⇒ 200A hex		
• p11000:	1000 dec	3E8 hex	⇒ 23E8 hex		
• r20001:	1 dec	1 hex	⇒ 2001 hex		
• p31020:	1020 dec	3FC hex	⇒ 23FC hex		

### Selection, index range

A CANopen object can contain a maximum of 255 indexes. For parameters with more than 255 indexes, you must create additional CANopen objects via p8630[1]. Overall, 1024 indexes are possible.

- P8630[1] = 0: 0 ... 255
- P8630[1] = 1: 256 ... 511
- P8630[1] = 2: 512 ... 767
- P8630[1] = 3: 768 ... 1023

### Switch-on access to objects of the converter parameters

Access to objects of the converter parameters is activated via p8630[0], where:

- p8630[0] = 0: only access to CANopen objects (SDO, PDO, ...)
- p8630[0] = 1: access to virtual CANopen objects (converter parameters)
- p8630[0] = 2: not relevant for G120 converters

A selection of important manufacturer-specific objects is included in the EDS file.

## 7.7.1.4 Access PZD objects via SDO

### Access to mapped PZD objects

When you access objects mapped via transmit or receive telegrams, you can access the process data without additional settings.

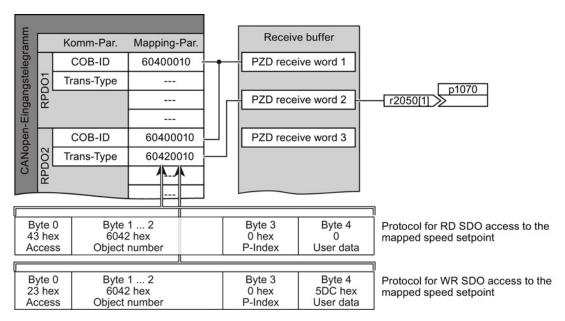


Figure 7-19 Access to the process data

## Access to non-mapped PZD objects

When you access objects that are not interconnected via the receive or transmit telegram, you must also establish the interconnection with the corresponding CANopen parameters.

There follows an example for switching the control word with the CANopen parameters:

ON/OFF1	p840[0] = r8795.0
No coast down activated	p0844[0] = r8795.1
No fast stop activated	p0848[0] = r8795.2
Enable operation	p0852[0] = r8795.3
Enable ramp-function generator	p1140[0] = r8795.4
Continue ramp-function generator	p1141[0] = r8795.5
Enable speed setpoint	p1142[0] = r8795.6
Acknowledge fault	p2103[0] = r8795.7
Stop	p8791 = r8795.8

## SDO abort codes

Abort code	Description
0503 0000 hex	Toggle bit not alternated Toggle bit has not changed
0504 0000 hex	SDO protocol timed out Timeout for the SDO protocol
0504 0001 hex	Client/server command specifier not valid or unknown Client/server command not valid or unknown
0504 0002 hex	Invalid block size (block mode only) Invalid block size
0504 0003 hex	Invalid sequence number (block mode only) Invalid sequence number
0504 0004 hex	CRC error (block mode only) CRC error
0504 0005 hex	Out of memory. Memory overflow
0601 0000 hex	Unsupported access to an object. Access to an object that is not supported
0601 0001 hex	Attempt to read a write only object. Attempt to read a "write-only object"
0601 0002 hex	Attempt to write a read only object. Attempt to write a "read-only object"
0602 0000 hex	Object does not exist in the object dictionary. Object does not exist in the object dictionary
0604 0041 hex	Object cannot be mapped to the PDO. Object cannot be linked with the PDO
0604 0042 hex	The number and length of the objects to be mapped would exceed PDO length.  The number and length of the linked objects exceeds the PDO length
0604 0043 hex	General parameter incompatibility reason.  Basic parameter incompatibility
0604 0047 hex	General internal incompatibility in the device.  Basic incompatibility in the device
0606 0000 hex	Access failed due to an hardware error. Access failed due to a hardware fault
0607 0010 hex	Data type does not match, length of service parameter does not match.  Data type and length of the service parameter do not match
0607 0012 hex	Data type does not match, length of service parameter too high.  Data type is not correct, service parameter is too long
0607 0013 hex	Data type does not match, length of service parameter too low.  Data type is not correct, service parameter is too short
0609 0011 hex	Subindex does not exist. Subindex does not exist
0609 0030 hex	Value range of parameter exceeded (only for write access).  Value range of the parameter exceeded (only for write access)
0609 0031 hex	Value of parameter written too high. Subindex does not exist

Abort code	Description
0609 0032 hex	Value of parameter written too low. Value of written parameter too small
0609 0036 hex	Maximum value is less than minimum value.  Maximum value is less than the minimum value
060A 0023 hex	Resource not available: SDO connection. Source does not exist: SDO connection
0800 0000 hex	General error. General error
0800 0020 hex	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application.  Data cannot be transferred or saved in the application
0800 0021 hex	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application because of local control.  Data cannot be transferred or saved because of the local controller
0800 0022 hex	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application because of the current device state.  Data cannot be transferred or saved because of the device condition
0800 0023 hex	Object dictionary dynamic generation failed or no object dictionary is present (e.g. object dictionary is generated from file and generation fails because of a file error).  Dynamic creation of the object dictionary failed or no object dictionary exists (e.g. object directory was generated from a defective file)

### 7.7.1.5 PDO and PDO services

### Process data objects (PDO)

CANopen transfers the process data using "Process Data Objects" (PDO). There are send PDOs (TDPO) and receive PDOs (RPDO). CAN controller and inverter each exchange eight TPDOs and RPDOs.

PDO communication parameters and PDO mapping parameters define a PDO.

Link the PDO with the elements of the object directory that contain the process data. You can use Free PDO mapping (Page 169) or the Predefined connection set (Page 167) to do this.

Parameter area for PDO	RPDO		TPDO	
	In the inverter	In CANopen	In the inverter	In CANopen
Communication parameters	p8700 p8707	1400 hex 1407 hex	p8720 p8727	1800 hex 1807 hex
Mapping parameters	p8710 p8717	1600 hex 1607 hex	p8730 p8737	1A00 hex1A07 hex

### Structure of the PDO

A PDO consists of communication and mapping parameters. Examples for the structure of the TPDO and RPDO follow.

The values for communication parameters can be found in the tables in Section List of objects (Page 173)

#### Aufbau der RPDO am Beispiel des RPDO1

p8700[0] = COB-ID	p8700[1] = Trans-Type	p8710.0_xx_yy	p8710.1_xx_yy	p8710.2_xx_yy	p8710.3_xx_yy
Sub-Ind 01	Sub-Ind 02	Objekt 1	Objekt 2	Objekt 3	Objekt 4
Communication	on parameters	ı .	Mapping p	arameters	7

#### TPDO structure based on the example of the TPDO1

	p8720[0] = COB-ID	p8720[1] = Trans-Type	p8720[2] = Inhibit time	p8720[4] = Event timer	p8730.0_xx_yy	p8730.1_xx_yy	p8730.2_xx_yy	p8730.3_xx_yy
L	Sub-Ind 01	Sub-Ind 02	Sub-Ind 03	Sub-Ind 05	Objekt 1	Objekt 2	Objekt 3	Objekt 4
Ĺ	Communication parameters		ı	Mapping p	arameters	T		

Mapping-parameters structure based on the example of the first mapped object

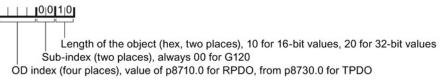


Figure 7-20 Structure of the RPDO and TPDO communication objects

### **COB ID**

An overview of the COB IDs can be found in Section CANopen Converter functions (Page 154). Section Predefined connection set (Page 167) explains how the COB IDs are calculated.

#### Transmission type

For process data objects, the following transmission types are available, which you set in index 1 of the communication parameter (p8700[1] ... p8707[1] / p8720[1] ... p8727[1]) in the inverter:

- Cyclic synchronous (value range: 1 ... 240)
  - TPDO after each n-th SYNC
  - RPDO after each n-th SYNC
- Acyclic synchronous (value: 0)
  - TPDO when a SYNC is received and a process data has changed in the telegram.

SINAMICS G120C converter

- Cyclic asynchronous (values: 254, 255 + event time)
  - TPDO when a process data has changed in the telegram.
- Acyclic asynchronous (values: 254, 255)
  - TPDO when a process data has changed in the telegram.
  - The controller accepts the RPDO immediately.

#### Inhibit time

The inhibit time defines the minimum interval between two transmissions.

### Synchronous data transmission

A periodic synchronization object (SYNC object) ensures that the devices on the CANopen bus remain synchronized during transmission.

Each PDO transferred as synchronization object must include a "transmission type" 1 ... n:

- Transmission type 1: PDO in each SYNC cycle
- Transmission type n: PDO in every n-th SYNC cycle

The following diagram shows the principle of synchronous and asynchronous transmission:

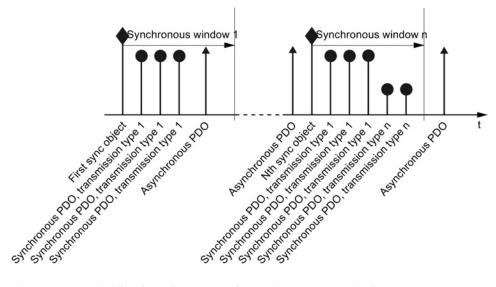


Figure 7-21 Principle of synchronous and asynchronous transmission

For synchronous TPDOs, the transmission mode also identifies the transmission rate as a factor of the SYNC object transmission intervals.

The CAN controller transfers data from synchronous RPDOs that it received after a SYNC signal only after the next SYNC signal to the inverter.

### Note

The SYNC signal synchronizes only the communication on the CANopen bus and not functions in the inverter, e.g. the clock times of the speed control.

#### **PDO** services

The PDO services can be subdivided as follows:

- Write PDO
- Read PDO
- SYNC service

#### Write PDO

The "Write PDO" service is based on the "push" model. The PDO has exactly one producer. There can be no consumer, one consumer, or multiple consumers.

Via Write PDO, the producer of the PDO sends the data of the mapped application object to the individual consumer.

#### Read PDO

The "Read PDO" service is based on the "pull" model. The PDO has exactly one producer. There can be one consumer or multiple consumers.

Via Read PDO, the consumer of the PDO receives the data of the mapped application object from the producer.

#### SYNC service

The SYNC object is sent periodically from the SYNC producer. The SYNC signal represents the basic network cycle. The standard "Communication cycle time" parameter sets the time interval between two SYNC signals in the master.

In order to ensure CANopen accesses in real-time, the SYNC object has a high priority, which is defined using the COB ID. It can be changed via p8602 (factory setting = 80 hex). The service runs unconfirmed.

#### Note

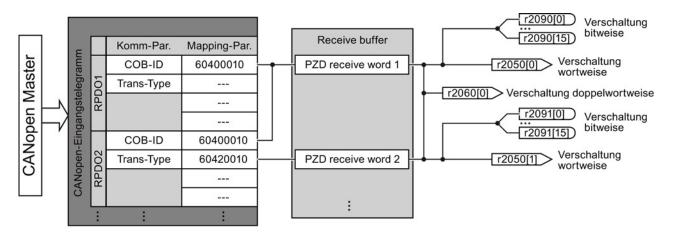
Set the COB ID of the SYNC object to the same value for all nodes of a bus that should respond to the SYNC telegram from the master.

The COB ID of the SYNC object is defined in object 1005h (p8602).

Page 166 of 404

#### 7.7.1.6 Predefined connection set

If you integrate the converter using the factory setting in CANopen, the converter receives the control word and the speed setpoint from the controller. The converter returns the status word and the actual speed value to the controller. These are the settings stipulated in the Predefined Connection Set.



Structure of the mapping parameter using the control word in the predefined connections set as an example

**RPDO1: Communication parameters** 

- p8700[0] = COB-ID
- p8700[1] = Transmission Type

Structure of the mapping parameter using the control word in the predefined connections set as an example

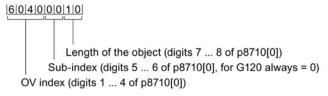
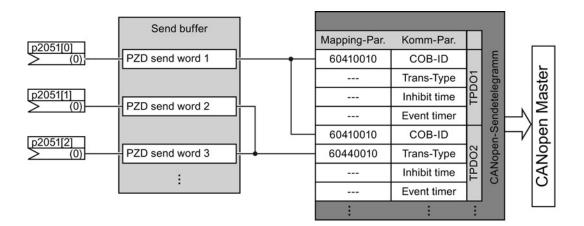


Figure 7-22 RPDO mapping with the Predefined Connection Set



Structure of the communication parameter using the status word in the predefined connections set as an example

**TPDO1: Communication parameters** 

- p8720[0] = COB-ID
- p8700[1] = Transmission type
- p8700[2] = Inhibit time
- p8700[3] = Event timer

Structure of the mapping parameter using the control word in the predefined connections set as an example

```
|6|0|4|1|0|0|1|0|
| Length of the object (digits 7 ... 8 of p8730[0])
| Sub-index (digits 5 ... 6 of p8730[0], for G120 always = 0)
| OV index (digits 1 ... 4 of p8730[0])
```

Figure 7-23 TPDO mapping with the Predefined Connection Set

Calculate the COB IDs using the following formula and enter the results in the p8700, p8701, p8720 and p8721 parameters.

#### COB ID for TPDO and RPDO in the Predefined Connection Set

• COB ID<sub>TPDO</sub> = 180 hex + node ID + ((TPDO no. - 1) \* 100 hex)

Example: For p8721[0] = COB-ID from TPDO 2, the following value results with the Node ID = C hex:

$$180 \text{ hex} + \text{C hex} + ((2 - 1)*100 \text{ hex}) = 18\text{C hex} + 100 \text{ hex} = 28\text{C hex}$$

• COB ID<sub>RPDO</sub> = 200 hex + node ID + ((RPDO no. - 1) \* 100 hex)

Example: For p8700[0] = COB-ID from RPDO 1, the following value results with the Node ID = C hex:

$$200 \text{ hex} + \text{C hex} + ((1 - 1) * 100 \text{ hex}) = 20 \text{C hex} + 0 \text{ hex} = 20 \text{C hex}$$

## 7.7.1.7 Free PDO mapping

Using the free PDO mapping, you configure and interconnect any process data as required as follows:

- as free objects, or
- as objects of drive profile CiA 402, corresponding to the requirements of your system for the PDO service

This requires that the inverter is set to a free PDO mapping (p8744 = 2) (factory setting).

## Interconnecting process data via a free PDO mapping



#### **Procedure**

To interconnect process data, proceed as follows:

- Define process data, examples:
  - Send actual current value (r0068) from the inverter to the controller (TPDO Transmit Process Data Object)
  - Send additional speed setpoint from the controller to the inverter (RPDO Receive Process Data Object) and write in p1075
- 2. Specify objects for transmission of the process data
  - TPDO1 for the actual current value
  - RPDO1 for additional speed setpoint
- 3. Set communication parameters for RPDO and TPDO
  - Define the communication parameters for RPDO, see RPDO communication parameters (Page 176)
  - Define the communication parameters for TPDO, see TPDO communication parameters (Page 179)
- 4. Select the OD index for the mapping parameters:
  - Mapping parameters for RPDO, see RPDO mapping parameters (Page 177)
  - Mapping parameters for TPDO, see TPDO mapping parameters (Page 180)
- 5. Write OV index into the SINAMICS mapping parameters
  - p8710 ... p8717 for RPDO
  - p8730 ... p8737 for TPDO
  - You will find the OD index in the free objects (Page 182) or in the objects of the CiA 402 drive profile (Page 173)

### 7.7 Communication via CANopen

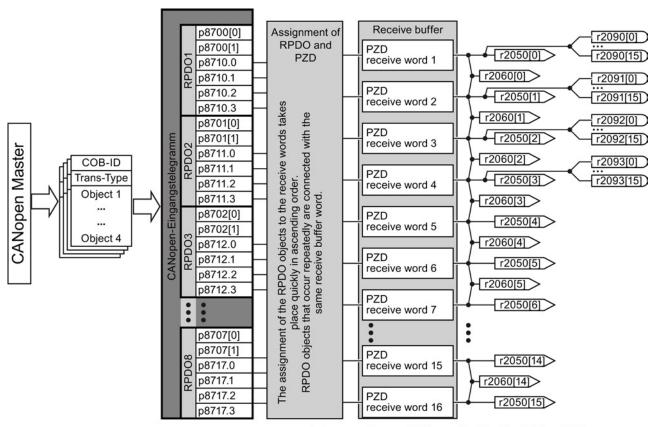
#### Note

### Requirement for changing the OD indexes of the SINAMICS mapping parameters

To allow you to change the values of the mapping parameters, you must set the COB ID of the corresponding parameter to invalid. Add the value 80000000 hex to the COB ID. If you have changed the mapping parameter, you must reset the COB ID to the valid value.

You have interconnected the process data.

### Free RPDO mapping - Overview



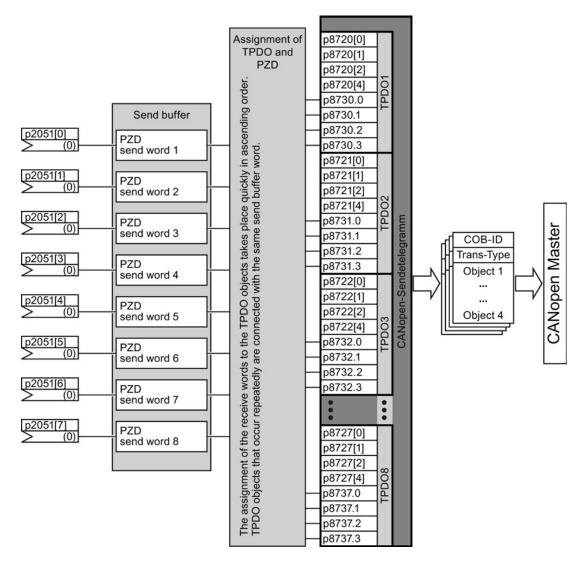
Interconnection possibilities: ► By bit with r2090 ... r2093

► By word with r2050[0 ... 15]

► By double word with r2060[0 ... 14]

Page 170 of 404

## Free TPDO mapping - Overview



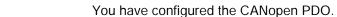
## 7.7.1.8 Interconnect objects from the receive and transmit buffers



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to configure the CANopen PDO:

- Create a telegram: create PDO (parameterize the PDO Com. Parameter and PDO mapping parameters), see Predefined connection set (Page 167) and Free PDO mapping (Page 169)
- Interconnect the parameters:
   Interconnect the parameters of the PZD buffer ( p2050/p2060, p2051) corresponding to the mapping of point "Create telegram" using the mapping table r8750/r8760 or r8751/r8761. The mapping table indicates the position of a mapped CANopen object in the PZD buffer.



SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

171

### Interconnecting the receive buffer

The inverter writes the received data in the receive buffer:

- PZD receive word 1 ... PZD receive word 12 double word in r2060[0] ... r2060[10].
- PZD receive word 1 ... PZD receive word 12 word in r2050[0] ... r2050[11].
- PZD 1 ... PZD 4 bit-by-bit in r2090.0 ... r2090.15 to r2093.0 ... r2093.15

The position of the mapped objects in the receive buffer is displayed in:

- r8760 for double word switching
- r8750 for word switching

### **Examples**

Object	Mapped receive objects	Receive word r2050	
Control word	r8750[0] = 6040 hex (PZD1)	Interconnect r2050[0] (PZD1) with control word <sup>1)</sup>	p0840.0 = 2090.0 p0844.0 = 2090.1 p0844.0 = 2090.2 p0852.0 = 2090.3 p2130.0 = 2090.7
Torque limit	r8750[1] = 5800 hex (PZD2)	Link r2050[1] (PZD2) with torque limit:	p1522 = 2050[1]
Speed setpoint	r8750[2] = 6042 hex (PZD3)	Link r2050[2] (PZD3) with speed setpoint:	p1070 = 2050[2]

<sup>1)</sup> see also p8790, "Automatic CAN control word interconnection"

### Interconnecting the send buffer

The inverter sends the data from the send buffer as follows:

- p2051[0] ... p2051[13] in PZD 1 ... PZD 14 (indication of the actual link in r2053[0 ... 13])
- p2061[0] ... p2061[12] in PZD 1 ... PZD 14 (indication of the actual link in r2063[0 ... 12])

### **Examples**

Object	Mapped send objects	Send word p2051	
Status word	r8751[0] = 6041 hex (PZD1)	Interconnect p2051[0] with PZD1	p2051[0] = r8784
Actual current value	r8751[1] = 5810 hex (PZD2)	Link PZD2 with actual current value	p2051[1] = r68[1
Actual speed value	r8751[2] = 6044 hex (PZD3)	Link PZD3 with actual speed value	p2051[2] = r63[0

Page 172 of 404

## 7.7.1.9 CANopen operating modes

The converter has the following CANopen operating modes

- Profile Velocity Mode:
   Closed-loop speed control with encoder with the objects relevant for this purpose.
- Velocity Mode: Simple speed control with ramps with the objects relevant for this purpose. It is preferably used for converters with V/f and I/f control.
- Profile Torque Mode:
   Torque control with the objects relevant for this purpose.

You can also use parameters from other CANopen operating modes, independently from the current effective CANopen operating mode.

		velocity mode	Profile velocity mode	Profile torque mode				
	velocity mode		p1300 < 20 V/f control	p1300 < 20 V/f control				
dn	Profile velocity mode	p1300 = 20 / 21 Speed control		p1500 = 0 (via BiCo) Speed control				
	Profile torque mode	p1300 = 22 / 23 Speed control	p1500 = 1 (via BiCo) Torque control					
Pa	Parameter access via SDO Parameter change via PDO							

Figure 7-24 Switching the CANopen operating modes

## 7.7.2 List of objects

### 7.7.2.1 General objects from the CiA 301 communication profile

#### Overview

The following table lists the drive-independent communication objects. The "SINAMICS parameters" column shows the parameter numbers assigned in the converter.

Table 7- 21 Drive-independent communication objects

OD index (hex)	Subindex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Transmis sion	Data type	Default values	Can be read/ written
1000		Device type	r8600	SDO	U32	-	r
1001		Error register	r8601	SDO	U8	-	r
1003	052 hex	Predefined error field	p8611[082]	SDO	U32	0	r/w
	0	Number of errors	p8611.0	SDO	U32	0	rw
	1	Number of module	p8611.1	SDO	U32	0	r
	2	Number of errors: module 1	p8611.2	SDO	U32	0	r

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

OD index (hex)	Subindex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Transmis sion	Data type	Default values	Can be read/ written
•	3-A	Standard error field: module 1	p8611.3- p8611.10	SDO	U32	0	r
	В	Number of errors: module 2	p8611.11	SDO	U32	0	r
	C-13	Standard error field: module 2	p8611.12- p8611.19	SDO	U32	0	r
	14	Number of errors: module 3	p8611.20	SDO	U32	0	r
	15-1C	Standard error field: module 3	p8611.21- p8611.28	SDO	U32	0	r
	1D	Number of errors: module 4	p8611.29	SDO	U32	0	r
	1E-25	Standard error field: module 4	p8611.30-p8611.37	SDO	U32	0	r
	26	Number of errors: module 5	p8611.38	SDO	U32	0	r
	27-2E	Standard error field: module 5	p8611.39-p8611.46	SDO	U32	0	r
	2F	Number of errors: module 6	p8611.47	SDO	U32	0	r
	30-37	Standard error field: module 6	p8611.48-p8611.55	SDO	U32	0	r
	38	Number of errors: module 7	p8611.56	SDO	U32	0	r
	39-40	Standard error field: module 7	p8611.57-p8611.64	SDO	U32	0	r
	41	Number of errors: module 8	p8611.65	SDO	U32	0	r
	42-49	Standard error field: module 8	p8611.66-p8611.73	SDO	U32	0	r
	4A	Number of Control Unit faults	p8611.74	SDO	U32	0	r
	4B-52	Field Control Unit standard error	p8611.75-p8611.82	SDO	U32	0	r
1005		SYNCH COB ID	p8602	SDO	U32	128	rw
1008		Manufacturer device name		SDO			
100A		Manufacturer software version	r0018	SDO	U32	-	r
100C		Guard time	p8604.0	SDO	U16	0	rw
100D		Lifetime factor	p8604.1	SDO	U16	0	rw
1010		Store parameters	p0977	SDO	U16	0	rw
	0	Largest subindex supported		SDO			
	1	Save all parameters	p0977	SDO	U16	0	rw

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Q-Pulse Id

OD index (hex)	Subindex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Transmis sion	Data type	Default values	Can be read/ written
,	2	Save communication parameters (0x1000-0x1fff)	p0977	SDO	U16	0	rw
	3	Save application-related parameters (0x6000-0x9fff)	p0977	SDO	U16	0	rw
1011		Restore default parameters	p0976	SDO	U16	0	rw
	0	Largest subindex supported		SDO			
	1	Restore all default parameters	p0976	SDO	U16	0	rw
	2	Restore communication default parameters (0x1000-0x1fff)	p0976	SDO	U16	0	rw
	3	Restore application default parameters (0x6000-0x9fff)	p0976	SDO	U16	0	rw
1014		COB ID emergency	p8603	SDO	U32	0	rw
1017		Producer heartbeat time	p8606	SDO	U16	0	rw
1018		Identy Object	r8607[03]		U32	-	r
	0	Number of entries		SDO			
	1	Vendor ID	r8607.0	SDO	U32	-	r
	2	Product code	r8607.1	SDO	U32	-	r
	3	Revision number	r8607.2	SDO	U32	-	r
	4	Serial number	r8607.3	SDO	U32	0	r
1027		Module list					
	0	Number of entries	r0102	SDO	U16	-	r
	1-8	Module ID	p0107[015]	SDO	I16	0	rw
1029		Error behavior					
	0	Number of error classes		SDO			
	1	Communication Error	p8609.0	SDO	U32	1	rw
	2	Device profile or manufacturer-specific error	p8609.1	SDO	U32	1	rw
1200		1st server SDO parameter					
	0	Number of entries		SDO			
	1	COB ID client -> server (rx)	r8610.0	SDO	U32	-	r
	2	COB ID server -> client (tx)	r8610.1	SDO	U32	-	r

## RPDO configuration objects

The following tables list the communication and mapping parameters together with the indexes for the individual RPDO configuration objects. The configuration objects are established via SDO. The "SINAMICS parameters" column shows the parameter numbers assigned in the converter.

Table 7- 22 RPDO configuration objects - communication parameters

OD Index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to				
1400		Receive PDO 1 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8700.0	U32	200 hex + node ID	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8700.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1401		Receive PDO 2 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8701.0	U32	300 hex + node ID	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8701.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1402		Receive PDO 3 communication parameter		_						
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8702.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8702.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1403		Receive PDO 4 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8703.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8703.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1404		Receive PDO 5 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8704.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8704.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1405		Receive PDO 6 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8705.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8705.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1406		Receive PDO 7 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8706.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8706.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				
1407		Receive PDO 8 communication parameter								
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	2	r				
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8707.0	U32	8000 06DF hex	r/w				
	2	Transmission type	p8707.1	U8	FE hex	r/w				

Table 7- 23 RPDO configuration objects - mapping parameters

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1600		Receive PDO 1 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	1	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8710.0	U32	6040 hex	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8710.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8710.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8710.3	U32	0	r/w
1601		Receive PDO 2 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	2	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8711.0	U32	6040 hex	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8711.1	U32	6042 hex	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8711.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8711.3	U32	0	r/w
1602		Receive PDO 3 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8712.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8712.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8712.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8712.3	U32	0	r/w
1603		Receive PDO 4 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8713.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8713.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8713.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8713.3	U32	0	r/w
1604		Receive PDO 5 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/written to
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8714.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8714.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8714.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8714.3	U32	0	r/w
1605		Receive PDO 6 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8715.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8715.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8715.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8715.3	U32	0	r/w
1606		Receive PDO 7 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8716.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8716.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8716.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8716.3	U32	0	r/w
1607		Receive PDO 8 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8717.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8717.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8717.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8717.3	U32	0	r/w

Q-Pulse Id

# TPDO configuration objects

The following tables list the communication and mapping parameters together with the indexes for the individual TPDO configuration objects. The configuration objects are established via SDO. The "SINAMICS parameters" column shows the parameter numbers assigned in the converter.

Table 7-24 TPDO configuration objects - communication parameters

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/written					
1800		Transmit PDO 1 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8720.0	U32	180 hex + node ID	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8720.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8720.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8720.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8720.4	U16	0	r/w					
1801		Transmit PDO 2 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8721.0	U32	280 hex + node ID	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8721.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8721.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8721.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8721.4	U16	0	r/w					
1802		Transmit PDO 3 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8722.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8722.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8722.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8722.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8722.4	U16	0	r/w					
1803		Transmit PDO 4 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8723.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8723.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8723.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8723.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8723.4	U16	0	r/w					
1804		Transmit PDO 5 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8724.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8724.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/written					
	3	Inhibit time	p8724.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8724.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8724.4	U16	0	r/w					
1805		Transmit PDO 6 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8725.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8725.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8725.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8725.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8725.4	U16	0	r/w					
1806		Transmit PDO 7 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8726.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8726.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8726.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8726.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8726.4	U16	0	r/w					
1807		Transmit PDO 8 communication parameter									
	0	Largest subindex supported		U8	5	r					
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8727.0	U32	C000 06DF hex	r/w					
	2	Transmission type	p8727.1	U8	FE hex	r/w					
	3	Inhibit time	p8727.2	U16	0	r/w					
	4	Reserved	p8727.3	U8		r/w					
	5	Event timer	p8727.4	U16	0	r/w					

Table 7- 25 TPDO configuration objects - mapping parameters

OD index (hex)	Subind ex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written
1A00		Transmit PDO 1 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	1	r/w
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8730.0	U32	6041 hex	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8730.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8730.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8730.3	U32	0	r/w
1A01		Transmit PDO 2 mapping parameter				

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

OD index (hex)	Subind ex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written			
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	2	r/w			
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8731.0	U32	6041 hex	r/w			
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8731.1	U32	6044 hex	r/w			
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8731.2	U32	0	r/w			
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8731.3	U32	0	r/w			
1A02		Transmit PDO 3 mapping parameter							
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r/w			
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8732.0	U32	0	r/w			
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8732.1	U32	0	r/w			
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8732.2	U32	0	r/w			
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8732.3	U32	0	r/w			
1A03		Transmit PDO 4 mapping parameter							
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r/w			
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8733.0	U32	0	r/w			
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8733.1	U32	0	r/w			
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8733.2	U32	0	r/w			
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8733.3	U32	0	r/w			
1A04		Transmit PDO 5 mapping parameter							
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r			
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8734.0	U32	0	r/w			
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8734.1	U32	0	r/w			
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8734.2	U32	0	r/w			
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8734.3	U32	0	r/w			
1A05		Transmit PDO 6 mapping parameter	1	ı	1	ı			
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r/w			
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8735.0	U32	0	r/w			
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8735.1	U32	0	r/w			

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 7.7 Communication via CANopen

OD index (hex)	Subind ex (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8735.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8735.3	U32	0	r/w
1A06		Transmit PDO 7 mapping parameter				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8736.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8736.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8736.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8736.3	U32	0	r/w
1A07		Transmit PDO 8 mapping parameter			•	
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		U8	0	r
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8737.0	U32	0	r/w
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8737.1	U32	0	r/w
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8737.2	U32	0	r/w
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8737.3	U32	0	r/w

# 7.7.2.2 Free objects

You can interconnect any process data objects of the receive and transmit buffer using receive and transmit double words.

- Scaling the process data of the free objects:

  - 32-bit (doubleword) 4000000 hex ≙ 100%
  - For temperature values: 16-bit (word): 4000 hex ≙ 100° C

The "SINAMICS parameters" column shows the parameter numbers assigned in the converter. The assignment applies to the case in which an object which is not mapped in any PDO is to be accessed via SDO.

OD index (hex)	Description	Data type per PZD	Default values	Can be read/ written	SINAMICS parameters
5800 580F	16 freely-interconnectable receive process data	I16	0	r/w	r8745[0 15]
5810 581F	16 freely-interconnectable transmit process data	I16	0	r	r8746[0 15]
5820 5827	8 freely-interconnectable receive process data	132	0	r/w	r8747[0 7]
5828 582F	Reserved				
5830 5837	8 freely-interconnectable transmit process data	132	0	r	r8748[0 7]
5828 582F	Reserved				

# 7.7.2.3 Objects from the CiA 402 drive profile

The following table lists the object directory with the index of the individual objects for the drives. The "SINAMICS parameters" column shows the parameter numbers assigned in the converter.

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Transmi ssion	Data type	Default setting	Can be read/written
Predefiniti	ons						
67FF		Single device type		SDO	U32		r
Common	entries	in the object dictionary					
6007		Abort connection option code	p8641	SDO	I16	3	r/w
6502		Supported drive modes		SDO	132		r
6504		Drive manufacturer		SDO	String	SIEME NS	r
Device co	ntrol				_		
6040		Control word	r8795	PDO/S DO	U16	-	r/w
6041		Status word	r8784	PDO/S DO	U16	-	r
605D		Halt option code	p8791	PDO/S DO	l16	-	r/w
6060		Modes of operation	p1300	SDO	18	_	r/w
6061		Modes of operation display	p1300	SDO	18	_	r
Factor gro	up				_		
6094		Velocity encoder factor		SDO	U8	-	r
	01	velocity encoder factor numerator	p8798[1]	SDO	U32	1	r/w
	02	velocity encoder factor denumerator	p8798[2]	SDO	U32	1	r/w
Profile Vel	ocity M	ode 3)	•	•	•	•	

## 7.7 Communication via CANopen

OD index (hex)	Subi ndex (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Transmi ssion	Data type	Default setting	Can be read/ written
6063		Actual position value	r0482	SDO/P DO	132	-	r
6069		Velocity sensor actual value	r0061	SDO/P DO	132		r
606B		Velocity demand value	r1170	SDO/P DO	132	-	r
606C		Velocity actual value Actual velocity	r0063	SDO/P DO	132	-	r
6083		Profile acceleration	p1082/p1120	SDO	132	_	r/w
6084		Profile deceleration	p1082/p1121	SDO	132	0	r/w
6085		Quick stop deceleration	p1082/p1135	SDO	132	0	r/w
6086		Motion profile type	p1115/p1134	SDO	132	0	r/w
60FF		Target velocity Set velocity	p1155[0] <sup>1)</sup> p1072 <sup>2)</sup>	SDO/P DO	132	0	r/w
Profile To	rque Mo	ode 3)	1.2	•		1	1
6071		Target torque torque setpoint	r8797	SDO/P DO	l16	-	r/w
6072		Max. torque	p1520	SDO	0	0	
6074		Torque demand value overall torque setpoint	r0079	SDO/P DO	l16	-	r
6077		Torque actual value	r0080	SDO/P DO	l16		r
Velocity m	ode						
6042		vl target velocity	r8792	SDO/P DO	l16	-	r/w
6043		vl velocity demand	r1170	SDO/P DO	l16	-	r
6044		vl velocity actual value	r0063	SDO/P DO	l16	-	r
6046	0	vl velocity min./max. amount		SDO	U8	_	r
	1	vl velocity min. amount	p1080	SDO	U32	_	r/w
	2	vl velocity max. amount	p1082	SDO	U32	_	r/w
6048	0	vl velocity acceleration		SDO	U8	_	r
	1	Delta speed	p1082	SDO	U32	_	r/w
	2	Delta time	p1120	SDO	U16		r/w

<sup>1)</sup> Without ramp-function generator

<sup>2)</sup> With ramp-function generator

<sup>3)</sup> The converter processes the objects of profile velocity mode and profile torque mode. But they cannot be set nor selected in converters.

CANOPER

Master

# 7.7.3 Integrating the converter into CANopen

## Commissioning

#### Precondition

- STARTER ≥ version 4.2, is installed on the computer used to commission the system.
- The inverter is connected to a CANopen master.
- The EDS (Electronic Data Sheet)
  (<a href="http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511">http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511</a>) is installed on your CANopen master.
- In the basic commissioning you have set the inverter interfaces to the CANopen fieldbus.

See also Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

This means that the following signals in the inverter are interconnected corresponding to the Predefined Connection Sets:

- Speed setpoint and control word
- Speed actual value and status word





Proceed as follows to commission the CANopen interface:

- 1. Integrating the converter into CANopen (Page 185)
- Set the node ID, baud rate and the monitoring of the communication.
   Also see "Setting the baud rate (Page Fehler! Textmarke nicht definiert.)" as well as "Setting the monitoring of the communication (Page 187)"
- 3. Interconnecting additional process data
  Set p8744 = 2. You can now interconnect additional process data.

See also "Free PDO mapping (Page 169)"

4. Signal interconnection of the links created in free PDO mapping.

See also Interconnect objects from the receive and transmit buffers (Page 171).

Exiting commissioning
 Select the "Operational" status in the "Network management" tab in the "Control Unit/Communication/CAN" STARTER screen form and exit the commissioning.

You have commissioned the CANopen interface.

More information about configuring the communication is provided in Sections List of objects (Page 173) and CANopen Converter functions (Page 154).

# 7.7.3.1 Connecting the converter to CANopen

Connect the converter to the fieldbus via the 9-pin SUB-D pin connector.

The connections of this pin connector are short-circuit proof and isolated. If the converter forms the first or last slave in the CANopen network, then you must switch-in the busterminating resistor.

For additional information on the SUB-D pin connector and on the bus-terminating resistor, please refer to Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).

# 7.7.3.2 Setting the node ID and baud rate

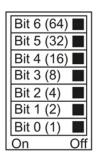
## Setting the node ID

You set the node ID of the inverter using the address switches on the Control Unit, using parameter p8620 or in STARTER.

Valid address range: 1 ... 127

If you have specified a valid node ID using the address switches, this node ID will always be the one that takes effect, and parameter p8620 (factory setting: 0) will not be able to be changed.

The positions of the address switches are described in Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, terminal blocks and LEDs of the converter (Page 41).





#### **Procedure**

To change the bus address, proceed as follows:



- 1. Set the address using one of the subsequently listed options:
  - using the address switches
  - with an operator panel using p8620
  - in STARTER using screen form "Control Unit/Communication/Fieldbus", or using the expert list with p8620
- 2. Switch on the inverter power supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit.
- 3. Switch on the voltages again after all LEDs at the inverter have gone dark.

This means that you have changed the bus address.

Page 186 of 404

## Setting the data transfer rate

You set the data transfer rate using parameter p8622 or in the STARTER "Control Unit/Communication/CAN" screen form under the "CAN interface" tab.

Setting range: 10 kbit/s ... 1 Mbit/s. The maximum permissible cable length for1 Mbit/s is 40 m.

In order that a newly set or modified data transfer rate becomes effective, switch on the inverter power supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit. Switch on the voltages again after all LEDs at the inverter have gone dark.

## 7.7.3.3 Setting the monitoring of the communication

To monitor the communication, use one of the following methods:

• Node guarding / life guarding



Monitoring request

Heartbeat

## Node guarding / life guarding

## Principle of operation

Node guarding:

Is always active if heartbeat is not activated (p8606 = 0). Node guarding means the master sends monitoring queries to the converter which then answers.

The converter does not monitor the communication. Set the responses to a bus failure in the master.

Life guarding:

is active if you use p8604.0 and p8604.1 to set a lifetime  $\neq$  0. Life Guarding means that the converter monitors the master's monitoring query and reports fault F8700 (A) with fault value 2, if a life guarding protocol (life guarding event) is not received within the lifetime. Set additional responses to a bus failure in the master.

#### Calculate value for lifetime

Life time = guard time in milliseconds (p8604.0) \* life time factor (p8604.1)

### Heartbeat

### Principle of operation

The slave periodically sends heartbeat messages. Other slaves and the master can monitor this signal. In the master, set the responses for the case that the heartbeat does not come.

## Setting value for heartbeat

Set in p8606 the cycle time for the heartbeat in milliseconds.

SINAMICS G120C converter

#### Converter behavior with a bus fault

With a bus fault, the CAN master goes to the "Bus OFF" status. In the converter set the response via the p8641 parameter. Factory setting: p8641 = 3 (AUS3). When you have resolved the bus fault, you can confirm the error as follows:

- via OFF/ON: this enables you to remove the Bus OFF state and start communication again.
- via the DI 2 or direct via p3981: the converter remains in the Bus OFF state. To start the communication again, set p8608 = 1.

# / WARNING

### Stopping the motor after a bus error

If the converter does not enter into a fault for a bus fault (p8641 = 0), the motor cannot be stopped via the controller.

For this case, wire an additional OFF command via terminals.

To stop the motor from the controller, you must resolve the bus fault and restart the communication via p8608 = 1.

# 7.7.4 Free PDO mapping for example of the actual current value and torque limit

Free PDO mapping for example of the actual current value and torque limit

You integrate the actual current value and torque limit into the communication via the free PDO mapping.

The actual current value and the torque setpoint are transferred in TPDO1 and RPDO1, respectively. TPDO1 and RPDO1 have already been specified by the Predefined Connection Set.

### Mapping the actual current value (r0068) with TPDO1



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to accept the current actual value as send object in the communication:

- 1. Set the OV index for the actual current value: first free OV index from the send data from the "Free objects" 5810 table
- 2. Map the OV index for the actual current value with PZD2:
  - Set the COB-ID of TPDO1 to "invalid": p8720[0] = 800001B2 hex
  - Link the mapping parameter object 2 of TPDO1 (p8730.1) with the OV index for the actual current value:
    - p8730.1 = 58100010 hex (5810 = OV index, 00 = fixed value, 10 ≜ 16 bit value)
  - Set the COB-ID of TPDO1 to "valid": p8720[0] = 400001B2 hex

r8751 shows which object is matched to which PZD: PZD2 (r8751[1]) = 5810 (actual current value)

3. link the PZD send word 2 in the send word (p2051) with the actual current value: p2051[1] = r0086[0]

This means you have transferred the actual current value into the communication as the send object.

SINAMICS G120C converter

188

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# Mapping the torque limit (p1520) with RPDO1



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to accept the torque limit value in the communication:

- Set the OV index for the torque limit: first free OV index from the receive data from the "Free objects" 5800 table
- 2. Map the OV index for the torque limit with PZD2
  - Set the COB-ID of RPDO1 to "invalid": p8700[0] = 80000232 hex

  - Set the COB-ID of RPDO1 to "valid": p8700[0] = 40000232 hex

r8750 shows which object is mapped to which PZD: PZD2 (r8750[1]) = 5800 (torque limit)

3. Link the PZD receive word 2 in the receive word (p2050) with the torque limit: p2050[1] = p1520[0]



This means you have transferred the value for the torque limit into the communication.

7.7 Communication via CANopen

Setting functions

Complete the following commissioning steps before you set the converter functions:

- Basic commissioning (Page 66)
- If necessary: Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79)
- If necessary: Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)

# 8.1 Overview of the inverter functions

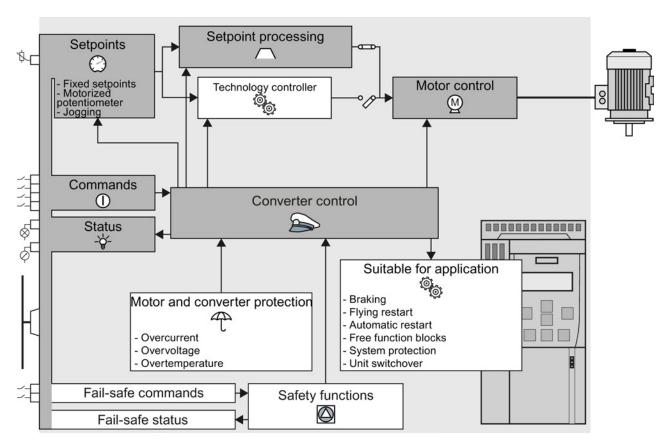


Figure 8-1 Overview of inverter functions

Functions	relevant to all applications	Functions required in special applications only			
The functions that you require in each application are shown in a dark color in the function overview above.  You set these functions during the basic commissioning, so that in many cases, the motor can be operated without having to make any additional settings.		The functions whose parameters you only need to adapt when actually required are shown in white in the function overview above.			
	Converter control is responsible for all of the other converter functions. Among other things, it defines how the converter responds to commands from the higher-level control system. Converter control (Page 193)	7	The <b>protection functions</b> prevent damage to the motor, converter, and driven load, e.g. using temperature monitoring or torque monitoring. Protection functions (Page 225)		
0	The <b>commands</b> from the higher-level control are sent to the converter via digital inputs or the fieldbus.  Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79)  Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)	-8-	The <b>status signals</b> provide signals at the outputs of the Control Unit via the fieldbus, e.g. the actual motor speed or the converter fault signal. Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79) Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)		
	You must define a <b>setpoint</b> , which defines the motor speed, for example.  Setpoint sources (Page 204)	<b>©</b>	Functions <b>suitable for the application</b> permit, for example, a motor holding brake to be controlled or higher-level closed-loop pressure or temperature control to be implemented using the technology controller.  Application-specific functions (Page 231)		
	The <b>setpoint processing</b> uses a ramp-function generator to prevent speed steps occurring and to limit the speed to a permissible maximum value.  Setpoint preparation (Page 210)		The <b>safety function</b> fulfills increased requirements regarding the functional safety of the drive.  Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO) (Page 261)		
<b>(Mar)</b>	The motor closed-loop control ensures that the motor follows the speed setpoint. You can select either closed-loop speed control or U/f control.  Motor control (Page 216)				

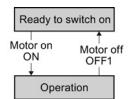
# 8.2 Converter control

# 8.2.1 Switching the motor on and off



After switching on the supply voltage, the inverter normally goes into the "Ready to switch on" state. In this state, the inverter waits for the command to switch-on the motor:

- The inverter switches on the motor with the ON command. The inverter changes to the "Operation" state.
- After the OFF1 command, the inverter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator. The inverter switches off the motor once standstill has been reached. The inverter is again "ready to start".

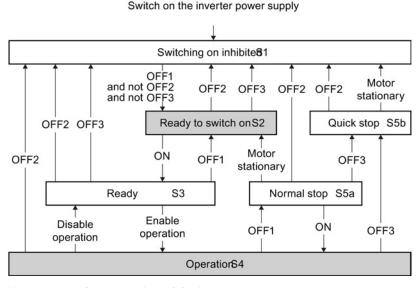


## Inverter states and commands for switching the motor on and off

In addition to the OFF1 command, there are other commands that are used to switch off the motor:

- OFF2 the inverter immediately switches off the motor without first braking it.
- OFF3 this command means "quick stop". After OFF3, the inverter brakes the motor with the OFF3 ramp-down time. After reaching standstill, the inverter switches off the motor. The command is frequently used for exceptional operating situations where it is necessary to brake the motor especially quickly. Collision protection is a typical application for this function.

The following diagram shows the internal sequence control of the inverter when switching the motor on and off.



Active 17/06/2014

Figure 8-2 State overview of the inverter

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 8.2 Converter control

Table 8-1 Explanation of the inverter states

State	Explanation
Switching on inhibited (S1)	In this state, the inverter does not respond to the ON command. The inverter goes into this state under the following conditions:
	ON was active when switching on the inverter.     Exception: When the automatic start function is active, ON must be active after switching on the power supply.
	OFF2 or OFF3 is selected.
Ready to switch on (S2)	This state is required to switch on the motor.
Ready (S3)	The inverter waits for the operating enable.
	If the inverter is controlled via a fieldbus, then you must set the operating enable in a control word bit.
	If the inverter is exclusively controlled via its digital inputs, then the operating enable signal is automatically set in the factory setting.
Operation (S4)	The motor is switched on.
Normal stop (S5a)	The motor was switched off with OFF1 and brakes with the ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator.
Fast stop (S5b)	The motor was switched off with OFF3 and brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time.

Q-Pulse Id

Five different methods are available for controlling the motor via digital inputs.

Table 8-2 Two-wire control and three-wire control

Behavior of the motor		
Clockwise   Stop   Counter-   Stop   Clockwise   rotation	Control commands	Typical application
Motor on/off	<ol> <li>Two-wire control, method 1</li> <li>Switching the motor on and off (ON/OFF1).</li> <li>Reverse the motor direction of rotation.</li> </ol>	Local control in conveyor systems.
Motor on/off, clockwise rotation  Motor on/off, counter-clockwise rotation	Two-wire control, method 2 and two-wire control, method 3  1. Switch the motor on and off (ON/OFF1), clockwise rotation.  2. Switch the motor on and off (ON/OFF1), counter-clockwise rotation.	Traction drives with control via joystick
Enable / motor off  Motor on, clockwise rotation  Motor on, counter-clockwise rotation  t	<ol> <li>Three-wire control, method 1</li> <li>Enable signal for switching the motor on and off (OFF1).</li> <li>Switch on the motor (ON), clockwise rotation.</li> <li>Switch on the motor (ON), counter-clockwise rotation.</li> </ol>	Traction drives with control via joystick
Enable / motor off	<ol> <li>Three-wire control, method 2</li> <li>Enable signal for switching the motor on and off (OFF1).</li> <li>Switch on motor (ON).</li> <li>Reverse the motor direction of rotation.</li> </ol>	-

## 8.2.2 Two-wire control: method 1

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1). while the other control command reverses the motor direction of rotation.

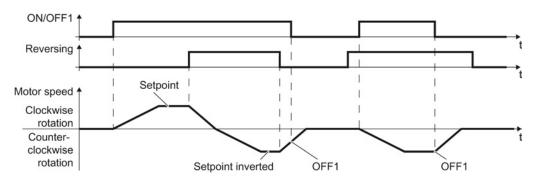


Figure 8-3 Two-wire control, method 1

Table 8-3 Function table

ON/OFF1	Reversing	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
0	1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.

Parameter	Description				
p0015 = 12	Macro drive unit (factory setting for inverters v	vithout PROFIB	US interface)		
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs	DI 0	DI 1		
	of the inverter:	ON/OFF1	Reversing		
Advanced setting Interconnecting control of	commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI	x).			
p0840[0 n] = 722.x	BI: ON/OFF1 (ON/OFF1)				
p1113[0 n] = 722.x	BI: Setpoint inversion (reversing)				
Example					
p0840 = 722.3 DI 3: ON/OFF1 Also see section Digital inputs (Page 80).					

# 8.2.3 Two-wire control, method 2

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1) and at the same time select clockwise motor rotation. You also use the other control command to switch the motor on and off, but in this case you select counter-clockwise rotation for the motor.

The inverter only accepts a new control command when the motor is at a standstill.

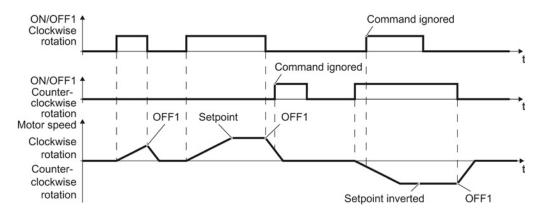


Figure 8-4 Two-wire control, method 2

Table 8-4 Function table

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter- clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	ON: The motor direction of rotation is based on the signal that assumes status "1" first.

Parameter	Description				
p0015 = 17	Macro drive unit				
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1		
		ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation		
Advanced setting Interconnecting control	commands with digital inputs of your	choice (DI x).			
p3330[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 1 (C	N/OFF1 clockwise ro	otation)		
p3331[0 n] = 722.x	722.x BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 2 (ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation)				
Example					
p3331 = 722.0	DI 0: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotation Also see section Digital inputs (Page 80).				

# 8.2.4 Two-wire control, method 3

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1) and at the same time select clockwise motor rotation. You also use the other control command to switch the motor on and off, but in this case you select counter-clockwise rotation for the motor.

Unlike method 2, the inverter will accept the control commands at any time, regardless of the motor speed.

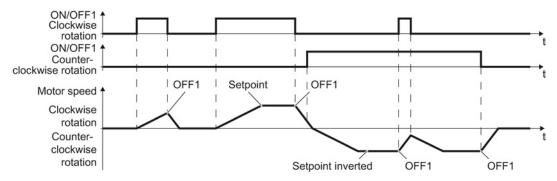


Figure 8-5 Two-wire control, method 3

Table 8-5 Function table

Clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter- clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Parameter	Description			
p0015 = 18	Macro drive unit			
	Controlling the motor using the digital	DI 0	DI 1	
Advanced setting	inputs of the inverter:	ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 counter- clockwise rotation	
Interconnecting control	commands with digital inputs of your cho	oice (DI x).		
p3330[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 1 (ON/	OFF1 clockwise ro	otation)	
p3331[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 2 (ON/	OFF1 counter-clo	ckwise rotation)	
Example				
p3331[0 n] = 722.2	DI 2: ON/OFF1 counter-clockwise rotal Also see section Digital inputs (Page 8			

Page 198 of 404

# 8.2.5 Three-wire control, method 1

With one control command, you enable the two other control commands. You switch the motor off by withdrawing the enable (OFF1).

You switch the motor's direction of rotation to clockwise rotation with the positive edge of the second control command. If the motor is still switched off, switch it on (ON).

You switch the motor's direction of rotation to counter-clockwise rotation with the positive edge of the third control command. If the motor is still switched off, switch it on (ON).

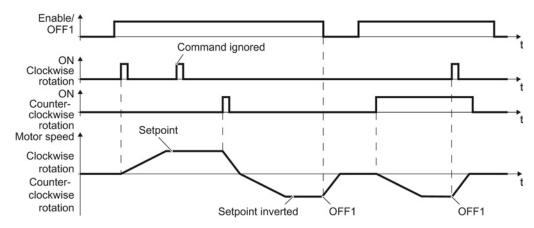


Figure 8-6 Three-wire control, method 1

Table 8- 6 Function table

Enable / OFF1	ON clockwise rotation	ON clockwise rotation	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
1	0	0→1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.
1	1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Parameter	Description			
p0015 = 19	Macro drive unit			
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1	DI 2
		Enable / OFF1	ON clockwise rotation	ON clockwise rotation
Advanced setting Interconnecting control of	Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).			
p3330[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 1 (enable/ OFF1)			
p3331[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 2 (ON clockwise rotation)			
p3332[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 3 (ON counter-clockwise rotation)			
Example				
p3332 = 722.0	DI 0: ON counter-clockwise ro Also see section Digital inputs			

Active 17/06/2014

# 8.2.6 Three-wire control, method 2

With one control command, you enable the two other control commands. You switch the motor off by withdrawing the enable (OFF1).

You switch on the motor with the positive edge of the second control command (ON).

The third control command defines the motor's direction of rotation (reversing).

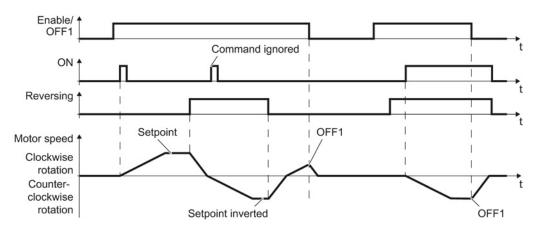


Figure 8-7 Three-wire control, method 2

Table 8-7 Function table

Enable / OFF1	ON	Reversing	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise motor rotation.
1	0→1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise motor rotation.

Parameter	Description			
p0015 = 20	Macro drive unit			
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1	DI 2
		Enable / OFF1	ON	Reversing
Advanced setting Interconnecting control	commands with digital inputs o	of your choice	(DI x).	
p3330[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 1 (enable/ OFF1)			
p3331[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE control command 2 (ON)			
p3332[0 n] = 722.x	BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 3 (reversing)			
Example				
p3331 = 722.0	DI 0: ON Also see section Digital input	s (Page 80).		

# 8.2.7 Running the motor in jog mode (JOG function)

The "Jog" function is typically used to slowly move a machine part, e.g. a conveyor belt.

With the "Jog" function, you switch the motor on and off using a digital input. When the motor is switched on, it accelerates to the jogging setpoint. There are two different setpoints available, e.g. for motor counter-clockwise rotation and clockwise rotation.

The same ramp-function generator acts on the setpoint as for the ON/OFF1 command.

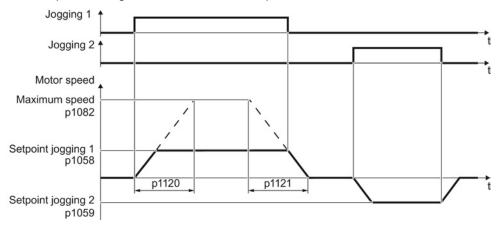
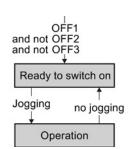


Figure 8-8 Behavior of the motor when "jogging"

The inverter must be ready to start before you issue the "Jog" control command. If the motor is already switched on, then the "Jog" command has no effect.



## Setting jogging

Parameter	Description		
p1058	Jogging 1 speed setpoint (factory setting 150 rpm)		
p1059	Jogging 2 speed setpoint (factory setting -150	rpm)	
p1082	Maximum speed (factory setting 1500 rpm)		
p1110	Inhibit negative direction		
	=0: Negative direction of rotation is enabled	=1: Negative direction of rotation is inhibited	
p1111	Inhibit positive direction		
	=0: Positive direction of rotation is enabled	=1: Positive direction of rotation is inhibited	
p1113	Setpoint inversion		
	=0: Setpoint is not inverted	=1: Setpoint is inverted	
p1120	Ramp-function generator ramp-up time (factory setting 10 s)		
p1121	Ramp-function generator ramp-down time (factory setting 10 s)		
p1055 = 722.0	Jog bit 0: Select jogging 1 via digital input 0		
p1056 = 722.1	Jog bit 1: Select jogging 2 via digital input 1		

# 8.2.8 Switching over the inverter control (command data set)

In several applications, the inverter must be able to be operated from different, higher-level control systems.

# Example: Switchover from automatic to manual operation

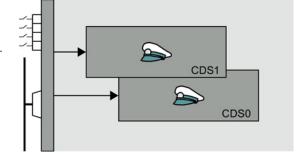
You control the motor either from a central control system, via fieldbus or from a local control panel.

## Command data set (CDS)

This means that you can set the inverter control in various ways and toggle between the settings. For instance, as described above, the inverter can either be operated via a fieldbus or via the terminal strip.

The settings in the inverter, which are associated with a certain control type of the inverter, are called command data set.

Figure 8-9 Different inverter control using several command data sets (CDS)



You select the command data set using parameter p0810. To do this, you must interconnect parameter p0810 with a control command of your choice, e.g. a digital input.

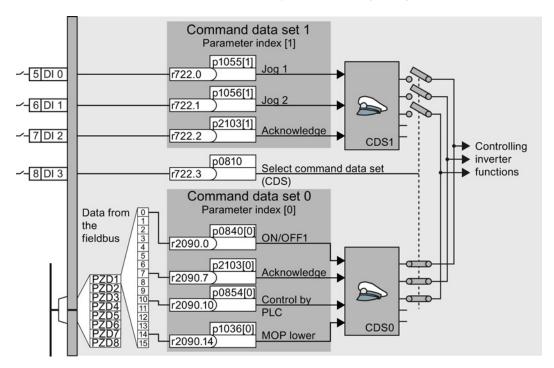


Figure 8-10 Example: Switching over the control via terminal strip to control via PROFIBUS or PROFINET

Page 202 of 404

8.2 Converter control

You obtain the interconnection as in the example above, if you configured the interfaces of the inverter with p0015 = 7 in the basic commissioning, also see Section Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

An overview of all the parameters that belong to the command data sets is provided in the List Manual.

## Note

It takes approximately 4 ms to toggle between command data sets.

# 8.3 Setpoint sources



The converter receives its main setpoint from the setpoint source. The main setpoint generally specifies the motor speed.

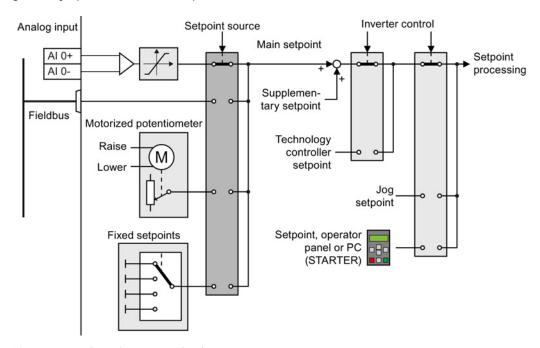


Figure 8-11 Setpoint sources for the converter

You have the following options when selecting the source of the main setpoint:

- Converter analog input.
- Converter fieldbus interface.
- Motorized potentiometer simulated in the converter.
- Fixed setpoints saved in the converter.

You have the same selection options when selecting the source of the supplementary setpoint.

Under the following conditions, the converter switches from the main setpoint to other setpoints:

- When the technology controller is active, it's output specifies the motor speed.
- When jogging is active.
- When controlling from an operator panel or the STARTER PC tool.

In the basic commissioning, you have already selected a setpoint source. Refer also to Section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

However, you can change this setting. On the following pages, you will find a more detailed description of the setpoint sources.

# 8.3.1 Analog input as setpoint source

## Interconnecting an analog input

If you have selected a pre-assignment without a function of the analog input, then you must interconnect the parameter of the main setpoint with an analog input.

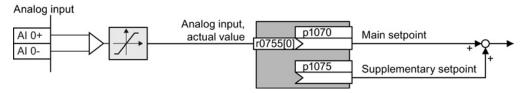


Figure 8-12 Example: Analog input 0 as setpoint source

Table 8-8 Setting with analog input 0 as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 755[0]	Main setpoint Interconnect the main setpoint with analog input 0
p1075 = 755[0]	Additional setpoint Interconnect the additional setpoint with analog input 0

You must adapt the analog input to the connected signal, e.g.  $\pm$  10 V or 4 ... 20 mA. You will find additional information in the section: Analog input (Page 84).

# 8.3.2 Specifying the motor speed via the fieldbus

If you enter the setpoint via a fieldbus, you must connect the converter to a higher-level control. For additional information, see Section Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91).

## Interconnecting the fieldbus with the main setpoint

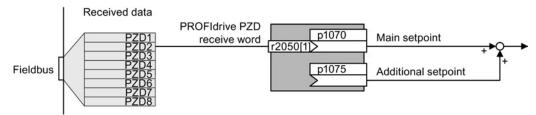


Figure 8-13 Fieldbus as setpoint source

Most standard telegrams receive the speed setpoint as a second process data PZD2.

## 8.3 Setpoint sources

Table 8-9 Setting the fieldbus as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 2050[1]	Main setpoint Interconnect the main setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.
p1075 = 2050[1]	Additional setpoint Interconnect the additional setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.

# 8.3.3 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

The "Motorized potentiometer" function emulates an electromechanical potentiometer The output value of the motorized potentiometer can be continually set using the "up" and "down" control signals.

# Interconnecting the motorized potentiometer (MOP) with the setpoint source

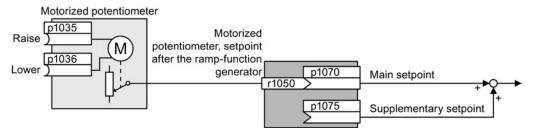


Figure 8-14 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

Table 8- 10 Basic setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description
p1047	MOP ramp-up time (factory setting 10 s)
p1048	MOP ramp-down time (factory setting 10 s)
p1040	MOP start value (factory setting 0 rpm) Defines the start value [rpm], which is effective when first switching on the motor.

Table 8- 11 Setting the MOP as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 1050	Main setpoint Interconnecting the main setpoint with MOP.
p1035	Motorized potentiometer, increase setpoint (factory setting 0) Interconnect this signal, for example with a digital input of your choice: p1035 = 722.1 (digital input 1)
p1036	Motorized potentiometer, decrease setpoint (factory setting 0) Interconnect this signal, for example with a digital input of your choice.

# Adapting the behavior of the motorized potentiometer

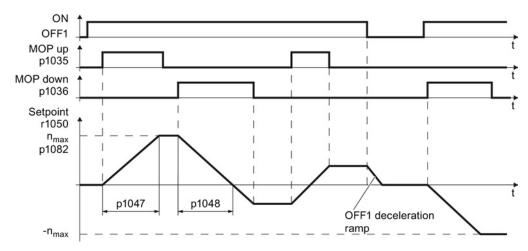


Figure 8-15 Function chart of motorized potentiometer

Table 8- 12 Extended setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description		
p1030	MOP configuration (factory setting 00110 bin)		
	Parameter value with four independently adjustable bits 00 03		
	Bit 00: Save setpoint after switching off motor  0: After the motor is switched on, p1040 is specified as the setpoint  1: Setpoint is saved after the motor is switched off and set to the saved value once it is switched on		
	<b>Bit 01:</b> Configure ramp-function generator in automatic mode (1-signal via BI: p1041) 0: Without ramp-function generator in the automatic mode (ramp-up/ramp-down time = 0)		
	1: With ramp-function generator in the automatic mode In manual mode (0-signal via BI: p1041) the ramp-function generator is always active		
	Bit 02: Configure initial rounding 0: Without initial rounding 1: With initial rounding. Using the initial rounding function it is possible to enter very small setpoint changes		
	Bit 03: Store setpoint in power-independent manner 0: No power-independent saving 1: Setpoint is saved in the event of a power failure (bit 00 = 1)		
	Bit 04: Ramp-function generator always active 0: Setpoint is only calculated with enabled pulses 1: The setpoint is calculated independent of the pulse enable.		
p1037	MOP maximum speed (factory setting 0 rpm) Automatically pre-assigned when commissioning		
p1038	MOP minimum speed (factory setting 0 rpm) Automatically pre-assigned when commissioning		
p1044	MOP setting value (factory setting 0) Signal source for the setting value.		

For more information about the motorized potentiometer, refer to function diagram 3020 in the List Manual.

#### 8.3.4 Fixed speed as setpoint source

In many applications after switching on the motor, all that is needed is to run the motor at a constant speed or to switch between different speeds.

Example: After it has been switched on, a conveyor belt only runs with two different velocities.

### Interconnecting the fixed speeds with a main setpoint

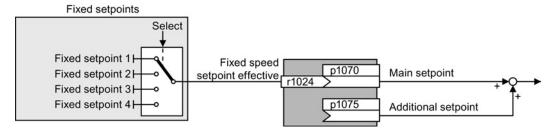


Figure 8-16 Fixed speeds as setpoint source

Table 8-13 Setting the fixed speed as a setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 1024	Main setpoint Interconnecting the main setpoint with fixed speeds.
p1075 = 1024	Additional setpoint Interconnecting the additional setpoint with fixed speeds

## Select direct or binary fixed setpoint

The inverter has up to 16 different fixed setpoints. The superior controller selects the appropriate fixed setpoints via digital inputs or the field bus.

The inverter distinguishes between two methods for selecting the fixed setpoints:

### 1. Direct selection:

You set four different fixed setpoints. By adding one or more of the four fixed setpoints, up to 16 different resulting setpoints are obtained.

Direct selection is the most suitable method for controlling the inverter via the digital inputs.

Additional information about direct selection can be found in function diagram 3011 in the List Manual.

### 2. Binary selection:

You set 16 different fixed setpoints. You precisely select one of these fixed setpoints by a combination of four selection bits.

The binary selection is the suitable method of controlling the inverter via a field bus. Additional information about binary selection can be found in function diagram 3010 of the List Manual.

Active 17/06/2014

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

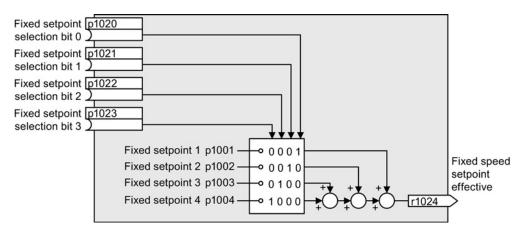


Figure 8-17 Simplified function diagram for directly selecting fixed setpoints

# Example: Select two fixed setpoints directly

The motor is to operate at two different speeds as follows:

- The signal on digital input 0 switches the motor on and accelerates it to 300 rpm.
- The signal at digital input 1 accelerates the motor to 2000 rpm.

Table 8- 14 Settings for the example

Parameter	Description
p1001 = 300.000	Fixed speed setpoint 1 in [rpm]
p1002 = 2000.000	Fixed speed setpoint 2 in [rpm]
p0840 = 722.0	ON/OFF1: Switch on motor with digital input 0
p1070 = 1024	<b>Main setpoint:</b> Interconnect the main setpoint with the fixed speed setpoint.
p1020 = 722.0	<b>Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0:</b> Interconnect fixed setpoint 1 with digital input 0 (DI 0).
p1021 = 722.1	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1: Interconnect fixed setpoint 2 with DI 1.
p1016 = 1	Fixed speed setpoint mode: Select direct selection of the fixed setpoints.

Table 8- 15 Resulting fixed setpoints for the example above

Fixed setpoint selected by	Resulting setpoint
DI 0 = LOW	Motor stops
DI 0 = HIGH and DI 1 = LOW	300 rpm
DI 0 = HIGH and DI 1 = HIGH	2300 rpm

# 8.4 Setpoint preparation

# 8.4.1 Overview of setpoint processing



The setpoint can be modified as follows using the setpoint processing:

- Invert setpoint to reverse the motor direction of rotation (reversing).
- Inhibit positive or negative direction of rotation, e.g. for conveyor belts, pumps or fans.
- Minimum speed to avoid standstill when the motor is switched on.
- Limit to a maximum speed to protect the motor and mechanical system.
- Ramp-function generator to accelerate and brake the motor with an optimum torque.

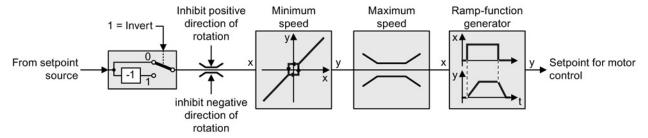


Figure 8-18 Setpoint processing in the inverter

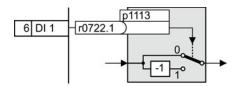
# 8.4.2 Invert setpoint



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to invert the setpoint:

Interconnect parameter p1113 with a binary signal, e.g. digital input 1.



You have inverted the setpoint.

Table 8- 16 Examples of settings to invert the setpoint

Parameter	Remark
p1113 = 722.1	Setpoint inversion Digital input 1 = 0: Setpoint remains unchanged. Digital input 1 = 1: Inverter inverts the setpoint.
p1113 = 2090.11	Invert setpoint via control word 1, bit 11.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 8.4.3 Inhibit direction of rotation

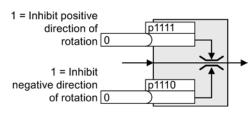
In the factory setting of the inverter, both motor directions of rotation are enabled.

### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to permanently lock a direction of rotation:

Set the corresponding parameter to a value = 1.



You have permanently locked the appropriate direction of rotation.

Table 8- 17 Examples of settings to inhibit the direction of rotation

Parameter	Remark
p1110 = 1	Inhibit negative direction  Negative direction is permanently inhibited.
p1110 = 722.3	Inhibit negative direction  Digital input 3 = 0: Negative direction of rotation is enabled.  Digital input 3 = 1: Negative direction of rotation is inhibited.

# 8.4.4 Minimum speed

## **Function**

The converter prevents continuous motor operation at speeds < minimum speed.

Speeds, where the absolute value is less than the minimum speed, are only possible when accelerating or braking.

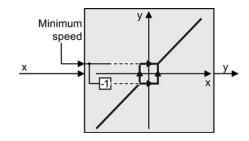


Table 8-18 Setting the minimum speed

Parameter	Description
p1080	Minimum speed

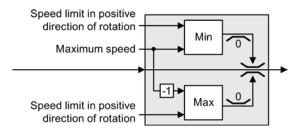
8.4 Setpoint preparation

# 8.4.5 Maximum speed

## **Function**

The maximum speed limits the speed setpoint range for both directions of rotation.

The converter generates a message (fault or alarm) when the maximum speed is exceeded.



The maximum speed also acts as a reference value for several other functions, e.g. the ramp-function generator.

If you must limit the speed depending on the direction of rotation, then you can define speed limits for each direction.

Table 8-19 Parameters for minimum and maximum speed

Parameter	Description
p1082	Maximum speed (factory setting 1500 rpm)
p1083	Speed limit, positive direction of rotation (factory setting 210,000 rpm)
p1086	Speed limit, negative direction of rotation (factory setting -210,000 rpm)

# 8.4.6 Ramp-function generator

The ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel limits the rate that the speed setpoint changes. As a consequence the motor accelerates and brakes more softly, reducing the stress on the mechanical system of the driven machine.

The ramp-function generator is not active if the technology controller in the inverter specifies the speed setpoint.

## **Extended ramp-function generator**

The ramp-up and ramp-down times of the extended ramp-function generator can be set independently of each other. The optimum times that you select depend on your particular application in question and can range from just a few 100 ms (e.g. for belt conveyor drives) to several minutes (e.g. for centrifuges).

Initial and final rounding permit smooth, jerk-free acceleration and braking.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times of the motor are increased by the rounding times:

- Effective ramp-up time = p1120
   + 0.5 × (p1130 + p1131).
- Effective ramp-down time = p1121 + 0.5 × (p1130 + p1131).

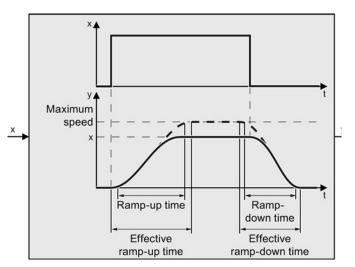


Table 8- 20 Additional parameters to set the extended ramp-function generator

Parameter	Description
p1115	Ramp-function generator selection (factory setting: 1) Select ramp-function generator: 0: Basic ramp-function generator 1: Extended ramp-function generator
p1120	Ramp-function generator, ramp-up time (factory setting 10 s) Accelerating time in seconds from zero speed up to the maximum speed p1082
p1121	Ramp-function generator, ramp-down time (factory setting 10 s) braking time in seconds from the maximum speed down to standstill
p1130	Ramp-function generator initial rounding time (factory setting: 0 s) Initial rounding for the extended ramp-function generator. The value applies for ramp up and ramp down.
p1131	Ramp-function generator final rounding time (factory setting: 0 s) Final rounding for the extended ramp-function generator. The value applies for ramp up and ramp down.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 8.4 Setpoint preparation

Parameter	Description
p1134	Ramp-function rounding type (factory setting: 0) 0: Continuous smoothing 1: Discontinuous smoothing  y  p1134 = 0  y  p1134 = 1
p1135	OFF3 ramp-down time (factory setting 0 s) The quick stop (OFF3) has its own ramp-down time.
p1136	<b>OFF3 initial rounding time</b> (factory setting: 0 s) Initial rounding for OFF3 for the extended ramp-function generator.
p1137	<b>OFF3 final rounding time</b> (factory setting: 0 s) Final rounding for OFF3 for the extended ramp-function generator

You can find more information in function diagram 3070 and in the parameter list of the List Manual.

## Setting the extended ramp-function generator



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to set the extended ramp-function generator:

- 1. Enter the highest possible speed setpoint.
- 2. Switch on the motor.
- 3. Evaluate your drive response.
  - If the motor accelerates too slowly, then reduce the ramp-up time.

An excessively short ramp-up time means that the motor will reach its current limiting when accelerating, and will temporarily not be able to follow the speed setpoint. In this case, the drive exceeds the set time.

- If the motor accelerates too fast, then extend the ramp-up time.
- Increase the initial rounding if the acceleration is jerky.
- We recommend that you set the final rounding to the same value as the initial rounding.
- 4. Switch off the motor.
- 5. Evaluate your drive response.
  - If the motor decelerates too slowly, then reduce the ramp-down time.

An excessively short ramp-down time means that the motor will temporarily not be able to follow the speed setpoint. Depending on the Power Module being used, the reason for this is that either the motor current limit has been reached, or there is a risk of an excessively high inverter DC link voltage.

In any case, the drive exceeds the set time.

- If the motor decelerates too quickly, then extend the ramp-down time.
- 6. Repeat steps 1 ... 5, until you are satisfied with your drive response.

You have set the extended ramp-function generator.

SINAMICS G120C converter

### Changing the ramp-up and ramp-down times in operation

Using a scaling factor, the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator can be changed in operation. You have the following options of entering a scaling value:

- Using an analog input
- · Using a fieldbus

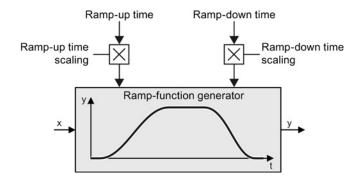


Table 8- 21 Parameters for setting the scaling

Parameter	Description
p1138	Up ramp scaling (factory setting: 1) Signal source for scaling the up ramp.
p1139	Down ramp scaling (factory setting: 1) Signal source for scaling the down ramp.

## Example

In the following example, the higher-level control sets the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the inverter via PROFIBUS.

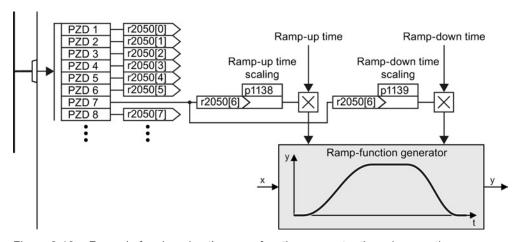


Figure 8-19 Example for changing the ramp-function generator times in operation

## Preconditions

- You have commissioned the communication between the inverter and the control system.
- Free telegram 999 has been set in the inverter and in your higher-level control system.
   See also Section: Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 103).
- The controller sends the scaling value to the inverter in PZD 7.

SINAMICS G120C converter

### 8.5 Motor control



### **Procedure**

To interconnect the scaling of the ramp-up and ramp-down times with PZD receive word 7 from the fieldbus in the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Set p1138 = 2050[6].

This means that you have interconnected the scaling factor for the ramp-up time with PZD receive word 7.

2. Set p1139 = 2050[6].

This means that you have interconnected the scaling factor for the ramp-down time with PZD receive word 7.

The inverter receives the value for scaling the ramp-up and ramp-down times via PZD receive word 7.

# 8.5 Motor control



Decision-making criteria for the control mode that is suitable for your application is provided in Section Factory setting of the inverter control (Page 62)

### 8.5.1 V/f control

U/f control sets the voltage at the motor terminals on the basis of the specified speed setpoint.

The relationship between the speed setpoint and stator voltage is calculated using characteristic curves. The required output frequency is calculated on the basis of the speed setpoint and the number of pole pairs of the motor (f = n \* number of pole pairs / 60, in particular:  $f_{max} = p1082 * number of pole pairs / 60$ ).

The inverter provides the two most important characteristics (linear and square-law). User-defined characteristic curves are also supported.

U/f control is not a high-precision method of controling the speed of the motor. The speed setpoint and the speed of the motor shaft are always slightly different. The deviation depends on the motor load.

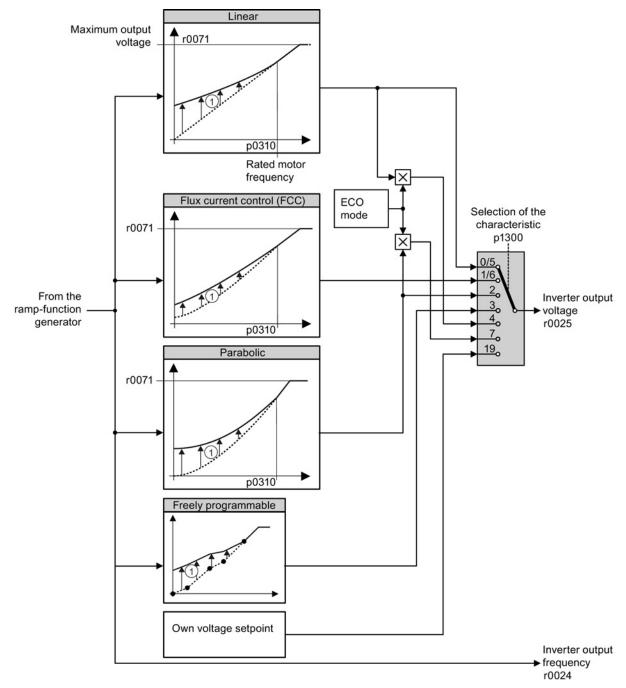
If the connected motor is loaded with the rated torque, the motor speed is below the speed setpoint by the amount of the rated motor slip. If the load is driving the motor (i.e. the motor is operating as a generator), the motor speed is above the speed setpoint.

Parameter p1300 sets the characteristic curve.

Page 216 of 404

# 8.5.1.1 Characteristics of U/f control

The inverter has several U/f characteristics. Based on the characteristic, as the frequency increases, the inverter increases the voltage at the motor.



① The voltage boost of the characteristic improves motor behavior at low speeds. The voltage boost is effective for frequencies < rated frequency

Figure 8-20 U/f characteristics of the inverter

#### 8.5 Motor control

The inverter increases its output voltage – also above the motor rated speed up to the maximum output voltage. The higher the line voltage, the greater the maximum inverter output voltage.

If the inverter has reached its maximum output voltage, then it can only increase its output frequency. From this point onwards, the motor is operated in field weakening; this means that the available torque linearly decreases with increasing speed.

The value of the motor voltage at the rated motor frequency also depends on the following variables:

- Ratio between the inverter size and the motor size
- Line voltage
- Line impedance
- Actual motor torque

The maximum possible motor voltage as a function of the input voltage is provided in the technical data, also see Section Technical data (Page 339).

# 8.5.1.2 Selecting the U/f characteristic



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to select a U/f characteristic:

1. Go into the menu "PARAMS".	1. Go online.
2. As parameter filter, select "EXPERT".	2. Select the U/f characteristic curve in one of the
3. Set p1300 to the appropriate value.	screen forms "speed controller" or "U/f control".

You have selected a U/f characteristic.

Table 8- 22 Linear and parabolic characteristics

Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
The required	Conveyor belts, roller	-	Linear	p1300 = 0
torque is independent of the speed	conveyors, chain conveyors, eccentric worm pumps, compressors, extruders, centrifuges, agitators, mixers	The inverter equalizes the voltage drops across the stator resistance. Recommended for motors less than 7.5 kW. Precondition: You have set the motor data according to the rating plate and have performed the motor identification after the basic commissioning.	Linear with Flux Current Control (FCC)	p1300 = 1
The required torque increases with the speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	Lower losses in the motor and inverter than for a linear characteristic.	Parabolic	p1300 = 2

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Table 8-23 Characteristics for special applications

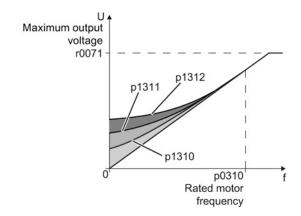
Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
Applications with a low dynamic response and constant speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	The ECO mode results in additional energy saving when compared to the parabolic characteristic.  If the speed setpoint is reached and remains unchanged for 5 seconds, the inverter again reduces its output voltage.	ECO mode	p1300 = 4 or p1300 = 7
The inverter must keep the motor speed constant under all circumstances.	Drives in the textile sector	When the maximum current limit is reached, the inverter only reduces the stator voltage but not the speed.	Precise frequency characteristic	p1300 = 5 or p1300 = 6
Freely adjustable U/f characteristic	Operating the inverter with a synchronous motor	-	Adjustable characteristic	p1300 = 3
U/f characteristic with independent voltage setpoint	-	The interrelationship between the frequency and voltage is not calculated in the inverter, but is specified by the user.	Independent voltage setpoint	p1300 = 19

Additional information on U/f characteristics can be found in the parameter list and in the function diagrams 6300 ff of the List Manual.

# 8.5.1.3 Optimizing with a high break loose torque and brief overload

# Setting the voltage boost for U/f control

The voltage boost acts on every U/f characteristic. The adjacent diagram shows the voltage boost using a linear characteristic as example.



#### 8.5 Motor control



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to set the voltage boost:

Only increase the voltage boost in small steps. Excessively high values in p1310 ... p1312 can cause the motor to overheat and switch off (trip) the inverter due to overcurrent.

- 1. Power-up the motor with an average speed.
- 2. Reduce the speed to just a few revolutions per minute.
- 3. Check whether the motor rotates smoothly.
- 4. If the motor does not rotate smoothly, or even remains stationary, increase the voltage boost p1310 until you are satisfied with the motor behavior.
- 5. Accelerate the motor to the maximum speed with maximum load and check as to whether the motor follows the setpoint.
- 6. If, when accelerating, the motor stalls, increase the voltage boost p1311 until the motor accelerates to the maximum speed without any problems.

To achieve satisfactory motor behavior, you must increase the parameter p1312 only in applications with a significant breakaway torque.

You will find more information about this function in the parameter list and in function diagram 6300 of the List Manual.

You have set the voltage boost.

Parameter	Description		
p1310	Permanent voltage boost (factory setting 50%)		
	Compensates voltage drops as a result of long motor cables and the ohmic losses in the motor.		
p1311	Voltage boost when accelerating (factory setting 0%)		
	Provides additional torque when the motor accelerates.		
p1312	Voltage boost when starting (factory setting 0%)		
	Provides additional torque, however, only when the motor accelerates for the first time after it has been switched on ("break loose torque").		

Q-Pulse Id

# 8.5.2 Vector control

# 8.5.2.1 Properties of the sensorless vector control

#### Sensorless vector control

Using a motor model, the speed control calculates the load and the motor slip. As a result of this calculation, the inverter controls its output voltage and frequency so that the motor speed follows the setpoint, independent of the motor load.

Speed control is possible without directly measuring the motor speed and is therefore also called "sensorless vector control".

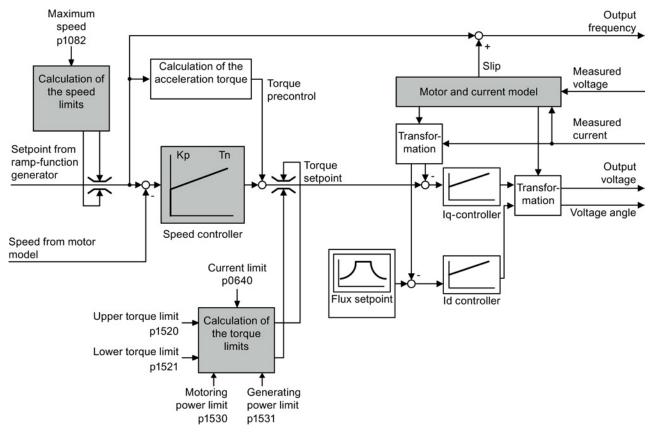


Figure 8-21 Simplified function diagram of sensorless vector control

#### 8.5.2.2 Select motor control

# Speed control is already preset

To achieve a good controller response, you must adapt the elements marked in gray in the figure in the overview diagram above. If you selected speed control as control mode in the basic commissioning, you will already have set the following:

- The maximum speed for your application.
- The motor and current model: If the motor data in the inverter correspond to the motor data on the rating plate, then the motor and current model in the inverter are correct and the vector control can operate satisfactorily.
- The inverter calculates the torque limits matching the current limit that you have set for the basic commissioning.
   Regardless of it, you can also set additional positive and negative torque limits or limit the power of the motor.
- The inverter has a preset speed controller with self-optimization (rotating measurement).
   If you want to continue to optimize this setting, follow the instructions further down in this chapter.

# Select encoderless vector control



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to select encoderless vector control:

1. In the "Parameters" menu, go to p1300	1. Go online	
2. Set p1300 = 20.	Select speed control without encoder in the "Speed controller" or "U/f control" mask.	

You have selected encoderless vector control.

Q-Pulse Id

#### 8.5.2.3 Re-optimize the speed controller

In the following cases you will need to manually optimize the speed controller:

- Your application does not permit self-optimization because the motor cannot rotate freely.
- You are dissatisfied with the result of the inverter self-optimization.
- The inverter interrupted the self-optimization with a fault.

#### **Procedure**

To manually optimize the speed controller, proceed as follows:



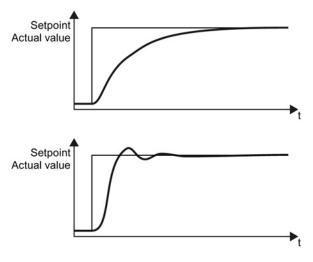


- 1. Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator p1120 = 0 and p1121
- 2. Set the pre-control of the speed controller p1496 = 0.
- 3. Enter a setpoint step and observe the associated actual value.
- 4. Optimize the speed controller by changing controller parameters KP and TN until the drive runs optimally (see the diagrams below).
  - $K_P = p1470$
  - $T_N = p1472$
- 5. Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator p1120 and p1121 back to their original value.
- 6. Set the pre-control of the speed controller p1496 = 100%.



- Go online, and in the "Ramp-function generator" screen form, set the times = 0.
- 2. Go online, and in the "Speed controller" screen form, set the pre-control = 0.
- 3. Enter a setpoint step and monitor the associated actual value, e.g. using the trace function in STARTER.
- Go online and optimize the controller in the "Speed controller" screen form by changing the controller parameters  $K_P$  and  $T_N$  until the drive runs optimally (refer to the diagrams below).
- 5. Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator back to their original value.
- Set the pre-control of the speed controller back to 100%.

You have optimized the speed controller.



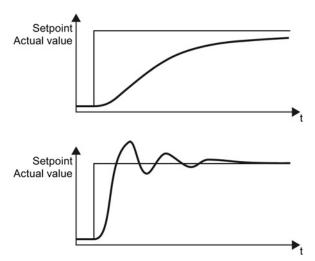
Optimum control response for applications that do not permit any overshoot.

The actual value approaches the setpoint, without any significant overshoot.

Optimum control response for fast correction and quick compensation of noise components.

The actual value approaches the setpoint and slightly overshoots (maximum 10% of the setpoint step).

#### 8.5 Motor control



# The actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint.

• Increase the proportional component  $K_P$  and reduce the integration time  $T_N$ .

# The actual value quickly approaches the setpoint, but overshoots too much

 Decrease the proportional component K<sub>P</sub> and increase the integration time T<sub>N</sub>.

# 8.6 Protection functions



The frequency inverter offers protective functions against overtemperature and overcurrent for both the frequency inverter as well as the motor. Further, the frequency inverter protects itself against an excessively high DC link voltage when the motor is regenerating.

# 8.6.1 Inverter temperature monitoring

The inverter protects itself against overtemperature with different monitoring functions:

- I2t monitoring (alarm A07805, fault F30005)

  The I2t monitoring measures the actual utilization on the basis of a current reference value. Parameter r0036 [%] displays the actual utilization as a %. As long as the actual current does not exceed the reference value, then the utilization in r0036 = 0.
- Monitoring the chip temperature of the power unit (alarm A05006 fault F30024)
   The inverter monitors the difference in temperature between the power chip (IGBT) and the heat sink. The measured values are in r0037[1] [°C].
- Heat sink monitoring (alarm A05000, fault F30004)
   The inverter monitors the heat sink temperature of the Power Module. The values are in r0037[0] [°C].

#### Inverter response

The inverter temperature is essentially defined by the following effects:

Active 17/06/2014

- the ohmic losses of the output current
- the switching losses that occur when the motor is pulsed

Parameter p0290 defines how the inverter responds to an excessively high temperature.

Parameter	Description
p0290	Power unit overload response (factory setting for SINAMICS G120 inverters with Power Module PM260: 0; factory setting for all other inverters: 2)
	Setting the reaction to a thermal overload of the power unit:  0: Reduce output current (in vector control mode) or speed (in U/f mode)  1: No reduction, shutdown when overload threshold is reached (F30024)  2: Reduce pulse frequency and output current (in vector control mode) or pulse frequency and speed (in U/f mode)  3: Reduce pulse frequency
p0292	<b>Power unit temperature warning threshold</b> (factory setting Heat sink [0] 5° C, power semiconductor [1] 15° C)
	The value is set as a difference to the shutdown temperature.

# 8.6.2 Motor temperature monitoring using a temperature sensor

# Connecting the temperature sensor

You can use one of the following sensors to protect the motor against overtemperature:

- Temperature switch (e.g. bimetallic switch)
- PTC sensor
- KTY84 sensor

Connect the temperature sensor of the motor to terminals 14 and 15 of the inverter.

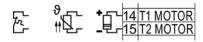


Figure 8-22 Connecting the motor temperature sensor at the inverter

# Set response to excess motor temperature

If you use a temperature switch or PTC sensor, set the response to excess motor temperature via P0610 as follows:

- p0610 = 0
  - Warning A07910,
  - No shutdown
- p0610 = 1, p0610 = 2, p0610 = 12
  - Warning A07910
  - Shutdown with fault F07011

If you use a KTY84 sensor, set the temperature for the warning or fault threshold via p0604 or p0605.

- Monitoring via p0604: Response as per the setting in p0610
- Monitoring via p0605: Shutdown with fault as soon as the set threshold is exceeded.

For details, please refer to the List Manual.

#### Temperature switch

The inverter interprets a resistance  $\geq$  100  $\Omega$  as being an opened temperature switch and responds according to the setting for p0610.

#### PTC sensor

The inverter interprets a resistance > 1650  $\Omega$  as being an overtemperature and responds according to the setting for p0610.

The inverter interprets a resistance < 20  $\Omega$  as being a short-circuit and responds with alarm A07015. If the alarm is present for longer than 100 milliseconds, the inverter shuts down with fault F07016.

#### KTY84 sensor

Use a KTY sensor to monitor the motor temperature and the sensor itself for wire-break or short-circuit.

#### **NOTICE**

#### Motor destruction through overheating

If a KTY sensor is connected with the incorrect polarity, the motor can be destroyed due to overheating, as the inverter cannot detect a motor overtemperature condition.

Connect the KTY sensor with the correct polarity.

• Temperature monitoring:

The inverter uses a KTY sensor to evaluate the motor temperature in the range from -48 $^{\circ}$  C ... +248 $^{\circ}$  C.

Use the p0604 or p0605 parameter to set the temperature for the alarm and fault threshold.

- Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
  - motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 = 0
- Overtemperature fault (F07011):

The inverter switches off with fault in the following cases:

- motor temperature > p0605
- motor temperature > p0604 and p0610 ± 0
- Sensor monitoring (A07015 or F07016):
  - Wire-break:

The inverter interprets a resistance > 2120  $\Omega$  as a wire-break and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.

- Short-circuit:

The inverter interprets a resistance  $< 50 \Omega$  as a short-circuit and outputs the alarm A07015. After 100 milliseconds, the inverter changes to the fault state with F07016.

# Setting parameters for the temperature monitoring

Parameter	Description		
p0335	Specify the motor cooling  0: Natural cooling - with fan on the motor shaft (factory setting)  1: Forced ventilation - with a separately driven fan  2: Liquid cooling  128: No fan		
p0601	Motor-temperature sensor type 0: No sensor (factory setting) 1: PTC (→ p0604) 2: KTY84 (→ p0604, p0605) 4: Temperature switch		
p0604	Motor temperature alarm threshold (factory setting 130° C)		
p0605	Motor temperature fault threshold (factory setting 145° C) Setting for KTY84 sensor. The parameter has no significance for a PTC sensor.		
p0610	Motor-overtemperature response Determines the response when the motor temperature reaches the alarm threshold p0604.  0: Alarm (A07910), no fault.  1: Alarm (A07910); current limit is reduced and timer is started. Shutdown with fault (F07011).  2: Alarm (A07910); timer is started. Shutdown with fault (F07011).		
	12: As for 2 but the last shutdown temperature is used to calculate the motor temperature (factory setting).		
p0640	Current limit (input in A)		

Additional information on the motor temperature monitoring can be found in function diagram 8016 of the List Manual.

Q-Pulse Id

# 8.6.3 Overcurrent protection

During vector control, the motor current remains within the torque limits set there.

During V/f control, the maximum current controller (I-max controller) protects the motor and converter against overload by limiting the output current.

#### I-max controller operation

If an overload situation occurs, the speed and stator voltage of the motor are reduced until the current is within the permissible range. If the motor is in regenerative mode, (i.e. it is being driven by the connected machine), the I-max controller increases the speed and stator voltage of the motor to reduce the current.

#### Note

The converter load is only reduced if the motor torque decreases at lower speeds (e.g. for fans).

In the regenerative mode, the current only decreases if the torque decreases at a higher speed.

# Settings

You only have to change the factory settings of the I-max controller if the drive tends to oscillate when it reaches the current limit or it is shut down due to overcurrent.

Table 8- 24 I-max controller parameters

Parameter	Description	
p0305	Rated motor current	
p0640	Motor current limit	
p1340	Proportional gain of the I-max controller for speed reduction	
p1341	Integral time of the I-max controller for speed reduction	
r0056.13	Status: I-max controller active	
r1343	Speed output of the I-max controller Shows the amount to which the I-max controller reduces the speed.	

For more information about this function, see function diagram 1690 in the List Manual.

Active 17/06/2014

# 8.6.4 Limiting the maximum DC link voltage

# How does the motor generate overvoltage?

An induction motor operates as a generator if it is driven by the connected load. A generator converts mechanical power into electrical power. The electrical power flows back into the inverter and causes  $V_{DC}$  in the inverter to increase.

Above a critical DC-link voltage both the inverter and the motor will be damaged. Before harmful voltages occur, the inverter switches off the connected motor with the fault

"DC-link overvoltage".

# Protecting the motor and inverter against overvoltage

To the extent the application permits, the Vdc\_max control prevents the DC-link voltage from reaching critical levels. The Vdc\_max control increases the ramp-down time of the motor during braking, so that the motor feeds back only as little power to the inverter as is covered by the losses in the inverter.

The Vdc\_max control is not suitable for applications where the motor is continuously in the generator mode. This includes, for example, cranes or applications involving braking large moments of inertia. Further information on inverter braking methods can be found in Section Braking functions of the inverter (Page 238).

There are two different groups of parameters for the Vdc\_max control, depending on whether the motor is being operated with U/f control or vector control.

Table 8- 25 V<sub>DCmax</sub> controller parameters

Parameter for U/f control	Parameter for vector control	Description	
p1280 = 1	p1240 = 1	V <sub>DC</sub> controller or V <sub>DC</sub> monitoring configuration(factory setting: 1)1: Enable V <sub>DCmax</sub> controller	
r1282	r1242	$V_{\text{DCmax}}$ controller switch-on level Shows the value of the DC-link voltage above which the $V_{\text{DCmax}}$ controller is active	
p1283	p1243	<b>V</b> <sub>DCmax</sub> <b>controller dynamic factor</b> (factory setting: 100 %) scaling of the control parameters P1290, P1291 and P1292	
p1294	p1254	V <sub>DCmax</sub> controller automatic recording ON-signal level (factory setting p1294: 0, factory setting p1254: 1) Activates or deactivates automatic detection of the switch-on levels of the V <sub>DCmax</sub> controller.  0: Automatic detection disabled 1: Automatic detection enabled	
p0210	p0210	Unit supply voltage If p1254 or p1294 = 0, the inverter uses this parameter to calculate the intervention thresholds of the $V_{DCmax}$ controller.  Set this parameter to the actual value of the input voltage.	

For more information about this function, see the List Manual (function diagrams 6320 and 6220).

SINAMICS G120C converter

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

# 8.7.1 Functions that match the application



The inverter offers a series of functions that you can use depending on your particular application, e.g.:

- Unit changeover
- · Braking functions
- Automatic restart and flying restart
- Basic process control functions

Please refer to the following sections for detailed descriptions.

# 8.7.2 Unit changover

# Description

With the unit changeover function, you can adapt the inverter to the line supply (50/60 Hz) and also select US units or SI units as base units.

Independent of this, you can define the units for process variables or change over to percentage values.

Specifically, you have the following options:

- Changing over the motor standard (Page 233) IEC/NEMA (adaptation to the line supply)
- Changing over the unit system (Page 234)
- · Changing over units for the technology controller (Page 234)

#### Note

The motor standard, the unit system as well as the process variables can only be changed offline.

The procedure is described in Section Switching units with STARTER (Page 235).

#### Note

#### Restrictions for the unit changeover function

- The values on the rating plate of the inverter or motor cannot be displayed as percentage values.
- Using the unit changeover function a multiple times (for example, percent → physical unit 1 → physical unit 2 → percent) may lead to the original value being changed by one decimal place as a result of rounding errors.
- If the unit is changed over into percent and the reference value is then changed, the percentage values relate to the new reference value.
   Example:
  - For a reference speed of 1500 rpm, a fixed speed of 80% corresponds to a speed of 1200 rpm.
  - If the reference speed is changed to 3000 rpm, then the value of 80% is kept and now means 2400 rpm.

## Reference variables for unit changeover

p2000 Reference frequency/speed

p2001 Reference voltage

p2002 Reference current

p2003 Reference torque

r2004 Reference power

# 8.7.2.1 Changing over the motor standard

You change over the motor standard using p0100. The following applies:

- p0100 = 0: IEC motor (50 Hz, SI units)
- p0100 = 1: NEMA motor (60 Hz, US units)
- p0100 = 2: NEMA motor (60 Hz, SI units)

The parameters listed below are affected by the changeover.

Table 8- 26 Variables affected by changing over the motor standard

P no.	Designation	Unit for p0100 =		=
		0*)	1	2
r0206	Power Module rated power	kW	HP	kW
p0307	Rated motor power	kW	HP	kW
p0316	Motor torque constant	Nm/A	lbf ft/A	Nm/A
r0333	Rated motor torque	Nm	lbf ft	Nm
r0334	Motor torque constant, actual	Nm/A	lbf ft/A	Nm/A
p0341	Motor moment of inertia	kgm²	lb ft <sup>2</sup>	kgm²
p0344	Motor weight (for thermal motor type)	kg	Lb	kg
r1969	Speed_cont_opt moment of inertia determined	d kgm² lb ft² kgm²		kgm²

<sup>\*)</sup> Factory setting

Page 233 of 404

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

#### 8.7.2.2 Changing over the unit system

You change over the unit system using p0505. The following selection options are available:

- p0505 = 1: SI units (factory setting)
- p0505 = 2: SI units or % relative to SI units
- p0505 = 3: US units
- p0505 = 4: US units or % relative to US units

#### Note

#### Special features

The percentage values for p0505 = 2 and for p0505 = 4 are identical. For internal calculation and for the output of physical variables, it is, however, important whether the conversion is made to SI or US units.

In the case of variables for which changeover to % is not possible, the following applies:  $p0505 = 1 \triangleq p0505 = 2$  and  $p0505 = 3 \triangleq p0505 = 4$ .

In the case of variables whose units are identical in the SI system and US system, and which can be displayed as a percentage, the following applies:  $p0505 = 1 \triangleq p0505 = 3$  and  $p0505 = 2 \triangleq p0505 = 4$ .

#### Parameters affected by changeover

The parameters affected by changing over the unit system are grouped according to unit. An overview of the unit groups and the possible units can be found in the List Manual in the Section "Unit group and unit selection".

# 8.7.2.3 Changing over units for the technology controller

# Note

We recommend that the units and reference values of the technology controller are coordinated and harmonized with one another during commissioning.

Subsequent modification in the reference variable or the unit can result in incorrect calculations or displays.

# Changing over process variables of the technology controller

You change over the process variables of the technology controller using p0595. For physical values, you define the reference variable in p0596.

Active 17/06/2014

The parameters affected by changing over units of the technology controller belong to unit group 9\_1. For details, please refer to the section titled "Unit group and unit choice" in the List Manual.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Page 234 of 404

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 8.7.2.4 Switching units with STARTER

#### Precondition

The inverter must be in the offline mode in order to change over the units.

STARTER shows whether you change settings online in the inverter or change offline in the PC (Online mode / Offline mode ).

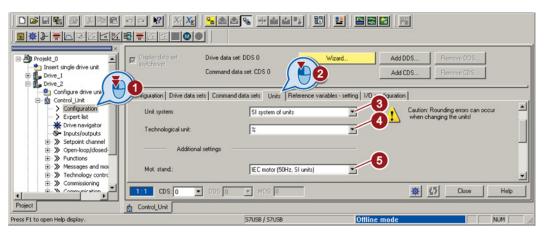
You switch over the mode using the adjacent buttons in the menu bar.





#### **Procedure**

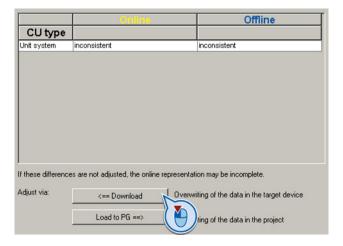
- 1. Select the configuration
- 2. Go to the "Units" tab in the configuration screen form to change over the units.
- 3. Changing over the system of units
- 4. Select process variables of the technology controller
- 5. Adapting to the line supply





#### 8.7 Application-specific functions

- Save your settings and go online.
   In this case, the converter detects that other units or process variables have been set offline than are actually in the converter; the converter displays this in the following screen form:
- Accept these settings in the converter.



# 8.7.3 Energy-saving display

# **Background**

Conventionally-controlled fluid flow machines control the flow rate using valves or throttles. In so doing, the drive operates constantly at the rated speed. The efficiency of the system decreases if the flow rate is reduced using valves or throttles. The efficiency is the lowest when valves or throttles are ompletely closed. Further, undesirable effects can occur, e.g. the formation of vapor bubbles in liquids (cavitation) or the temperature rise of the medium being pumped increases.

The inverter controls the flow rate or the pressure by varying the speed of the fluid flow machine. As a consequence, over its complete operating range, a fluid-flow machine operates close to its maximum efficiency – and especially in partial load operation, uses less energy than for valve and throttle-based controls.

#### **Function**

The energy-saving display calculates the energy saved when operating fluid-flow machines, e.g. centrifugal pumps, fans, radial and axial compressors. The energy saving display compares inverter operation with direct on line operation and throttle control.

The inverter indicates the energy saved in parameter r0041 in kWh, referred to the last 100 operating hours.

For less than 100 operating hours, the inverter interpolates the energy saving to 100 operating hours.

The inverter calculates the energy-saving based on the operating characteristic that has been saved.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Table 8- 27 Operating characteristic set in the factory

	Point 1	Point 2	Point 3	Point 4	Point 5
Power	p3320 = 25 %	p3322 = 50 %	p3324 = 77 %	p3326 = 92 %	p3328 = 100 %
Speed	p3321 = 0 %	p3323 = 25 %	p3325 = 50 %	p3327 = 75 %	p3329 = 100 %

If you require a precise value for the energy saving, then you must adapt the operating characteristic set in the factory.

#### Additional parameters for the energy usage display:

r0039.0: Energy usage since the last reset

r0039.1: Energy drawn since the last reset

r0039.2: Energy fed back since the last reset

p0040: Parameter to reset parameters r0039 and r0041.

r0041: Displays the saved energy since the last reset, referred to the operating characteristic, defined by parameters p3320 ...p3329.

# Adapting the operating characteristic

#### Precondition

You require the following data to calculate the system-specific operating characteristic:

- Operating characteristics of the manufacturer
  - for pumps: Delivery height and power as a function of the flow rate
  - for fans: Total pressure increase and power as a function of the flow rate
- System characteristics for 5 different flow rates.

### Procedure



Proceed as follows to adapt the operating characteristic:

1. For the 5 different flow rates, calculate the delivery height requirement, referred to a pump, which is directly connected to the line supply (n = 100 %).

To do this, set the formula for the system characteristic the same as the formula for the operating characteristic of the delivery height.

For a correspondingly lower delivery height, you only require a correspondingly low speed.

- 2. Enter the speeds into parameters p3321, p3323, p3325, p3327 and p3329.
- Based on the flow rates and the associated operating characteristic of the manufacturer, calculate the power that the pump requires for the various flow rates when connected directly to the line supply.
- 4. Enter the values into parameters p3320, p3322, p3324, p3326 and p3328.

You have adapted the operating characteristic, and you now obtain a precise result for the energy saving.

# 8.7.4 Braking functions of the inverter

A differentiation is made between mechanically braking and electrically braking a motor:

- Mechanical brakes are generally motor holding brakes that are closed when the motor is at a standstill. Mechanical operating brakes, that are closed while the motor is rotating are subject to a high wear and are therefore often only used as an emergency brake.
   If your motor is equipped with a motor holding brake, then you should use the inverter functions to control this motor holding brake, see Section Motor holding brake (Page 247).
- The motor is electrically braked by the inverter. An electrical braking is completely wearfree. Generally, a motor is switched off at standstill in order to save energy and so that the motor temperature is not unnecessarily increased.

### 8.7.4.1 Electrical braking methods

# Regenerative power

If an induction motor electrically brakes the connected load and the mechanical power exceeds the electrical losses, then it operates as a generator. The motor converts mechanical power into electrical power. Examples of applications, in which regenerative operation briefly occurs, include:

- Grinding disk drives
- Fans

For certain drive applications, the motor can operate in the regenerative mode for longer periods of time, e.g.:

- Centrifuges
- Hoisting gear and cranes
- Conveyor belts with downward movement of load (vertical or inclined conveyors)

The inverter offers the following options to convert the regenerative power of the motor into heat or to feed it back into the line:

- DC braking (Page 240)
- Compound braking (Page 243)
- Dynamic braking (Page 244)

Page 238 of 404

# Main features of the braking functions

# DC braking

The motor converts the regenerative power into heat.

- Advantage: The motor brakes without the inverter having to process the regenerative energy
- Disadvantages: Significant increase in the motor temperature; no defined braking characteristics; no constant braking torque; no braking torque at standstill; regenerative power is lost as heat; does not function when the line supply fails

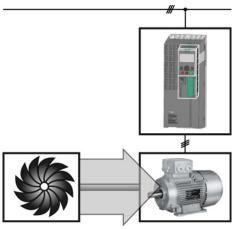


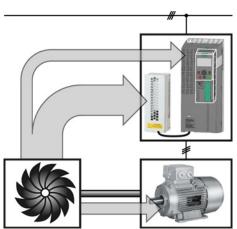
A version of DC braking in which the motor is braked defined. All other properties are identical to DC braking.

#### Dynamic braking

The inverter converts the regenerative power into heat using a braking resistor.

- Advantages: Defined braking characteristics; no additional motor temperature increase; constant braking torque; in principle, also functions when the power fails
- Disadvantages: Braking resistor required; regenerative power is dissipated as heat





# Braking method depending on the application

Table 8-28 What braking method is suitable for what application?

Application examples	Electrical braking methods
Pumps, fans, mixers, compressors, extruders	Not required
Grinding machines, conveyor belts	DC braking, compound braking
Centrifuges, vertical conveyors, hoisting gear, cranes, winders	Dynamic braking

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

# 8.7.4.2 DC braking

DC braking is used for applications without regenerative feedback into the line supply, where the motor can be more quickly braked by impressing a DC current than along a braking ramp.

Typical applications for DC braking include:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Conveyor belts

#### **Function**

#### **NOTICE**

#### Motor damage caused by overheating

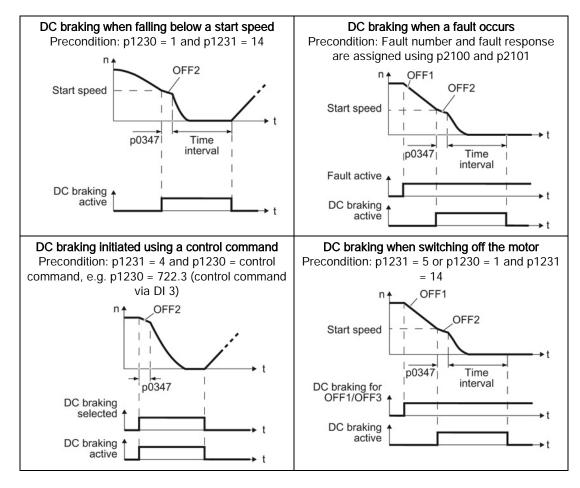
The motor can overheat if it is braked for long periods of time or frequently using DC braking. This may damage the motor.

- Monitor the motor temperature.
- If the motor gets too hot during operation you must select another braking method or give the motor more time to cool down.

With DC braking, the inverter outputs an internal OFF2 command for the time that it takes to de-energize the motor p0347 - and then impresses the braking current for the duration of the DC braking.

The DC-braking function is possible only for induction motors.

Page 240 of 404



#### DC braking when falling below a starting speed

- 1. The motor speed has exceeded the starting speed.
- 2. The inverter activates the DC braking as soon as the motor speed falls below the starting speed.

#### DC braking when a fault occurs

- 1. A fault occurs, which initiates DC braking as response.
- 2. The motor brakes along the down ramp to the speed for the start of DC braking.
- 3. DC braking starts.

#### DC braking initiated by a control command

- 1. The higher-level control issues the command for DC braking, e.g. using DI3: p1230 = 722.3.
- 2. DC braking starts.

If the higher-level control withdraws the command during DC braking, the inverter interrupts DC braking and the motor accelerates to its setpoint.

# DC braking when the motor is switched off

- 1. The higher-level control switches off the motor (OFF1 or OFF3).
- 2. The motor brakes along the down ramp to the speed for the start of DC braking.
- 3. DC braking starts.

# Settings for DC braking

Parameter	Description		
p0347	Motor de-excitation time (calculated after the basic commissioning)		
	The inverter can trip due to an overcurrent during DC braking if the de-excitation time is too short.		
p1230	DC braking activation (factory setting: 0)		
	Signal source to activate DC braking		
	0 signal: Deactivated		
	1 signal: Active		
p1231	Configuring DC braking (factory setting: 0)		
	<ul> <li>No DC braking</li> <li>General release for DC braking</li> <li>DC braking for OFF1/OFF3</li> <li>DC braking below the starting speed</li> </ul>		
p1232	DC braking braking current (factory setting 0 A)		
p1233	DC braking duration (factory setting 1 s)		
p1234	DC braking start speed (factory setting 210000 rpm)		
r1239	DC braking status word		
	.08 DC braking active .10 DC braking ready .11 DC braking selected .12 DC braking selection internally locked .13 DC braking for OFF1/OFF3		

Table 8-29 Configuring DC braking when faults occur

Parameter	Description	
p2100	Set fault number for fault response (factory setting 0)	
	Enter the fault number for which DC braking should be activated, e.g. p2100[3] = 7860 (external fault 1).	
p2101 = 6	Fault response setting (factory setting 0)	
	Assigning the fault response: p2101[3] = 6.	
The fault is assigned an index of m2100. Assign the same index of m2100 or m2101 to the fault and		

The fault is assigned an index of p2100. Assign the same index of p2100 or p2101 to the fault and fault response.

The inverter's List Manual lists in the "Faults and alarms" list the possible fault responses for every fault. The "DCBRAKE" entry means that it is permissible to set DC braking as response for this particular fault.

# See also

Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running (Page 252)

SINAMICS G120C converter

242

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 8.7.4.3 Compound braking

Typical applications for compound braking include:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Horizontal conveyors

For these applications, the motor is normally operated with a constant speed, and is only braked down to standstill after longer periods of time.

# Principle of operation

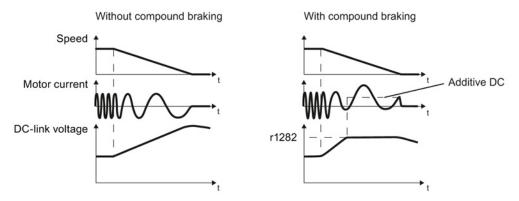


Figure 8-23 Motor brakes with and without active compound braking

Compound braking prevents the DC-link voltage increasing above a critical value. The inverter activates compound braking depending on the DC-link voltage. Above a DC-link voltage threshold (r1282), the inverter adds a DC current to the motor current. The DC current brakes the motor and prevents an excessive increase in the DC-link voltage.

#### Note

Compound braking is possible only with the U/f control.

Compound braking does not operate in the following cases:

- The "flying restart" function is active
- DC braking is active
- · Vector control is selected

Q-Pulse Id

# Setting and enabling compound braking

Parameter	Description		
p3856	Compound braking current (%)		
	With the compound braking current, the magnitude of the DC current is defined, which is additionally generated when stopping the motor for operation with U/f control to increase the braking effect.		
	p3856 = 0 Compound braking locked		
	p3856 = 1 250 Current level of the DC braking current as a % of the rated motor current (p0305)		
	Recommendation: p3856 < 100% × (r0209 - r0331) / p0305 / 2		
r3859.0	Compound-braking status word		
	r3859.0 = 1: Compound braking is active		

#### **NOTICE**

# Motor damage from overheating with compound braking

The motor will overheat if braking lasts too long or the motor is braked too often. This may damage the motor.

Monitor the motor temperature. If the motor gets too hot during operation you must select another braking method or give the motor more time to cool down.

# 8.7.4.4 Dynamic braking

Typical applications for dynamic braking include:

- Horizontal conveyors
- Vertical and inclined conveyors
- Hoisting gear

For these applications, dynamic motor behavior with different speeds or continuous change of direction is required.

# Principle of operation



# / CAUTION

# Burns when touching a hot braking resistor

A braking resistor reaches high temperatures during operation. Touching the braking resistor may result in burns.

• Do not touch a braking resistor during operation.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

The inverter controls the braking chopper depending on its DC-link voltage. The DC-link voltage increases as soon as the inverter absorbs the regenerative power when braking the motor. The braking chopper converts this power into heat in the braking resistor. This prevents the DC-link voltage from increasing above the limit value  $U_{DC\,link,\,max}$ .

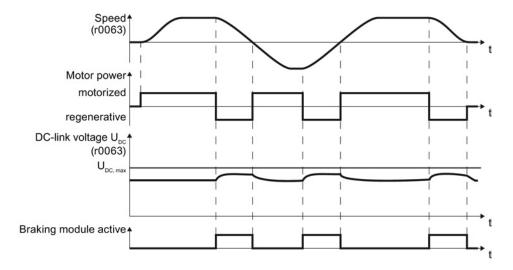


Figure 8-24 Simplified representation of dynamic braking with respect to time

# Mounting the braking resistor

You find the mounting instructions in the section: Mounting the braking resistor (Page 30).

#### Connecting the braking resistor

- 1. Connect the braking resistor to terminals R1 and R2 on the converter.
- 2. Ground the braking resistor directly to the control cabinet's grounding bar. The braking resistor must not be grounded using the PE terminals on the converter.
- 3. If you have to comply with EMC requirements, observe the rules for shielding.
- 4. Connect the braking resistor's temperature monitoring (terminals T1 and T2 on the braking resistor) with a free digital input of your choice on the converter. Set the function of this digital input to the OFF2 command.

Q-Pulse Id

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

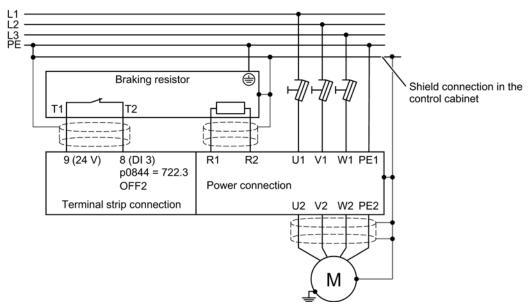


Figure 8-25 Braking resistor connections (Example: temperature monitoring via DI 3)

#### **NOTICE**

Without temperature monitoring the resistor might get damaged.



# / WARNING

# Risk of fire, severe personal and property damage

If an unsuitable braking resistor is used, this could result in a fire and severely damage, people, property and equipment. It is essential that not only the correct braking resistor is used, but it is installed correctly according to the instructions delivered with the braking resistor.

The temperature of braking resistors increases significantly during operation. For this reason, avoid coming into direct contact with braking resistors. Maintain sufficient clearances around the braking resistor and ensure that there is adequate ventilation.

Page 246 of 404

# Procedure: Set dynamic braking

In order to optimally utilize the connected braking resistor, you must know the braking power that occurs in your particular application.

Table 8-30 Parameter

Parameter	Description			
p0219	<b>Braking power of the braking resistor</b> (factory setting: 0 kW) Set the maximum braking power that the braking resistor must handle in your parapplication.			
	Under certain circ ramp-down time c	umstances, for low braking power ratings, the inverter extends the of the motor.		
	<b>Example</b> : In your particular application, the motor brakes every 10 seconds. In so doing, the braking resistor must handle a braking power of 1 kW for 2 s. Use a braking resistor with a continuous power rating of 1 kW $\times$ 2 s / 10 s = 0.2 kW and set the maximum braking power to: p0219 = 1 (kW).			
p0844	No coast down/coast down (OFF2) signal source 1			
	p0844 = 722.x	Monitor the overtemperature of the braking resistor with digital input x of the inverter.		

# 8.7.4.5 Motor holding brake

The motor holding brake prevents the motor turning when it is switched off. The inverter has internal logic to optimally control a motor holding brake.

The inverter-internal control of the motor holding brake is suitable typically for horizontal, inclined and vertical conveyors.

A motor holding brake can also be useful in several applications for pumps or fans to ensure that the powered-down motor does not rotate in the wrong direction through a liquid or air flow.

# Connecting the motor holding brake

You have to define which of the digital outputs is to be used for controlling the motor holding brake function.

There are two digital outputs to choose from, for example, the motor holding brake can be connected to the converter using digital output 0 (DO 0) on terminals 19 and 20.

The converter supplies the control for the motor holding brake.

You have to supply the following equipment:

- A motor holding brake suitable for the attached motor and the purposes of the application.
- A power supply for the motor holding brake.
- A relay to allow the digital output to enable or disable the motor holding brake.

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

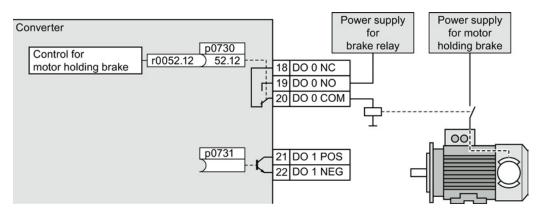


Figure 8-26 Simplified diagram of motor holding brake connected to DO 0 of the converter

#### Function after OFF1 and OFF3 command

The converter controls the motor holding brake in the following way:

- 1. After the ON command (switch on motor), the converter magnetizes the motor.
- 2. At the end of the magnetizing time (p0346), the converter issues the command to open the brake.
- 3. The converter keeps the motor at a standstill until this time p1216 has ended. The motor holding brake must open within this time.
- 4. At the end of the brake opening time the motor accelerates to the speed setpoint.
- 5. After the OFF command (OFF1 or OFF3) the motor brakes to a standstill.
- 6. If the actual speed is less than 20 rpm, then the converter issues the command to close the brake. The motor comes to a standstill but remains switched on.
- 7. After the brake closing time p1217, the converter switches off the motor. The motor holding brake must close within this time.

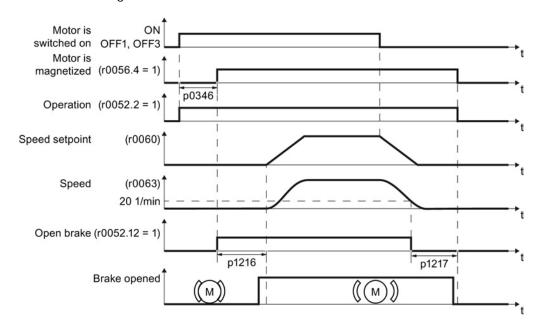


Figure 8-27 Controlling the motor holding brake when the motor is switched on and off

SINAMICS G120C converter

# Function after OFF2 - or the selection of the "Safe Torque Off" (STO) safety function

For the following signals, the brake closing time is not taken into account:

- OFF2 command
- After selecting the "Safe Torque Off" (STO) safety function

After these control commands, the inverter issues the signal to immediately close the motor holding brake, independent of the motor speed.

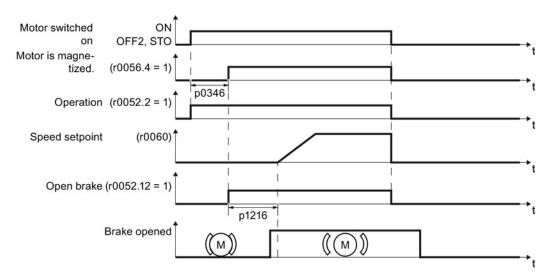


Figure 8-28 Controlling the motor holding brake after an OFF2 command or selecting STO

# Commissioning a motor holding brake



# DANGER

#### Danger to life due to falling loads

For applications such as lifting equipment, cranes or elevators, there is a danger to life if the "Motor holding brake" function is incorrectly set.

- When commissioning the "Motor holding brake" function, secure any dangerous loads, e.g. by applying the following measures:
  - Lower the load down to the floor
  - Cordon off the hazardous area so that nobody can enter it

Active 17/06/2014

#### Precondition

The motor holding brake is connected to the inverter.

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to commission the "Motor holding brake" function using an operator panel.



1. Set p1215 = 1.

The "Motor holding brake" function" is enabled.

- 2. Check the magnetizing time p0346; the magnetizing time is pre-assigned during commissioning and must be greater than zero.
- 3. Take the opening and closing times of the connected brake from the technical data for the motor holding brake.
  - Depending on the brake size, brake opening times lie between 25 ms and 500 ms.
  - Depending on the brake size, brake closing times lie between 15 ms and 300 ms.
- 4. Set the following parameters in the inverter to match the opening and closing times of the brake:
  - Opening time ≤ p1216.
  - Closing time ≤ p1217.
- 5. Switch on the motor.
- Check the acceleration behavior of the drive immediately after the motor has been switched on:
  - If the brake opens too late, the inverter accelerates the motor against the closed brake which results in a jerky motion.
    - In this case, increase the opening time p1216.
  - After opening the brake, if the motor waits too long before it accelerates the motor, then reduce the opening time p1216.
- 7. If the load sags after switching on the motor, then you must increase the motor torque when opening the motor holding brake. Depending on the control mode, you must set different parameters:
  - U/f operation (p1300 = 0 to 3):
     Increase p1310 step-by-step.
     Increase p1351 step-by-step.
  - Vector control (p1300 ≥ 20):
     Increase p1475 in small steps.
- 8. Switch off the motor.
- Check the braking behavior of the drive immediately after the motor has been switched off:
  - If the brake closes too late, the load briefly sags before the brake closes.
     In this case, increase the closing time p1217.
  - After closing the brake, if the motor waits too long before it switches off the motor, then reduce the closing time p1217.

You have commissioned the "Motor holding brake" function.

SINAMICS G120C converter

250

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Table 8- 31 Control logic parameters of the motor holding brake

Parameter	Description
p1215 = 1	Enable motor holding brake  0 Motor holding brake locked (factory setting)  3: Motor holding brake just like the sequential control, connected via BICO
p1216	Motor holding brake opening time (factory setting 0.1 s) p1216 > braking signal relay runtimes + brake release time
p1217	Motor holding brake closing time (factory setting 0.1 s) p1217 > braking signal relay runtimes + brake closing time
r0052.12	"Open motor holding brake" command
p0730 = 52.12	Signal source for terminal DO 0 Control motor holding brake via digital output 0
p0731 = 52.12	Signal source for terminal DO 1 Control motor holding brake via digital output 1

Table 8- 32 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
p0346	<b>Magnetizing time</b> (factory setting 0 s)  During this time the induction motor is magnetized. The inverter calculates this parameter using p0340 = 1 or 3.
p0855	Open motor holding brake (imperative) (factory setting 0)
p0858	Close motor holding brake (imperative) (factory setting 0)
p1351	Starting frequency of motor holding brake (factory setting 0%) Setting the frequency set value at the slip compensation output when starting with motor holding brake. When the parameter p1351 is set to > 0, slip compensation is automatically switched on.
p1352	Starting frequency for motor holding brake (factory setting 1351) Setting the signal source for the frequency set value at the slip compensation output when starting with motor holding brake.
p1475	Speed controller torque set value for motor holding brake (factory setting 0) Setting the signal source for the torque set value when starting with motor holding brake.

Active 17/06/2014

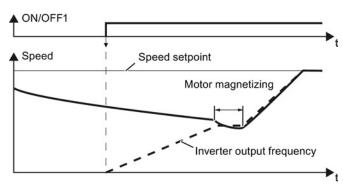
# 8.7.5 Automatic restart and flying restart

# 8.7.5.1 Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running

If you switch on the motor while it is still running, then with a high degree of probability, a fault will occur due to overcurrent (overcurrent fault F07801). Examples of applications involving an unintentionally rotating motor directly before switching on:

- The motor rotates after a brief line interruption.
- An air flow turns the fan impeller.
- A load with a high moment of inertia drives the motor.

After the ON command, the "flying restart" function initially synchronizes the converter output frequency to the motor speed and then accelerates the motor up to the setpoint.



If the converter simultaneously drives several motors, then you must only use the "flying restart" function if the speed of all of the motors is always the same (group drive with a mechanical coupling).

Table 8- 33 Basic setting

Parameter	Description		
p1200	Flying restart operating mode (factory setting 0)		
	0 1 4	Flying restart is locked Flying restart is enabled, look for the motor in both directions, start in direction of setpoint Flying restart is enabled, only search in direction of setpoint	

Q-Pulse Id

Table 8- 34 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
p1201	Flying restart enable signal source (factory setting 1)
	Defines a control command, e.g. a digital input, through which the flying restart function is enabled.
p1202	Flying restart search current (factory setting 100%)
	Defines the search current with respect to the motor magnetizing current (r0331), which flows in the motor while the flying restart function is being used.
p1203	Flying restart search speed factor (factory setting 100%)
	The value influences the speed with which the output frequency is changed during the flying restart. A higher value results in a longer search time.
	If the converter does not find the motor, reduce the search speed (increase p1203).

#### 8.7.5.2 Automatic switch-on

The automatic restart includes two different functions:

- The inverter automatically acknowledges faults.
- After a fault occurs or after a power failure, the inverter automatically switches-on the motor again.

The inverter interprets the following events as power failure:

- The inverter signals fault F30003 (DC-link undervoltage), as the line supply voltage of the inverter has briefly failed.
- The inverter power supply has failed for a long enough time so that the inverter has been switched-off.



### Injuries from the automated machine restart

When the "automatic restart" function is active (p1210 > 1), the motor automatically starts after a power failure. The movements that the machine executes may result in serious injuries.

- Block the machine to prevent unintentional access.
- Before working on the machine switch the automatic restart mechanism off.

## Commissioning the automatic restart



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to commission the automatic restart:

- 1. If it is possible that the motor is still rotating for a longer period of time after a power failure or after a fault, then in addition, you must activate the "flying restart" function, see Flying restart switching on while the motor is running (Page 252).
- 2. Using p1210, select the automatic restart mode that best suits your application.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

253

### 8.7 Application-specific functions

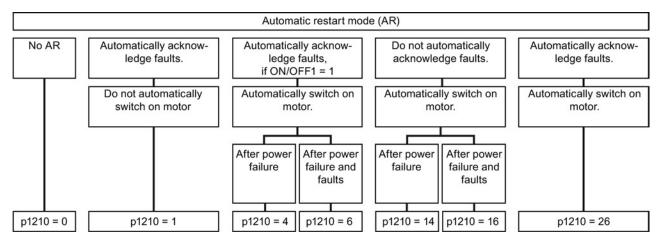
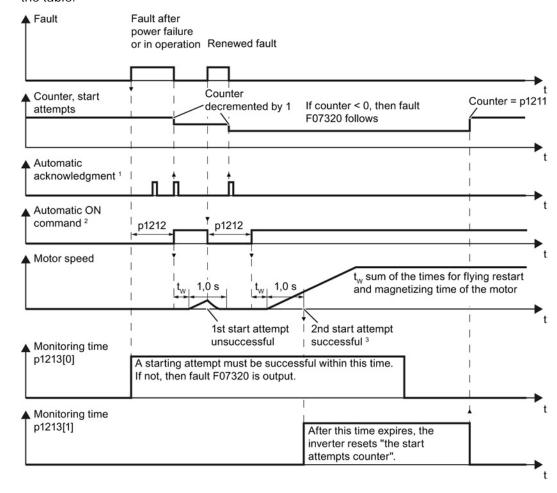


Figure 8-29 Selecting the automatic restart mode

3. Set the parameters of the automatic restart function.

The method of operation of the parameters is explained in the following diagram and in the table.



Page 254 of 404

- <sup>1</sup> The inverter automatically acknowledges faults under the following conditions:
  - p1210 = 1 or 26: Always.
  - p1210 = 4 or 6: If the command to switch-on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 = 1).
  - p1210 = 14 or 16: Never.
- <sup>2</sup> The inverter attempts to automatically switch-on the motor under the following conditions:
  - p1210 = 1: Never.
  - p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, or 26: If the command to switch-on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 = 1).
- <sup>3</sup> If no fault has occurred one second after flying restart and magnetizing (r0056.4 = 1), the start attempt was successful.

Figure 8-30 Time response of the automatic restart

You have commissioned the automatic restart function.

#### Parameter for setting the automatic restart

Parameter	Explanation	
p1210	Automatic restart mode (factory setting 0)	
	O: Disable automatic restart.  1: Acknowledge all faults without restarting.  4: Restart after power failure without further restart attempts.  6: Restart after fault with further restart attempts.  14: Restart after power failure after manual acknowledgement.  16: Restart after fault after manual acknowledgement.  26: Acknowledgement of all faults and restart with ON/OFF1 = 1 command.	
p1211	Automatic restart start attempts (factory setting 3)	
	This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26.	
	You define the maximum number of start attempts using p1211. After each successful acknowledgement, the inverter decrements its internal counter of start attempts by 1.	
	For p1211 = n, up to n + 1 start attempts are made. Fault F07320 is output after n + 1 unsuccessful start attempts.	
	The inverter sets the start attempt counter back again to the value of p1211, if one of the following conditions is fulfilled:	
	After a successful start attempt, the time in p1213[1] has expired.	
	After fault F07320, switch off the motor (OFF1) and acknowledge the fault.	
	You change the start value p1211 or the mode p1210.	
p1212	Automatic restart wait time start attempt (factory setting 1.0 s)	
	This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 26.	
	Examples for setting this parameter:	
	<ol> <li>After a power failure, a certain time must elapse before the motor can be switched- on, e.g. because other machine components are not immediately ready. In this case, set p1212 longer than the time, after which all of the fault causes have been removed.</li> </ol>	
	2. In operation, the inverter develops a fault condition. The lower you select p1212, then the sooner the inverter attempts to switch-on the motor again.	

Active 17/06/2014

## 8.7 Application-specific functions

Parameter	Explanation		
p1213[0]	Automatic restart monitoring time for restart (factory setting 60 s)		
	This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26.		
	With this monitoring function, you limit the time in which the inverter may attempt to automatically switch-on the motor again.		
	The monitoring function starts when a fault is identified and ends with a successful start attempt. If the motor has not successfully started after the monitoring time has expired, fault F07320 is signaled.		
	Set the monitoring time longer than the sum of the following times:		
	+ p1212 + Time that the inverter requires to start the motor on the fly. + Motor magnetizing time (p0346) + 1 second		
	You deactivate the monitoring function with p1213 = 0.		
p1213[1]	Automatic restart monitoring time to reset the fault counter (factory setting 0 s)		
	This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26.		
	Using this monitoring time, you prevent that faults, which continually occur within a certain time period, are automatically acknowledged each time.		
	The monitoring function starts with a successful start attempt and ends after the monitoring time has expired.		
	If the inverter has made more than (p1211 + 1) successful start attempts within monitoring time p1213[1], the inverter cancels the automatic restart function and signals fault F07320. In order to switch on the motor again, you must acknowledge the fault and set ON/OFF1 = 1.		

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

### Advanced settings

If you with to suppress the automatic restart function for certain faults, then you must enter the appropriate fault numbers in p1206[0 ... 9].

Example:  $p1206[0] = 07331 \Rightarrow No restart for fault F07331$ .

Suppressing the automatic restart only functions for the setting p1210 = 6, 16 or 26.



## Personal injury and property damage

In the case of communication via the fieldbus interface, the motor restarts with the setting p1210 = 6 even if the communication link is interrupted. This means that the controller cannot stop the motor. To avoid this dangerous situation, you must enter the fault code of the communications fault in parameter p1206.

Example: A communication failure via PROFIBUS is signaled using fault code F01910. You should therefore set p1206[n] = 1910 (n = 0 ... 9).

# 8.7.6 PID technology controller

#### 8.7.6.1 Overview

The technology controller controls process variables, e.g. pressure, temperature, level or flow.

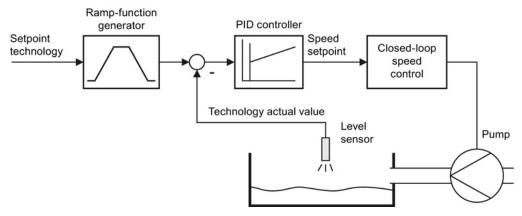


Figure 8-31 Example: technology controller as a level controller

## 8.7.6.2 Setting the controller

#### Simplified representation of the technology controller

The technology controller is implemented as PID controller (controller with proportional, integral and differential component) and so can be adapted very flexibly.

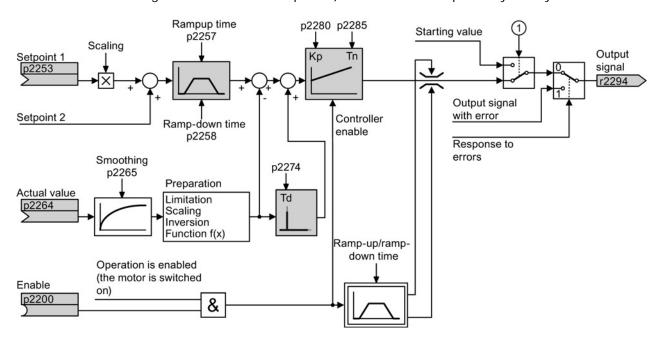


Figure 8-32 Simplified representation of the technology controller

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# Setting the technology controller

Parameter	Remark	
p2200 = 1	Enable technology controller.	
p1070 = 2294	Interconnect the main speed setpoint with the output of the technology controller.	
p2253 =	Define the setpoint for the technology controller.	
	Example: p2253 = 2224: The converter interconnects the fixed setpoint p2201 with the setpoint of the technology controller. p2220 = 1: The fixed setpoint p2201 is selected.	
p2264 =	Define the actual value for the technology controller.  Example: For p2264 = 755[0], analog input 0 is the source for the actual value.	
p2257, p2258	Define the ramp-up and ramp-down times [s]	
p2274	Differentiation time constant [s]	
	The differentiation improves the rise time characteristics for very slow controlled variables, e.g. a temperature control. p2274 = 0: The differentiation is switched off.	
p2280	Proportional gain K <sub>P</sub>	
p2285	Integral time T <sub>N</sub> [s]	
	Without an integral time, the controller cannot completely equalize deviations between the setpoint and actual value. p2285 = 0: The integral time is switched off.	

# Advanced settings

Parameter	Remark	
Limiting the outpo	Limiting the output of the technology controller	
In the factory setting, the output of the technology controller is limited to ± maximum speed. You must change this limit, depending on your particular application.  Example: The output of the technology controller supplies the speed setpoint for a pump. The pump should only run in the positive direction.		
p2297 = 2291	Interconnect the upper limit with p2291.	
p2298 = 2292	Interconnect the lower limit with p2292.	
p2291	Upper limit for the technology controller output e.g.: p2291 =100	
p2292	Lower limit for the technology controller output e.g.: p2292 = 0	
Manipulating the actual value of the technology controller		
p2267, p2268	Limit the actual value	
p2269	Scale the actual value	
p2271	Invert the actual value	
p2270	Actual value	

You can find additional information in function block diagram 7958 of the List Manual.

Q-Pulse Id

# 8.7.6.3 Optimizing the controller

## Setting the technology controller from a practical perspective

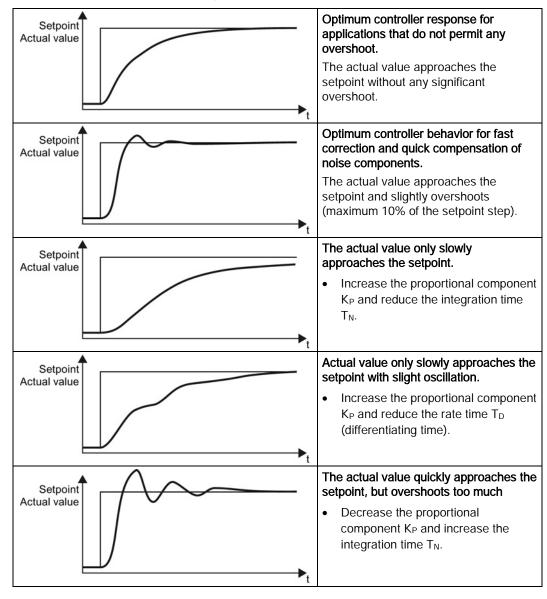


#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to set the technology controller:

- 1. Temporarily set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator (p2257 and p2258) to zero.
- 2. Enter a setpoint step and monitor the associated actual value, e.g. with the trace function of STARTER.

The slower the response of the process to be controlled, the longer you must monitor the controller response. Under certain circumstances (e.g. for a temperature control), you need to wait several minutes until you can evaluate the controller response.



SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 8.7 Application-specific functions

3. Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator back to their original value.

You have now set the technology controller.

# 8.8 Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)

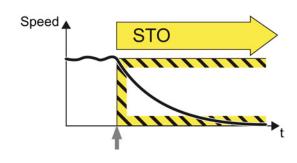


These operating instructions describe the commissioning of the STO safety function when it is controlled via a fail-safe digital input.

You will find a detailed description of all safety functions and control using PROFIsafe in the Safety Integrated Function Manual, see Section Further information on your inverter (Page 395).

# 8.8.1 Functional description

Definition according to EN 61800-5-2: "[...] [The inverter] does not supply any energy to the motor, which can generate a torque (or for a linear motor, a force)."



# **Application examples**

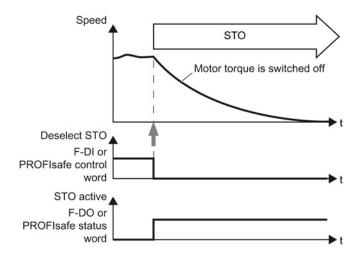
Example	Possible solution
When the Emergency Stop button is pressed, it is not permissible that a stationary motor undesirably starts.	<ul><li>Wire the Emergency Stop button with a fail-safe input.</li><li>Select STO via the fail-safe input.</li></ul>
A central Emergency Stop button ensures that several drives cannot unintentionally start.	<ul> <li>Evaluate the Emergency Stop button in a central control.</li> <li>Select STO via PROFIsafe.</li> </ul>

8.8 Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)

#### How does STO function in detail?

The inverter recognizes the selection of STO via a fail-safe input or via the safe communication PROFIsafe.

The inverter then safely switches off the torque of the connected motor.



If no motor holding brake is present, the motor coasts to a standstill.

If you use a motor holding brake, the inverter closes the brake immediately after selecting STO.

# 8.8.2 Prerequisite for STO use

In order to use the STO safety function, the machine manufacturer should have already performed a risk assessment, e.g. in compliance with EN ISO 1050, "Safety of machinery - Principles of risk assessment". The risk assessment must confirm that the inverter is permitted for use in accordance with SIL 2 or PL d.

# 8.8.3 Commissioning STO

### 8.8.3.1 Commissioning tool

We strongly recommend that you commission the safety functions using the STARTER PC tool.

If you use STARTER for commissioning, then you set the functions using the graphic screen forms and you do not have to work with parameters. In this case, you can ignore the parameter tables in the following sections.

Table 8- 35 STARTER commissioning tool (PC software)

Download	Order number
STARTER	6SL3255-0AA00-2CA0
(http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/v	PC Connection Kit, includes STARTER DVD and
iew/en/10804985/130000)	USB cable

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 8.8.3.2 Protection of the settings from unauthorized changes

The safety functions are protected against unauthorized changes by a password.

Table 8-36 Parameter

No.	Description
p9761	Entering a password (factory setting 0000 hex) Permissible passwords lie in the range 1 FFFF FFFF.
p9762	New password
p9763	Confirm password

#### See also

Product Support (Page 396)

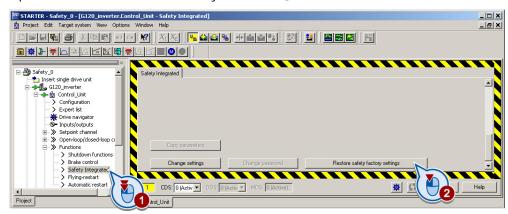
# 8.8.3.3 Resetting the safety function parameters to the factory setting



#### **Procedure**

To reset the safety function settings to the factory setting without changing the standard settings, proceed as follows:

- 1. Go online with STARTER
- 2. Open the screen form for the safety functions ①.



- 3. Press the button to restore the factory settings ②.
- 4. Enter the password, for the safety functions.
- 5. Confirm saving parameters (RAM to ROM).
- 6. Go offline with STARTER.
- 7. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
- 8. Wait until all of the LED on the inverter go dark. Now switch on the inverter power supply again (power on reset).

You have restored the safety functions in the inverter to the factory settings.

Parameters	Description	
p0010	Drive, commissioning parameter filter	
	0	Ready
	95	Safety Integrated commissioning
p0970 Reset drive parameters		et drive parameters
	0	Inactive
	5	Starts a safety parameter reset.  After the reset, the inverter sets p0970 = 0.
p9761	Enter a password (factory setting 0000 hex) Permissible passwords lie in the range 1 FFFF FFFF.	
p9762	New password	
p9763	Confirm password	

# 8.8.3.4 Changing settings



## **Procedure**

To start commissioning the safety functions, proceed as follows:

- 1. Go online with STARTER.
- 2. In STARTER, select the fail-safe functions.
- 3. Select "Change settings".



Parameter	Description
p0010 = 95	Drive commissioning parameter filter Safety Integrated commissioning
p9761	Enter a password (factory setting 0000 hex) Permissible passwords lie in the range 1 FFFF FFFF.
p9762	New password
p9763	Confirm password





You have completed the following commissioning steps:

- You have started to commission the safety functions.
- You have selected the basic functions via onboard terminals of the inverter.

Table 8- 37 Parameter

Parameter	Description	
p9601	Enable functions integrated in the drive (factory setting: 0000 bin)	
	p9601 = 0	Safety functions integrated in the drive inhibited
	p9601 = 1	Enable basic functions via onboard terminals

The other selection options are described in the "Safety Integrated Function Manual". See also Section: Manuals for your inverter (Page 395).

## 8.8.3.5 Interconnecting the "STO active" signal

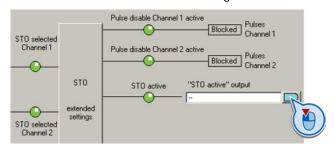
If you require the feedback signal "STO active" of the inverter in your higher-level control system, then you must appropriately interconnect the signal.

#### **Procedure**



To interconnect the "STO active" checkback signal, proceed as follows:

1. Select the button for the feedback signal.



2. In the following selection menu, select the appropriate setting for your particular application.

You have interconnected the "STO active" checkback signal. The inverter signals "STO active" to the higher-level control after STO has been selected.

Parameter	Description
r9773.01	1 signal: STO is active in the drive

SINAMICS G120C converter

8.8 Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)

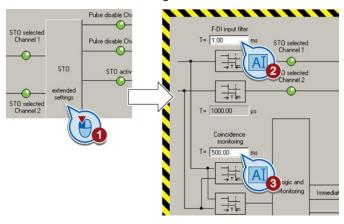
## 8.8.3.6 Setting the filter for fail-safe inputs



#### **Procedure**

To set the input filter and monitoring for simultaneous operation for a fail-safe input, proceed as follows:

1. Select the advanced settings for STO.



- 2. Set the debounce time for the F-DI input filter.
- 3. Set the discrepancy for the simultaneity monitoring.
- 4. Close the screen form.



## Description of the signal filter

The following are available for the signal processing of the fail-safe inputs:

- A tolerance for the simultaneous monitoring.
- A filter to suppress short signals, e.g. test pulses.

#### A tolerance for the simultaneous monitoring

The inverter checks whether the signals at both inputs always have the same signal status (high or low).

With electromechanical sensors (e.g. emergency stop buttons or door switches), the two sensor contacts never switch at exactly the same time and are therefore temporarily inconsistent (discrepancy). A long-term discrepancy indicates a fault in the wiring of a fail-safe input, e.g. a wire break.

When appropriately set, the inverter tolerates brief discrepancies.

The tolerance time does not extend the inverter response time. The inverter selects its safety function as soon as one of the two F-DI signals changes its state from high to low.

SINAMICS G120C converter

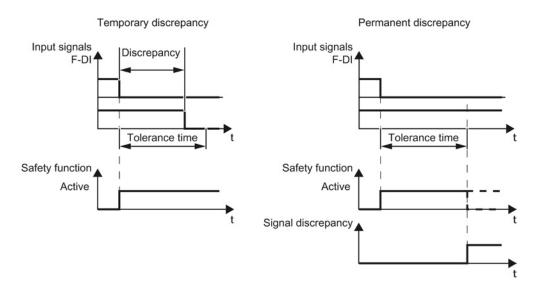


Figure 8-33 Tolerance regarding discrepancy

# Filter to suppress short signals

The inverter normally responds immediately to signal changes at its fail-safe inputs. This is not required in the following cases:

- When you interconnect a fail-safe input of the inverter with an electromechanical sensor, contact bounce may result in signal changes occurring, to which the inverter responds.
- Several control modules test their fail-safe outputs using bit pattern tests (on/off tests), in
  order to identify faults due to either short-circuit or cross-circuit faults. When you
  interconnect a fail-safe input of the inverter with a fail-safe output of a control module, the
  inverter responds to these test signals.

A signal change during a bit pattern test usually lasts:

On test: 1 msOff test: 4 ms

If the fail-safe input signals too many signal changes within a certain time, then the inverter responds with a fault.

Q-Pulse Id

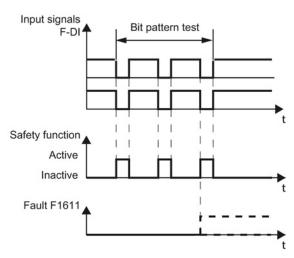


Figure 8-34 Inverter response to a bit pattern test

An adjustable signal filter in the inverter suppresses temporary signal changes using bit pattern test or contact bounce.

The filter increases the inverter response time. The inverter only selects its safety function after the debounce time has elapsed.

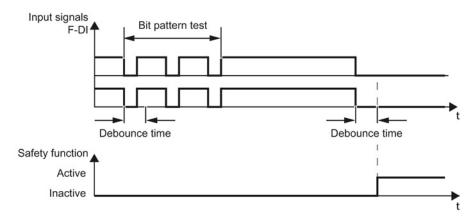


Figure 8-35 Filter for suppressing temporary signal changes

Parameter	Description
p9650	<b>F-DI changeover tolerance time</b> (factory setting: 500 ms)  Tolerance time to change over the fail-safe digital input for the basic functions.
p9651	STO debounce time (factory setting: 1 ms) Debounce time of the fail-safe digital input for the basic functions.

## Debounce times for standard and safety functions

The debounce time p0724 for "standard" digital inputs has no influence on the fail-safe input signals. Conversely, the same applies: The F-DI debounce time does not affect the signals of the "standard" inputs.

If you use an input as a standard input, set the debounce time using parameter p0724.

If you use an input as a fail-safe input, set the debounce time as described above.

SINAMICS G120C converter

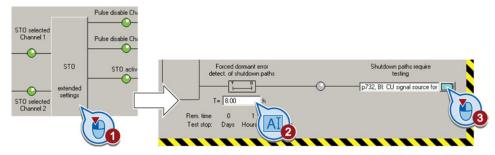
## 8.8.3.7 Setting forced dormant error detection

# $\Box$ 2

#### **Procedure**

To set forced dormant error detection of the basic functions, proceed as follows:

1. Select the advanced settings for STO.



- 2. Set the monitoring time to a value to match your application.
- 3. Using this signal, the inverter signals that a forced dormant error detection is required. Interconnect this signal for example with a digital output of your choice.



## Description of the forced dormant error detection

To meet the requirements of the standards ISO 13849-1 and IEC 61508 in terms of timely fault detection, the inverter must test its safety-related circuits regularly - at least once a year - to ensure that they are functioning correctly.

#### Forced dormant error detection of the basic functions

The forced dormant error detection of the basic functions is the regular self-test of the inverter that causes the inverter to check its circuits to switch-off the torque. If you use the Safe Brake Relay, for a forced dormant error detection, the inverter also checks the circuits of this option module.

The inverter executes a forced dormant error detection under the following circumstances:

- every time the supply voltage is connected.
- every time after the STOfunction has been selected.

The inverter monitors the regular forced dormant error detection.

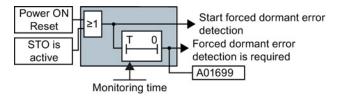


Figure 8-36 Triggering and monitoring the forced dormant error detection

Parameter	Description
p9659	Forced dormant error detection timer (Factory setting: 8 h) Monitoring time for the forced dormant error detection
r9660	Forced dormant error detection remaining time Displays the remaining time until the forced dormant error detection and testing the safety switch-off signal paths.
r9773.31	1 signal: Forced dormant error detection is required Signals for the higher-level control system.

#### Time of the forced dormant error detection

In the case of warning A01699, you must initiate a forced dormant error detection at the next opportunity. These alarms do not affect the operation of your machine.

- Switch off the motor.
- Select function STO or switch off the inverter supply voltage temporarily and on again.

### Examples for the times when forced dormant error detection is performed:

- When the drives are at a standstill after the system has been switched on.
- When the protective door is opened.
- At defined intervals (e.g. every 8 hours).
- In automatic mode (time and event dependent).

# 8.8.3.8 Activate settings

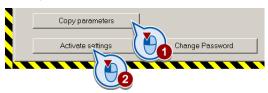
## Activate settings



#### **Procedure**

To activate the settings for the safety functions, proceed as follows:

1. Press the "Copy parameters" button, to create a redundant image of your inverter settings.



- 2. Press the "Activate settings" button.
- 3. If the password is the factory default, you are prompted to change the password.

  If you try to set a password that is not permissible, the old password will not be changed.
- 4. Confirm the prompt for saving your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
- 5. Switch off the inverter supply voltage.
- 6. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark (no voltage condition).
- 7. Switch on the inverter supply voltage again.

Your settings are now active.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Parameter	Description
p9700 = 57 hex	SI copy function (factory setting: 0) Start copy function SI parameter.
p9701 = AC hex	Confirm data change (factory setting: 0)Confirm data change overall.
p0010 = 0	Drive commissioning parameter filter 0: Ready
p9761	Enter a password (factory setting 0000 hex) Permissible passwords lie in the range 1 FFFF FFFF.
p9762	New password
p9763	Confirm password

#### See also

Protection of the settings from unauthorized changes (Page 263)

# 8.8.3.9 Checking the assignment of the digital inputs

# Checking the assignment of the digital inputs

If you control the safety functions in the inverter using digital inputs, then you must check as to whether these digital inputs have been assigned other functions.



Figure 8-37 Example: Assignment of digital inputs DI 4 and DI 5 with STO

Both, the assignment of digital inputs with the selection of a safety function or with a "standard" function can lead to an unexpected behavior of the drive.

Q-Pulse Id

8.8 Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)



#### **Procedure**

To check the assignment of the digital inputs, proceed as follows:

- 1. In STARTER, select the screen form for the terminals of the digital inputs.
- 2. Remove all signal interconnections of the digital inputs that you wish to use as fail-safe input F-DI:

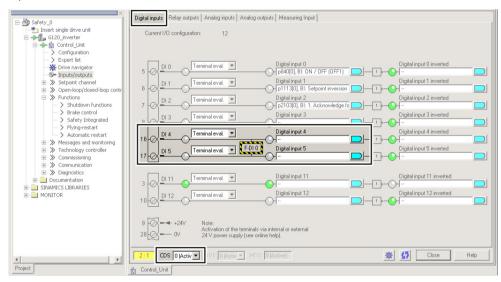


Figure 8-38 Remove pre-assignment of digital inputs DI 4 and DI 5

3. When you use the data set changeover CDS, you must delete the multiple assignment of the digital inputs for all CDS.

You have ensured that the fail-safe inputs of the safety functions do not control other functions in the inverter.

Active 17/06/2014

Page 272 of 404

# 8.8.3.10 Acceptance test

#### Why is acceptance required?

The EC Machinery Directive and ISO 13849-1 stipulate:

- You must check safety-related functions and machine parts after commissioning.
  - → Acceptance test.
- You must create an "acceptance report" showing the test results.
  - → Documentation.

## Acceptance test

The acceptance test comprises two parts:

- Checking whether the safety functions in the inverter are correctly set:
  - Does the speed control handle the configured application cases in the machine?
  - Do the set interface, times and monitoring functions match the configuration of the machine?
- Checking whether the safety-relevant functions in the plant or machine function correctly.
   This part of the acceptance test goes beyond the inverter acceptance test:
  - Are all safety equipment such as protective door monitoring devices, light barriers or emergency-off switches connected and ready for operation?
  - Does the higher-level control correctly respond to the safety-relevant feedback signals of the inverter?
  - Do the inverter settings match the configured safety-relevant function in the machine?

#### Documentation

The documentation consists of the following parts:

- Description of the safety-relevant components and functions of the machine or plant.
- Report of the acceptance test results.
- Report of the settings of the safety functions.
- Countersigned documentation.

#### **Authorized persons**

Personnel from the machine manufacturer, who, on account of their technical qualifications and knowledge of the safety functions, are in a position to perform the acceptance test in the correct manner, are authorized to carry out an acceptance.

8.8 Fail-safe function Safe Torque Off (STO)

# Reduced acceptance test

A full acceptance test is necessary only after first commissioning. A reduced acceptance test is sufficient when safety functions are expanded.

- The reduced acceptance test is only required for the part of the machine that has been changed as a result of replacement, update, or function expansion.
- The acceptance test is only required for the safety functions that you actually use.

Table 8- 38 Reduced scope acceptance test for function expansions

Measure	Acceptance test		
	Acceptance test	Documentation	
Replace the inverter.  Replacing the motor.  Replacing the gearbox.	No. Only check the direction of rotation of the motor.	<ul> <li>Supplement inverter data</li> <li>Log the new checksums</li> <li>Countersignature</li> <li>No change.</li> </ul>	
Replace the safety-related peripherals (e.g. Emergency Off switch).	No. Only check the control of the safety functions that are influenced by the components that have been replaced.	No change.	
Inverter firmware update.	No.	<ul> <li>Supplement firmware version in the inverter data</li> <li>Log the new checksums</li> <li>Countersignature.</li> </ul>	
Functional expansion of the machine (additional drive).	Yes. Only check the safety functions of the new drive.	<ul> <li>Supplement machine overview</li> <li>Supplement inverter data</li> <li>Supplement function table</li> <li>Supplement limit values</li> <li>Log the new checksums</li> <li>Countersignature</li> </ul>	
Transfer of converter settings to other identical machines by means of series commissioning.	No. Only check the control of all of the safety functions.	<ul><li>Supplement machine description</li><li>Check checksums</li><li>Check firmware versions</li></ul>	

## Documents for the acceptance test

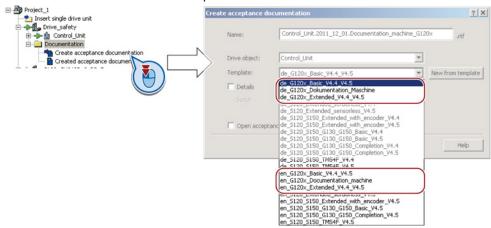
The STARTER provides you with a number of documents to be regarded as a recommendation for the acceptance tests of the safety functions.

#### Procedure



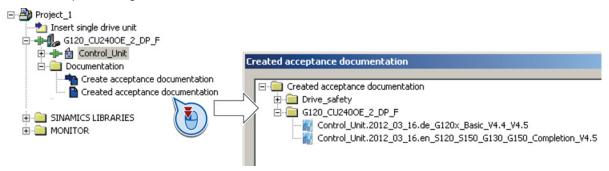
Proceed as follows to create the acceptance documentation for the drive using STARTER:

1. In STARTER, select "Create acceptance documentation":



STARTER has templates in German and English.

- 2. Select the suitable template and create a report for each drive of your machine or system:
  - Template for the machine documentation:
    - de\_G120x\_Dokumentation\_Maschine: German template.
    - en\_G120x\_Documentation\_machine: English template.
  - Report of the settings for the basic functions, from firmware version V4.4 onwards: de\_G120x\_Basicc\_V4.4...: German report. en\_G120x\_Basic\_V4.4...: English report.
- 3. You load the created reports for archiving and the machine documentation for further processing:



4. Archive the reports and the machine documentation.

You have generated the documents to accept the safety functions.

The reports and the machine documentation can also be found in the section: Documentation for acceptance of safety functions (Page 392).

SINAMICS G120C converter

#### Recommended acceptance test

The following descriptions for the acceptance test are recommendations that illustrate the principle of acceptance. You may deviate from these recommendations if you check the following once you have completed commissioning:

- Correct assignment of the interfaces of each converter with the safety function:
  - Fail-safe inputs
  - PROFIsafe address
- Correct setting of the STO safety function.

#### Note

Perform the acceptance test with the maximum possible velocity and acceleration in order to test the expected maximum braking distances and braking times.

#### Note

#### Non-critical alarms

The following alarms are issued following each system ramp-up and are not critical for acceptance:

- A01697
- A01796

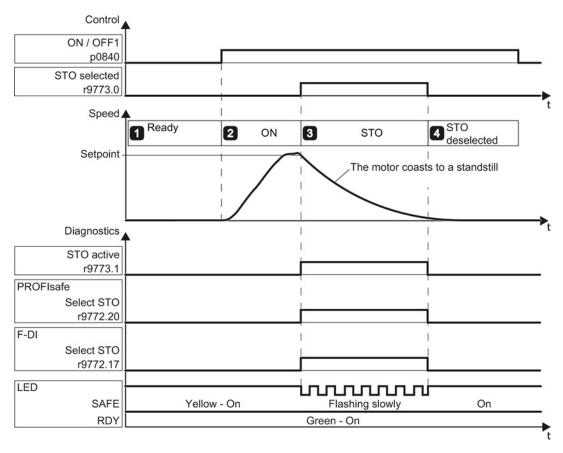


Figure 8-39 Acceptance test for STO (basic functions)

SINAMICS G120C converter



## **Procedure**

To perform an acceptance test of the STO function as part of the basic functions, proceed as follows:

				Status
1.	The inverter is ready			
		e inverter signals neither faults nor ala [22[07]).	irms of the safety functions (r0945[07],	
	• ST	O is not active (r9773.1 = 0).		
2.	Switch	on motor		
	2.1.	Enter a speed setpoint ≠ 0.		
	2.2.	Switch on the motor (ON command).		
	2.3.	Check that the correct motor is runni	ng.	
3.	Select	ct STO		
	3.1.	Select STO while the motor is runnin Test each configured activation, e.g.		
	3.2.	Check the following:		
		When controlled by PROFIsafe	For control via terminal	
		The inverter signals the following:  "STO selection via PROFIsafe" (r9772.20 = 1)	<ul> <li>The inverter signals the following: "STO Selection via terminal" (r9772.17 = 1)</li> </ul>	
		<ul> <li>If a mechanical brake is not availant A mechanical brake brakes the mat a standstill.</li> </ul>	able, the motor coasts down. notor and holds it to ensure that it remains	
		The inverter signals neither faults nor alarms of the safety functions (r0945[07], r2122[07]).		
		• The inverter signals the following "STO is selected" (r9773.0 = 1). "STO is active" (r9773.1 = 1).		
4.	Desele	eselect STO		
	4.1.	Deselect STO.		
	4.2.	Check the following:		
		• STO is not active (r9773.1 = 0).		
		The inverter signals neither faults (r0945[07], r2122[07]).	nor alarms of the safety functions	

You have performed the acceptance test of the STO function.

# 8.9 Switchover between different settings

In several applications, the inverter must be able to be operated with different settings.

#### Example:

You connect different motors to one inverter. Depending on the particular motor, the inverter must operate with the associated motor data and the appropriate ramp-function generator.

## Drive data sets (DDS)

Your can parameterize several inverter functions differently and then switch over between the different settings.

The associated parameters are indexed (index 0 or 1). Via control commands select one of the two indices and therefore one of the two saved settings.

The settings in the inverter with the same index are known as drive data set.

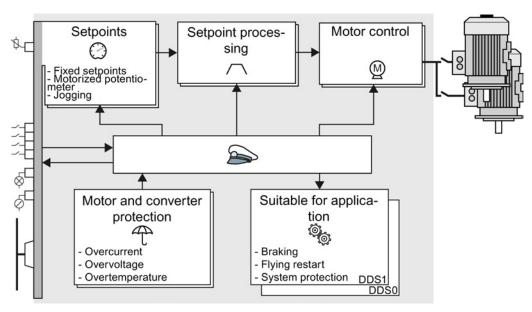


Figure 8-40 DDS switchover in the inverter

You can use parameter p0180 to define the number of drive data sets (1 or 2).

Table 8-39 Selecting the number of drive data sets

Parameter	Description
p0010 = 15	Drive commissioning: Data sets
p0180	Drive data sets (DDS) number(factory setting: 1)
p0010 = 0	Drive commissioning: Ready

Table 8- 40 Parameters for switching the drive data sets:

Parameter	Description
p0820	Drive data set selection DDS
p0826	Motor changeover, motor number
r0051	Displaying the number of the DDS that is currently effective

For an overview of all the parameters that belong to the drive data sets and can be switched, see the Parameter Manual.

### Note

You can only switch over the motor data of the drive data sets in the "ready for operation" state with the motor switched-off. The switchover time is approx. 50 ms.

If you do not switch over the motor data together with the drive data sets (i.e. same motor number in p0826), then the drive data sets can also be switched over in operation.

Table 8- 41 Parameters for copying the drive data sets

Parameter	Description
p0819[0]	Source drive data set
p0819[1]	Target drive data set
p0819[2] = 1	Start copy operation

For more information, see the List Manual (the parameter list and function diagram 8565).

8.9 Switchover between different settings

## External data backup

After commissioning, your settings are saved in the inverter so that they are protected against power failure.

We recommend that you additionally back up the settings on a storage medium outside the inverter. Without backup, your settings could be lost if the inverter developed a defect (see also Overview of how to replace an inverter (Page 303)).

The following storage media are available for your settings:

- Memory card
- PG/PC
- Operator panel

#### **NOTICE**

Data backup using operator panels with USB connection with the PG/PC is not possible

If the inverter is connected to a PG/PC via a USB cable, you can save any data on the MMC via the operator panels.

To allow you to save data on the MMC using an operator panel, you must release the USB connection between PG/PC and inverter.

#### Carrying out series commissioning

Series commissioning is the commissioning of several identical drives.



#### **Procedure**

You must proceed as follows to carry out series commissioning:

- 1. Commission the first inverter.
- 2. Back up the settings of the first inverter to an external storage medium.
- 3. Transfer the settings of the first inverter to another inverter via the storage medium.

#### Note

The control unit to which the settings are transferred must have the same order number and the same or a higher firmware version as the source control unit.

You have carried out series commissioning.

# 9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using memory card

## What memory cards do we recommend?

You will find the recommended memory cards in Section: Commissioning tools, page 23. SDHC cards (SD High Capacity) are not possible.

## Using memory cards from other manufacturers

If you use other SD or MMC memory cards, then you must format the memory card as follows:

- MMC: Format FAT 16
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card: format x: /fs:fat (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC)
- SD: Format FAT 32
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card: format x: /fs:fat32 (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC.)

#### Note

## Limited function with memory cards from other manufacturers

Under certain circumstances, third-party memory cards do not support all functions (e.g. download). You use these cards at your own risk.

# 9.1.1 Saving setting on memory card

We recommend that you insert the memory card before switching on the inverter. The inverter always also backs up its settings on an inserted card.

If you wish to backup the inverter settings on a memory card, you have two options:

## Automatically backing up

#### **Preconditions**

- The inverter power supply has been switched off.
- No USB cable is inserted in the inverter.

#### **Procedure**



Proceed as follows to automatically backup your settings:

- 1. Insert an empty memory card into the inverter.
- 2. Then switch-on the inverter power supply.





After it has been switched on, the frequency inverter copies its settings to the memory card.

#### Note

If the memory card is not empty, then the inverter accepts the data from the memory card. This deletes the old setting in the inverter.

Only use empty memory cards for automatic data backup.

### Manually backing up

#### **Preconditions**

- The inverter power supply has been switched on.
- No memory card is inserted in the inverter.



SINAMICS G120C converter

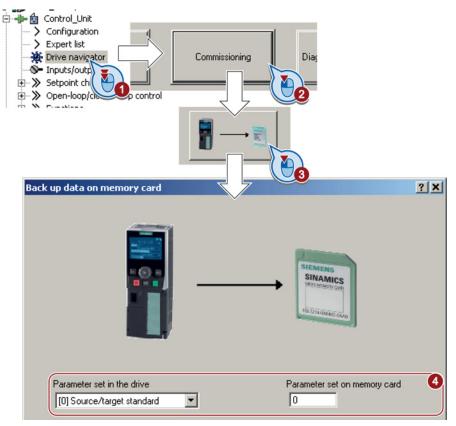
9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using memory card



## Procedure using STARTER

Proceed as follows to manually back up your settings on a memory card:

- Go online with STARTER, e.g. via a USB cable.
   In your drive, select "Drive Navigator".
- 2. Select the "Commissioning" button.
- 3. Select the button to transfer the settings to the memory card.
- 4. Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.
- 5. Close the screen forms.



You have manually backed up the settings on the memory card.



#### Procedure with the BOP-2

Proceed as follows to manually back up your settings on a memory card:

- 1. Remove the USB cable if one is inserted in the inverter.
- 2. Plug a BOP-2 onto the inverter.
- 3. Go to the menu level "EXTRAS".
- 4. In the menu, select "EXTRAS" "TO CRD".

You have manually backed up the settings on the memory card.



SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 9.1.2 Transferring the setting from the memory card

# Automatically transferring

#### Precondition

The inverter power supply has been switched off.

#### **Procedure**

 $\square$ <sup>1</sup><sub>2</sub>

Proceed as follows to automatically transfer your settings:

- 1. Insert the memory card into the inverter.
- 2. Then switch on the inverter power supply.





If there is valid parameter data on the memory card, then the inverter accepts the data from the memory card.

# Manually transferring

#### Preconditions

- The inverter power supply has been switched on.
- No memory card is inserted in the inverter.



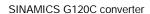


#### Procedure with the BOP-2

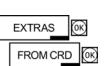
Proceed as follows to manually transfer your settings from a memory card:

- 1. Remove the USB cable if one is inserted in the inverter.
- 2. Attach the BOP-2 operator panel to the inverter.
- 3. Go to the menu level "EXTRAS".
- 4. Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" "FROM CRD".
- 5. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 6. Wait until all LED on the inverter go dark.
- 7. Now switch on the inverter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.

You have manually transferred the settings from the memory card.



Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB



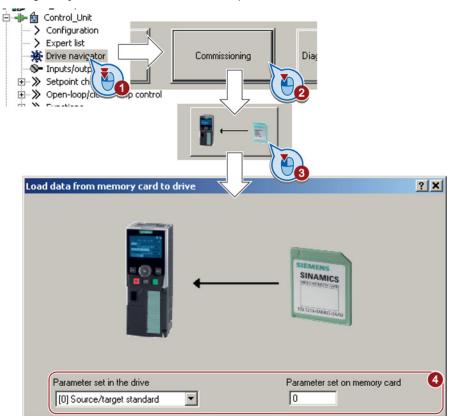
9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using memory card



## Procedure using STARTER

Proceed as follows to manually transfer your settings from a memory card:

- 1. Go online with STARTER, and in your drive, select the "Drive Navigator".
- 2. Select the "Commissioning" button.
- 3. Select the button to transfer the data from the memory card to the inverter.
- 4. Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.
- 5. Close the screen forms.
- 6. Go offline with STARTER.
- 7. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 8. Wait until all LED on the inverter go dark. Now switch on the inverter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.



You have manually transferred the settings from the memory card.

# 9.1.3 Safely remove the memory card

#### **NOTICE**

#### Destruction of files on the memory card when the memory card is removed

If you remove the memory card when the converter is switched on without implementing the "safe removal" function you may destroy the file system on the memory card. The memory card will then no longer function.

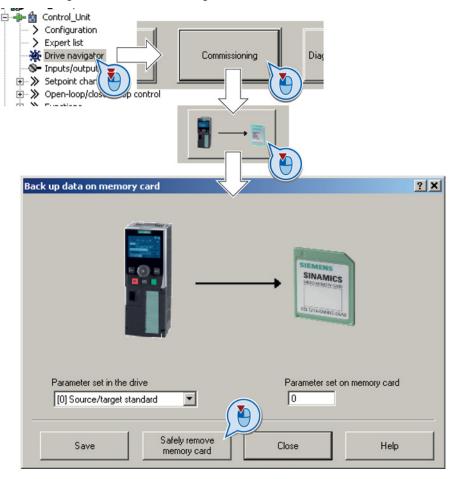
Only remove the memory card using the "safe removal" function.

# $\square$ <sup>1</sup><sub>2</sub>

## Procedure using STARTER

To safely remove the memory card, proceed as follows:

1. In the Drive Navigatorselect the following screen form:



- 2. Click on the button to safely remove the memory card.
- 3. You may remove the memory card from the inverter after the appropriate message has been output.

You have now safely removed the memory card.

### 9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using memory card

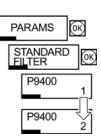


#### Procedure with the BOP-2

To safely remove the memory card, proceed as follows:

- 1. Go to parameter p9400. If a memory card is correctly inserted, then p9400 = 1.
- 2. Set p9400 = 2 The BOP-2 displays "BUSY" for several seconds and then jumps to either p9400 = 3 or p9400 = 100.
- 3. For Bei p9400 = 3 you may remove the memory card.
- 4. For p9400 = 100, you may not remove the memory card at the moment.In this case, try again by setting p9400 = 2.





# 9.2 Backing up and transferring settings using STARTER

#### Precondition

With the supply voltage switched on, you can transfer the inverter settings from the inverter to a PG/PC, or the data from a PG/PC to the inverter.

This requires you to have installed the STARTER commissioning tool on your PG/PC.



You will find additional information about STARTER in Section Commissioning tools (Page 23).

### Inverter → PC/PG



#### **Procedure**

To back up the settings, proceed as follows:

- 1. Go online with STARTER: 3.
- 2. Select the button "Download project to PG": 🔬
- 3. To save the data in the PG, select the button: ...
- 4. Go offline with STARTER : 🥦



You have backed up the settings.

### Procedure PC/PG → Converter

The procedure depends on whether you also transfer settings of safety functions or not.

### Converter without safety functions:

- Go online with STARTER : <a>-</a>
- Select the button "Download project to target system": <a href="mailto:size-12">size-12</a>
- To save the data in the converter, select the "Copy RAM to ROM" button:
- Go offline with STARTER : 🥦

# Converter with safety functions:

- ② Select the button "Download project to target system": <a href="mailto:button">button</a> "Download project to target system":
- ③ Open the STARTER screen for the safety functions.



- ① Copy the safety function parameters.
- ② Activate the settings.



- To save the data in the converter, select the "Copy RAM to ROM" button:
- Go offline with STARTER : 🦡
- Switch off the converter power supply.
- Wait until all LED on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.

Q-Pulse Id

# 9.3 Saving settings and transferring them using an operator panel

### Precondition

When the power supply is switched on, you can transfer the settings of the inverter to the BOP-2 or, vice versa, transfer the data from the BOP-2 to the inverter.



# Inverter → BOP-2



### **Procedure**

To back up the settings, proceed as follows:

Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" - "TO BOP".



You have backed up the settings.



### BOP-2 → inverter



### **Procedure**

To transfer the settings, proceed as follows:

- 1. Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" "FROM BOP".
- 2. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 3. Wait until all LED on the inverter go dark. Now switch on the inverter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.





You have transferred the settings.

# 9.4 Other ways to back up settings

# Description

In addition to the default setting, the converter has an internal memory for backing up three other settings.

On the memory card, you can back up 99 other settings in addition to the default setting.

You will find additional information on the Internet at: Memory options (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/43512514).

Table 9-1 Backing up settings in the converter

Parameter	Description
p0970	Reset drive parameters Load backed-up setting (number 10, 11 or 12). The load overwrites the current setting.
p0971	Save parameters Back up the setting (10, 11 or 12).

Table 9-2 Backing up additional settings on the memory card

Parameter	Description
p0802	Data transfer with memory card as source/target (factory setting 0) Default setting: p802 = 0 Further settings: p802 = 1 99
p0803	Data transfer with device memory as source/target (factory setting 0) Default setting: p803 = 0 Further settings: p803 = 10, 11 or 12

Table 9-3 Operation on the BOP-2

Description	
EXTRAS OK TO CRD OK	The converter writes its setting 0, 10, 11 or 12 to the memory card in accordance with p0802. The file on the memory card is assigned the number according to p0802.
EXTRAS OK FROM CRD OK	The converter loads the setting with the number according to p0802 from the memory card and thus overwrites its setting 0, 10, 11 or 12.

# 9.5 Write and know how protection

The inverter offers the option to protect configured settings from being changed or copied.

Write protection and know-how protection are available for this purpose.

### Write protection - overview

Write protection is primarily used to prevent inverter settings from being inadvertently changed. No password is required for write protection, your settings remain unencrypted.

### The following functions are excluded from the write protection:

- Activating/deactivating write protection (p7761)
- Changing the access level (p0003)
- Saving parameters (p0971)
- Safely removing the memory card (p9400)
- Access to service parameters (p3950) only for service personnel, a password is required
- Restoring the factory setting
- Upload
- Acknowledging alarms and faults
- Switching over to the control panel
- Trace
- Function generator
- Measuring functions
- Reading out diagnostic buffer

The individual parameters that are excluded from the write protection, can be found in the List Manual in Chapter "Parameters for write protection and protection of know-how".

### Know-how protection - overview

The know-how protection is used, for example, so that machine manufacturers can encrypt their configuration know-how and protect it against changes or copying.

The know-how protection is available in the following versions:

- Know-how protection without copy protection (possible with or without memory card)
- Know-how protection with copy protection (possible only with Siemens memory card)

A password is required for the know-how protection.

In case of active know-how protection, the STARTER dialog screens are locked. The expert list in STARTER shows only display parameters.

# 9.5 Write and know how protection

# Actions that are also possible during active know-how protection

- Restoring factory settings
- Acknowledging messages
- Displaying messages
- Displaying the alarm history
- · Reading out diagnostic buffer
- Switching to the control panel (complete control panel functionality: Fetch master control, all buttons and setting parameters)
- Upload (only parameters, which are accessible even though know-how protection is active)

# Actions that are not possible during active know-how protection

- Download
- Export/import
- Trace
- Function generator
- Measuring functions
- Automatic controller setting
- Stationary/rotating measurement
- Deleting the alarm history

The individual parameters that are excluded from the know-how protection can be found in the List Manual in Chapter "Parameters for write protection and protection of know-how".

# 9.5.1 Write protection

# Set write protection

### Precondition

In order that you can set write protection, your inverter must be connected online with STARTER.

# Activate and deactivate write protection



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to activate or deactivate the write protection:

- Select the inverter in your STARTER project with the left mouse button.
- 2. Open the shortcut menu with a right click.
- 3. Activate write protection.

Deactivation is executed in analog.

To make this setting permanent, you need to select "Copy RAM to ROM" Solution. Otherwise, your settings will be lost when the inverter is switched off.



You have activated or deactivated write protection.

### Points to note about restoring the factory settings

If you select "Reset to factory settings" using the button when write protection is active, the following confirmation prompt opens.



### 9.5 Write and know how protection

The confirmation prompt is not issued, if you select another way to restore the factory setting, e.g. using the expert list.

#### Note

### Points to note regarding CAN, BACnet and MODBUS

Using these bus systems, parameter factory settings can be changed despite active write protection. So that write protection is also active when accessing via these fieldbuses, you must additionally set p7762 to 1.

This setting is only possible via the expert list.

# 9.5.2 Know-how protection

When the inverter is operated with know-how protection, please take note of the following information:

#### Note

### Support provided by technical support for active know-how protection

In the case of active know-how protection, support by the technical support is only possible with the consent of the machine manufacturer.

### Know-how protection can only be activated online.

If you have created a project offline on your computer, you must download it to the inverter and go online. Only then can you activate the know-how protection.

You cannot activate know-how protection in the project on the computer.

# Know-how protection with copy protection is only possible with a Siemens memory card.

For "know-how protection with copy protection", a Siemens memory card must be plugged in!

If you try to activate the "know-how protection with copy protection" without a memory card, or with a different memory card, the message "Know-how protection for the drive unit could not be activated" is displayed.

# Password check for know-how protection and Windows language settings

Please note that if the Windows language settings are changed, after activating know-how protection, faults can occur when subsequently checking the password. Therefore, only use characters from the ASCII character set for your password.

# Commissioning the inverter with know-how protection



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to commission an inverter with know-how protection:

- 1. Commission the inverter.
- 2. Create the exception list (Page 299).
- 3. Activate the know-how protection (Page 297).
- 4. Save the settings in the inverter by copying RAM to ROM with **3** or via p0971 = 1.
- Save the project with a on the PG/PC. Also back up any other project-related data (machine type, password, etc.) that may be required for the support of the end customer.

You have commissioned the inverter with know-how protection.

#### 9.5.2.1 Settings for the know-how protection

# Activating know-how protection



### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to activate know-how protection:

- 1. Select the inverter in the STARTER project, and then select "Know-how protection drive unit/activate ..." in the shortcut menu (see also Write protection (Page 295)).
- 2. Enter your password, and confirm with OK.

The password must consist of at least one character and can be no longer than 30 characters. All characters are permissible.



3. In this screen form "Copy RAM to ROM" has been selected in the factory. This will ensure that your settings are permanently stored.

If "Copy RAM to ROM" is not selected, then your know-how protection settings are only saved in the volatile memory, and will no longer be available the next time the system is switched on.

You have activated know-how protection.

SINAMICS G120C converter

### Backing up settings on the memory card

When the know-how protection is activated, you can save the settings via p0971 on the memory card.

To do this, set p0971 = 1. The data is encrypted before being written to the memory card. After saving, p0971 is reset to 0.

### Deactivate know-how protection, delete password



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to deactivate know-how protection:

- Select the inverter in the STARTER project, and right-click to open the dialog box "Know-how protection drive unit/deactivate ...".
- 2. There, select the desired option.
- 3. Enter the password and exit the screen form with OK.



You have deactivated know-how protection.

#### Note

### Permanently or temporarily deactivating know-how protection

Temporarily deactivating know-how protection means that know-how protection is active again after switching off and switching on. Permanently deactivating means that know-how protection is no longer active after switching off and switching on again.

### Deactivating know-how protection temporarily

To temporarily deactivate the know-how protection means that you can change the settings in the inverter until you switch the inverter off and on again, or until you reactivate the know-how protection.

### Finally deactivating know-how protection (delete password)

Finally deactivating the know-how protection means that you delete the password

- Immediately and finally, if you select "Copy RAM to ROM"
- Until the next OFF/ON if you do not select "Copy RAM to ROM"

### Changing the password

Select the inverter in the STARTER project and open the dialog box via the shortcut menu "know-how protection drive unit/change password ... ".

SINAMICS G120C converter

298

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 9.5.2.2 Creating an exception list for the know-how protection

Using the exception list, you as a machine manufacturer may make individual adjustable parameters accessible to end customers although know-how protection is active. You may define the exception list via parameters p7763 and p7764 in the expert list. Specify the number of parameters for the selection list in p7763. Assign the individual indexes to the parameter numbers of the selection list in p7764.

# Procedure



Proceed as follows to change the number of parameters for the selection list:

- 1. Save the inverter settings via an upload ( on the PC/PG and go offline ( )
- 2. In the project on the PC, set p7763 to the desired value.
- 3. Save the project.
- 4. Go online and load the project into the inverter ( ).
- 5. Now make the additional settings in p7764.

You have modified the number of parameters for the selection list.

Factory setting for the exception list:

- p7763 = 1 (selection list contains precisely one parameter)
- p7764[0] = 7766 (parameter number for entering the password)

### Note

### Block access to the inverter as a result of incomplete exception lists

If you remove p7766 from the exception list, you can no longer enter a password and therefore no longer de-activate know-how protection.

In this case to access the inverter again, you have to reset the inverter to the factory settings.

### 9.5.2.3 Replacing devices during know-how protection

### Replacing devices during know-how protection without copy protection

For know-how protection without copy protection, the converter settings can be transferred to another converter using a memory card.

#### See also:

- Saving setting on memory card (Page 283)
- Transferring the setting from the memory card (Page 285)

### Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection

The know-how protection with copy protection prevents the inverter settings from being copied and passed on. This function is predominantly used by machine manufacturers.

If know-how protection with copy protection is active, the inverter cannot be replaced as described in "Overview of how to replace an inverter (Page 303)".

However, to allow the inverter to be replaced, you must use a Siemens memory card, and the machine manufacturer must have an identical machine that he uses as sample.

There are two options for replacing the device:

### Option 1: The machine manufacturer only knows the serial number of the new inverter

- The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
  - For which machine must the inverter be replaced?
  - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new inverter?
- The machine manufacturer goes online on the sample machine.
  - deactivates the know-how protection, see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 297)
  - enters the serial number of the new inverter in p7759
  - enters the serial number of the inserted memory card as reference serial number in p7769
  - activates the know-how protection with copy protection ("Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated!), see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 297)
  - writes the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card
  - sends the memory card to the end customer
- The end customer inserts the memory card and switches on the inverter.

When powering up, the inverter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the inverter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the inverter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

Page 300 of 404

# Option 2: The machine manufacturer knows the serial number of the new inverter and the serial number of the MMC

- The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
  - For which machine must the inverter be replaced?
  - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new inverter?
  - What is the serial number of the memory card?
- The machine manufacturer goes online on the sample machine.
  - deactivates the know-how protection, see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 297)
  - enters the serial number of the new inverter in p7759
  - enters the serial number of the customer's memory card as reference serial number in p7769
  - activates the know-how protection with copy protection ("Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated!), see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 297)
  - writes the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card

Active 17/06/2014

- copies the encrypted project from the card to his PC
- for example, sends it by e-mail to the end customer
- The end customer copies the project to the Siemens memory card that belongs to the machine, inserts it in the inverter and switches on the inverter.

When powering up, the inverter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the inverter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the inverter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

9.5 Write and know how protection

Repair 10

# 10.1 Overview of how to replace an inverter

You must replace the inverter if it continually malfunctions.

### Overview

In the following cases you will need to replace the inverter:

Replacement:	Replacement:	Replacement:	Replacement:
Same fieldbus interface	Same fieldbus interface	Same fieldbus interface	Same fieldbus interface
<ul> <li>Same power rating</li> </ul>	Same power rating	Higher power rating	Higher power rating
Same firmware version	Higher firmware version     (e.g. replace FW V4.2 by FW V4.3)	Same firmware version	higher firmware version     (e.g. replace FW V4.2 by     FW V4.3)
Firmware A	Firmware B  B > A  Firmware A	Firmware A	Firmware B  B > A  Firmware A
		inverter and motor must be adapted to one another (ratio of	
		the motor and inverter rated power > 1/8)	

After you have carried out the replacement, you must restore the inverter's settings.



# Physical injury or material damage as a result of unexpected drive behavior

Replacing inverters of different types can result in an unpredictable drive response.

• In all cases that are not permitted according to the table above, recommission the drive after replacing an inverter.

Q-Pulse Id

# Device replacement without removable storage medium - only for communication via PROFINET

If you have created a topology in your control, using the environment detection, you can replace a defective inverter by a new device of the same type and with the identical software release without having to recommission the system.

You can either load the inverter settings into the inverter using the memory card or – if you are using a SIMATIC S7 controller with DriveES – using DriveES.

Details of the device replacement without removable storage medium can be found in the Profinet system description (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127).



# **∕** DANGER

# Danger to life when live parts are touched

Touching live parts can result in death or severe injury.

Note the following:

- Only work on electrical equipment if you are qualified to do so.
- When carrying out any work, always comply with the country-specific safety rules.

Follow the six steps to ensure safety:

- Prepare for shutdown and inform team members who will be affected by the procedure.
- 2. Switch off the machine so that it is in a no-voltage state:
  - Switch off the machine.
  - Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
  - Check that it really is in a no-voltage condition, from phase conductor to phase conductor and phase conductor to protective conductor.
  - Check that all auxiliary circuits are also in a no-voltage state.
  - Ensure that the motor cannot move.
- 3. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems or water.
- 4. Isolate or neutralize all hazardous energy sources by closing switches, grounding or short-circuiting or closing valves, for example.
- 5. Lock out all energy sources to prevent reclosing.
- 6. Make sure that the machine is completely locked out ... and that you have the right machine!

After you have completed the work, restore operational readiness in the inverse sequence.

Page 304 of 404

# 10.2 Replacing a converter with enabled safety function

### Replacing an inverter with data backup on a memory card



### **Procedure**

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.



# DANGER

### Death as a result of electric shock!

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 minutes until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged enough for the residual voltage to be non-hazardous.

- Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
- 3. Remove the defective inverter.
- 4. Install the new inverter.
- 5. Remove the memory card from the old inverter, and insert this into the new inverter.
- 6. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.

### **NOTICE**

### Damage from swapping the motor's connection lines

The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line.

- Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
- After replacing the Power Module, check the direction in which the motor rotates.
- 7. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
- 8. The inverter loads the settings from the memory card.
- 9. After loading, check whether the inverter outputs Alarm A01028.
  - Alarm A01028:

The loaded settings are not compatible with the inverter.

Clear the alarm with p0971 = 1 and recommission the drive.

- No alarm A01028:

Perform a **reduced** acceptance test.

The reduced acceptance test is described in Section Reduced acceptance test (Page 274).

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the memory card to the new inverter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

10.2 Replacing a converter with enabled safety function

## Replacing an inverter with data backup in the PC



### **Procedure**

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.



# DANGER

### Death as a result of electric shock!

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 minutes until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged enough for the residual voltage to be non-hazardous.

- Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
- 3. Remove the defective inverter.
- 4. Install the new inverter.
- 5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.

#### NOTICE

### Damage from swapping the motor's connection lines

The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line.

- Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
- After replacing the Power Module, check the direction in which the motor rotates.
- 6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
- 7. Open the project that matches the drive in STARTER.
- 8. Go online and transfer the settings from the PC into the inverter by pressing the button.

The inverter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.

- 9. In STARTER, select the screen form for the safety functions.
- 10. Select the "Change settings" button.
- 11. Select the "Activate settings" button.
- 12. Save your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
- 13. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 14. Wait until all LED on the inverter go dark.
- 15. Switch on the inverter power supply again (power on reset).
- 16.Perform a **reduced** acceptance test, see the section Reduced acceptance test ((G120C)) (Page 274).

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the PC to the new inverter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

# Replacing the inverter with data backup in the operator panel (BOP-2 or IOP)



### **Procedure**

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.



# DANGER

#### Death as a result of electric shock!

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 minutes until the capacitors in the inverter have discharged enough for the residual voltage to be non-hazardous.

- Check the voltage at the inverter connections before you carry out any installation work.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
- 3. Remove the defective inverter.
- 4. Install the new inverter.
- 5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.

#### NOTICE

### Damage from swapping the motor's connection lines

The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line.

- Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
- After replacing the Power Module, check the direction in which the motor rotates.
- 6. Reconnect the line voltage and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
- 7. Attach the operator panel to the inverter.
- 8. Transfer the settings from the operator panel to the inverter, e.g. via menu "EXTRAS" "FROM BOP" in the BOP-2.
- 9. Wait until the transfer is complete.

The inverter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.

- 10. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 11. Wait until all LED on the inverter go dark.
- 12. Switch on the inverter power supply again (power on reset).
- 13.Perform a **reduced** acceptance test, see the section Reduced acceptance test ((G120C)) (Page 274).

You have replaced the inverter and transferred the safety function settings from the operator panel to the new inverter.

10.3 Replacing a converter without enabled safety function

# 10.3 Replacing a converter without enabled safety function

### Replacing a converter with data backup on a memory card



### **Procedure**

To replace the converter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the converter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the converter.



# /!\DANGER

### Death as a result of electric shock!

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the converter have discharged so that the remaining voltage is non-hazardous.

- Check the voltage at the converter connections, before you carry out any installation work.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the converter.
- 3. Remove the defective converter.
- 4. Install the new converter.
- 5. Remove the memory card from the old converter, and insert this into the new converter.
- 6. Connect all of the cables to the converter.

### **NOTICE**

### Damage from swapping the motor's connection lines

The direction in which the motor rotates switches if you swap the two phases of the motor line.

- Connect the three phases of the motor lines in the right order.
- After replacing the power module, check the direction in which the motor rotates.
- 7. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the converter.
- 8. The converter loads the settings from the memory card.
- 9. After loading, check whether the converter outputs Alarm A01028.
  - Alarm A01028:

The loaded settings are not compatible with the converter.

Clear the alarm with p0971 = 1 and recommission the drive.

No alarm A01028:

The converter has accepted the settings that have been loaded.

You have successfully replaced the converter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

308

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# Replacing a converter with data backup in the PC



### **Procedure**

To replace the converter, proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect the line voltage to the converter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the converter.





#### Death as a result of electric shock!

After the power supply has been switched off, it takes up to 5 min. until the capacitors in the converter have discharged so that the remaining voltage is non-hazardous.

- Check the voltage at the converter connections before you carry out any installation work.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the converter.
- 3. Remove the defective converter.
- 4. Install the new converter.
- 5. Connect all of the cables to the converter.
- 6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the converter.
- 7. Open the project that matches the drive in STARTER.
- 8. Go online and transfer the settings from the PC into the converter by pressing the button.

The converter signals faults after the download. Ignore these faults, as they will be automatically acknowledged by the following steps.

- 9. In STARTER, select the screen form for the safety functions.
- 10. Select the "Change settings" button.
- 11. Select the "Activate settings" button.
- 12. Save your settings (copy RAM to ROM).
- You have successfully replaced the converter.

10.4 Replacing a converter without data backup

# 10.4 Replacing a converter without data backup

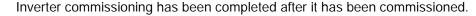
If the settings have not been backed up, after replacing the inverter, you must recommission the drive.

# $\Box$ <sup>1</sup>

#### **Procedure**

To replace the inverter, proceed as follows:

- 1. Disconnect the line voltage to the inverter and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
- 2. Remove the connecting cables of the inverter.
- 3. Remove the defective inverter.
- 4. Install the new inverter.
- 5. Connect all of the cables to the inverter.
- 6. Reconnect the line voltage, and (if being used) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the inverter.
- 7. Recommission the drive.



# 10.5 Replacing the heat sink fan

# When do you have to replace the fan?

A defect fan involves an over temperature of the converter. Indications for a defective fan are e. g. the following alarms and faults:

- A05002 (Air intake overtemperature)
- A05004 (Rectifier overtemperature)
- F30004 (Overtemperature heat sink)
- F30024 (Overtemperature thermal model)
- F30025 (Chip overtemperature)
- F30035 (Air intake overtemperature)
- F30037 (Rectifier overtemperature)

### **Preparatory steps**



#### **Prodedure**

- 1. Power-down the converter
- 2. Disconnect all the cable connectors for line, motor and braking resistor.
- 3. Remove the screening plate.

You prepared the fan replacement.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

310

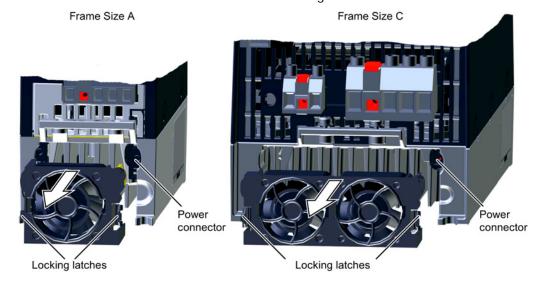
### Removal

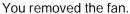
The heat sink fan of the converter is situated at the bottom of the converter below the detachable connectors.

### Prodedure



- 1. Using your fingers, press the locking latches to release the fan module.
- 2. Pull the fan module out from the fan module housing.





### Installation



### **Prodedure**

- 1. Ensure the fan module is correctly orientated (see figure below).
- 2. Gently push the fan module into the fan module housing, ensuring that the power connections are aligned correctly.
- 3. The fan module will click into place as the locking latches are engaged correctly.
- 4. Re-assemble the converter by following the preparatory steps in reverse.

You installed the fan.

10.6 Replacing the internal fan

# 10.6 Replacing the internal fan

## When do you have to replace the fan?

A defective fan involves an over temperature of the converter. Indications for a defective fan are e. g. the following alarms and faults:

- A30034 (Internal overtemperature)
- F30036 (Internal overtemperature)
- A30049 (Internal fan faulty)
- F30059 (Internal fan faulty)

### Removal

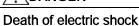
The fan is situated at the top of the converter.

### **Procedure**



1. Power-down the converter





Hazardous voltage is still present for up to 5 minutes after the power supply has been switched off. Do not remove the fan before this time has expired!

- 2. Using a screw driver, bend the locking latches to release the fan.
- 3. Pull the fan out.

You removed the internal fan.

### Installation



#### **Procedure**

- 1. Gently push the fan module into the converter, ensuring that the power connections are aligned correctly.
- 2. The fan will click into place as the locking latches are engaged correctly.
- 3. Power-up the converter.

You installed the internal fan.

# 10.6 Replacing the internal fan

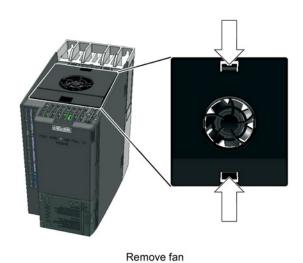


Figure 10-1 Fan replacement



Insert fan

# 10.7 Upgrading the firmware

When upgrading the firmware, you replace the inverter firmware by a later version. Only update the firmware to a later version if you require the expanded functional scope of the newer version.

### Precondition

- The firmware version of your inverter is at least V4.5.
- You have the memory card with the firmware that matches the inverter.

#### **Procedure**

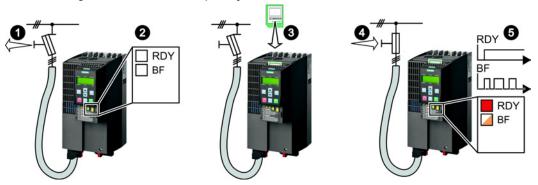


Proceed as follows to upgrade the inverter firmware to a later version:

- 1. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 2. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
- 3. Insert the card with the matching firmware into the inverter slot until it latches into place.
- 4. Switch on the inverter power supply.
- 5. The inverter transfers the firmware from the memory card into its memory.

The transfer takes approximately 5 ... 10 minutes.

While data is being transferred, the LED RDY on the inverter stays red. The LED BF flashes orange with a variable frequency.



6. At the end of the transfer, the LED RDY and BF slowly flash red (0.5 Hz).

# Note

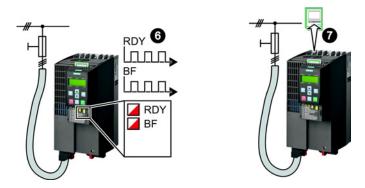
### Corrupted firmware if the power supply fails during the transfer

The inverter firmware can be corrupted if the power supply fails during the transfer.

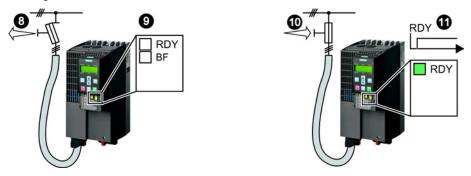
Do not switch off the inverter power supply as long as data is being transferred.

Page 314 of 404





- 8. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 9. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
- 10. Switch on the inverter power supply.
- 11.If the firmware upgrade was successful, after several seconds the inverter LED RDY turns green.



Active 17/06/2014

You have successfully updated the firmware to a more recent version. When upgrading, your settings in the inverter are kept.

# 10.8 Firmware downgrade

When downgrading the firmware, you replace the inverter firmware by an older version. Only downgrade the firmware to an older version if, after replacing an inverter, you require the same firmware in all of your inverters.

# Precondition

- The firmware version of your inverter is at least V4.6.
- You have the memory card with the firmware that matches the inverter.
- You have backed up your settings on the memory card, in an operator panel or in a PC.

### **Procedure**

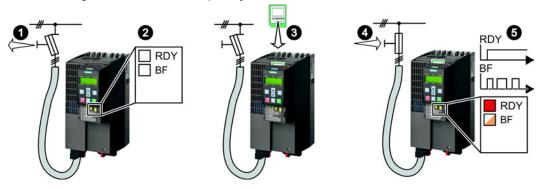


Proceed as follows to downgrade the inverter firmware to an older version:

- 1. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 2. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
- 3. Insert the card with the matching firmware into the inverter slot until it latches into place.
- 4. Switch on the inverter power supply.
- 5. The inverter transfers the firmware from the memory card into its memory.

The transfer takes approximately 5 ... 10 minutes.

While data is being transferred, the LED RDY on the inverter stays red. The LED BF flashes orange with a variable frequency.



6. At the end of the transfer, the LED RDY and BF slowly flash red (0.5 Hz).

#### Note

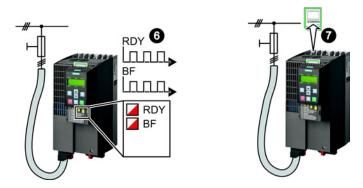
### Corrupted firmware if the power supply fails during the transfer

The inverter firmware can be corrupted if the power supply fails during the transfer.

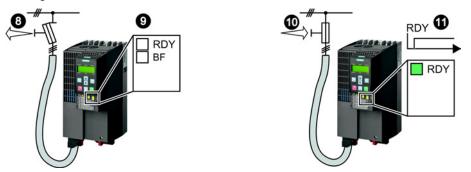
Do not switch off the inverter power supply as long as data is being transferred.

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB





- 8. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 9. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter are dark.
- 10. Switch on the inverter power supply.
- 11.If the firmware downgrade was successful, after several seconds the inverter LED RDY turns green.



After the firmware has been downgraded, the inverter has been reset to the factory settings.

12. Transfer your settings from your data backup to the inverter.

See also Section: Backup data and series commissioning (Page 281).

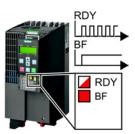
You have downgraded the firmware of the inverter to an older version and have transferred the backed up settings into the inverter.

10.9 Correcting an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade

# 10.9 Correcting an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade

# How does the inverter signal an unsuccessful upgrade or downgrade?

The inverter signals an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade by a quickly flashing LED RDY and the lit LED BF.



# Correcting an unsuccessful upgrade or downgrade

You can check the following to correct an unsuccessful firmware upgrade or downgrade:

- Does the firmware version of your inverter fulfill the preconditions?
  - For an upgrade, as a minimum V4.5.
  - For a downgrade, as a minimum V4.6.
- Have you correctly inserted the card?
- Does the card contain the correct firmware?
- Repeat the appropriate procedure.

# 10.10 If the converter no longer responds

### If the inverter no longer responds

For example, when loading an incorrect file from the memory card, the inverter can go into a state where it can no longer respond to commands from the operator panel or from a higher-level control system. In this case, you must reset the inverter to its factory setting and recommission it. This inverter state is manifested in two different ways:

#### Case 1

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the inverter, either via the operator panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flicker and after 3 minutes the inverter has still not powered up.

### **Procedure**

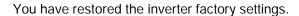


Proceed as follows to restore the inverter factory settings:

- 1. Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the inverter.
- 2. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 3. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.
- 4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as required until the inverter outputs fault F01018:
- 5. Set p0971 = 1.
- 6. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 7. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.

The inverter now powers up with the factory settings.

8. Recommission the inverter.



10.10 If the converter no longer responds

#### Case 2

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the inverter, either via the operator panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flash and are dark this process is continually repeated.

# Procedure



Proceed as follows to restore the inverter factory settings:

- 1. Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the inverter.
- 2. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 3. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.
- 4. Wait until the LEDs flash orange.
- 5. Repeat steps 2 and 3 as often as required until the inverter outputs fault F01018.
- 6. Now set p0971 = 1.
- 7. Switch off the inverter power supply.
- 8. Wait until all LEDs on the inverter go dark. Then switch on the inverter power supply again.

The inverter now powers up with the factory settings.

9. Recommission the inverter.

You have restored the inverter factory settings.

Alarms, faults and system messages

11

The inverter has the following diagnostic types:

LED

The LED at the front of the inverter immediately informs you about the most important inverter states right at the inverter.

Alarms and faults

The inverter signals alarms and faults via

- the fieldbus
- the terminal strip with the appropriate setting
- a connected operator panel, or
- STARTER

Alarms and faults have a unique number.

# 11.1 Operating states indicated on LEDs

The LED RDY (Ready) is temporarily orange after the power supply voltage is switched-on. As soon as the color of the LED RDY changes to either red or green, the LEDs signal the inverter state.

### Signal states of the LED

In addition to the signal states "on" and "off" there are two different flashing frequencies:

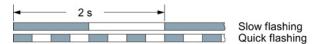


Table 11-1 Inverter diagnostics

LED		Explanation
RDY	BF	
GREEN - on		There is presently no fault
GREEN - slow		Commissioning or reset to factory settings
GREEN - fast		Inverter writes data to the memory card
RED - slow		Inverter waits until the power supply is switched off and switched on again after a firmware update
RED - fast		There is presently a fault
RED - fast	RED - fast	Incorrect memory card or unsuccessful firmware update

SINAMICS G120C converter

# 11.1 Operating states indicated on LEDs

Table 11-2 Inverter diagnostics

LNK LED	Explanation
GREEN - on	The communication via PROFINET is in order.
GREEN - slow	Device naming is active.
Off	No communication via PROFINET.

Table 11-3 Communication diagnostics via RS485

LED BF	Explanation
On	Receive process data
RED - slow	Bus active - no process data
RED - fast	No bus activity
YELLOW - variable frequency	Firmware update in progress

Table 11-4 Communication diagnostics via PROFIBUS DP

LED BF	Explanation
off	Cyclic data exchange (or PROFIBUS not used, p2030 = 0)
RED - slow	Bus fault - configuration fault
RED - fast	Bus fault - no data exchange - baud rate search - no connection
YELLOW - variable frequency	Firmware update in progress

Table 11-5 Diagnostics of the safety functions

SAFE LED	Meaning
YELLOW - on	One or more safety functions are enabled, but not active.
YELLOW - slow	One or more safety functions are active; no safety function faults have occurred.
YELLOW - rapid	The converter has detected a safety function fault and initiated a STOP response.

# LED BF display for CANopen

In addition to the signal states "on" and "off" there are three different flashing frequencies:

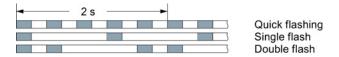


Table 11-6 Communication diagnostics via CANopen

BF LED	Explanation
GREEN - on	Bus state "Operational"
GREEN - fast	Bus state "Pre-Operational"
GREEN - single flash	Bus state "Stopped"
RED - on	No bus
RED - single flash	Alarm - limit reached
RED - double flash	Error event in control (Error Control Event)
YELLOW - variable frequency	Firmware update in progress

# 11.2 Alarms

Alarms have the following properties:

- They do not have a direct effect in the inverter and disappear once the cause has been removed
- They do not need have to be acknowledged
- They are signaled as follows
  - Status display via bit 7 in status word 1 (r0052)
  - at the Operator Panel with a Axxxxx
  - via STARTER

In order to pinpoint the cause of an alarm, there is a unique alarm code and also a value for each alarm.

### Alarm buffer

The inverter saves an alarm code and an alarm value for every alarm it receives.

Alarm code Alarm value

1st alarm	r2122[0]	r2124[0] r2134	
		132	Float

Figure 11-1 Saving the first alarm in the alarm buffer

 $\mbox{r2124}$  and  $\mbox{r2134}$  contain the alarm value - important for diagnostics - as "fixed point" or "floating point" number.

The alarm remains in the alarm buffer even if the alarm has been removed.

If an additional alarm is received, then this is also saved. The first alarm is still saved. The alarms that have occurred are counted in p2111.

Alarm code Alarm value

1st alarm	r2122[0]	r2124[0]	r2134[0]
2nd alarm	[1]	[1]	[1]

Figure 11-2 Saving the second alarm in the alarm buffer

The alarm buffer can contain up to eight alarms. If an additional alarm is received after the eighth alarm - and none of the last eight alarms have been removed - then the next to last alarm is overwritten.

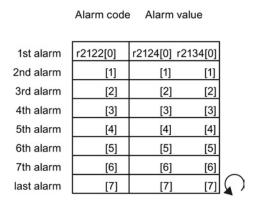


Figure 11-3 Complete alarm buffer

## Emptying the alarm buffer: Alarm history

The alarm history traces up to 56 alarms.

The alarm history only takes alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer. If the alarm buffer is completely filled - and an additional alarm occurs - then the inverter shifts all alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer into the alarm history. The inverter sorts the alarms in the alarm history in the inverse sequence to the alarm buffer.

- the youngest alarm is in index 8
- the second youngest alarm is in index 9
- etc.

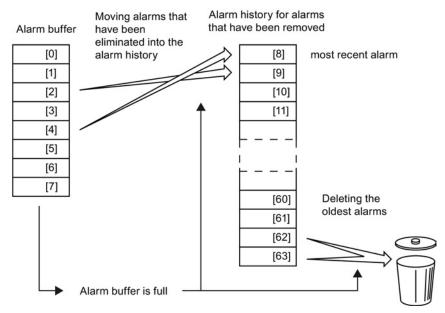


Figure 11-4 Shifting alarms that have been removed into the alarm history

The alarms that have still not been removed remain in the alarm buffer and are resorted so that gaps between the alarms are filled.

If the alarm history is filled up to index 63, each time a new alarm is accepted in the alarm history, the oldest alarm is deleted.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

325

# Parameters of the alarm buffer and the alarm history

Table 11-7 Important parameters for alarms

Parameter	Description	
r2122	Alarm code	
	Displays the numbers of alarms that have occurred	
r2124	Alarm value	
	Displays additional information about the alarm	
p2111	Alarm counter	
	Number of alarms that have occurred after the last reset When setting p2111 = 0, all of the alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer [07] are transferred into the alarm history [863]	
r2132	Actual alarm code	
	Displays the code of the alarm that last occurred	
r2134	Alarm value for float values	
	Displays additional information about the alarm that occurred for float values	

# Extended settings for alarms

Table 11-8 Extended settings for alarms

Parameter	Description	
You can chang	e up to 20 different alarms into a fault or suppress alarms:	
p2118	Setting the message number for the message type	
	Select the alarms for which the message type should be changed	
p2119	Setting the message type	
	Setting the message type for the selected alarm	
	1: Fault	
	2: Alarm	
	3: No message	

You will find details in function diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

## 11.3 Faults

A fault displays a severe fault during operation of the inverter.

The inverter signals a fault as follows:

- at the Operator Panel with Fxxxxx
- on the converter using the red LED RDY
- in bit 3 of the status word 1 (r0052)
- via STARTER

To delete a fault message, you need to remedy the cause of the fault and acknowledge the fault.

Every fault has a clear fault code and also a fault value. You need this information to determine the cause of the fault.

#### Fault buffer of actual values

The converter saves a fault code and fault value for every fault it receives.

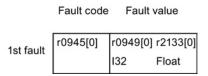


Figure 11-5 Saving the first fault in the fault buffer

r0949 and r2133 contain the fault value - important for diagnostics - as "fixed point" or "floating point" number.

If an additional fault occurs before the first fault has been acknowledged, then this is also saved. The first alarm remains saved. The fault cases that have occurred are counted in p0952. A fault case can contain one or several faults.

	Fault code	Fault value
1st fault	r0945[0]	r0949[0] r2133[0]
2nd fault	[1]	[1] [1]

Figure 11-6 Saving the second fault in the fault buffer

The fault buffer can accept up to eight actual faults. The next to last fault is overwritten if an additional fault occurs after the eighth fault.

#### 11.3 Faults

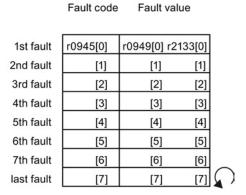


Figure 11-7 Complete fault buffer

# Fault acknowledgement

In most cases, you have the following options to acknowledge a fault:

- Switch-off the inverter power supply and switch-on again.
- Press the acknowledgement button on the operator panel
- · Acknowledgement signal at digital input 2
- Acknowledgement signal in bit 7 of control word 1 (r0054) for Control Units with fieldbus interface

Faults that are triggered by internal converter hardware and firmware monitoring functions can only be acknowledged by switching off and on again. You will find a note about this restricted option to acknowledge faults in the fault list of the List Manual.

Q-Pulse Id

#### Emptying the fault buffer: Fault history

The fault history can contain up to 56 faults.

The fault acknowledgement has no effect as long as none of the fault causes of the fault buffer have been removed. If at least one of the faults in the fault buffer has been removed (the cause of the fault has been removed) and you acknowledge the faults, then the following happens:

- 1. The inverter accepts all faults from the fault buffer in the first eight memory locations of the fault history (indices 8 ... 15).
- 2. The inverter deletes the faults that have been removed from the fault buffer.
- 3. The inverter writes the time of acknowledgement of the faults that have been removed into parameters r2136 and r2109 (fault time removed).

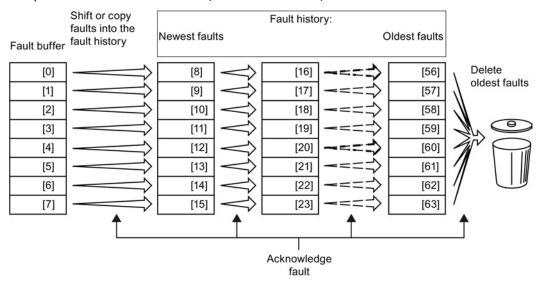


Figure 11-8 Fault history after acknowledging the faults

After acknowledgement, the faults that have not been removed are located in the fault buffer as well as in the fault history.

If less than eight faults were shifted or copied into the fault history, the memory locations with the higher indices remain empty.

The inverters shifts the values previously saved in the fault history each by eight indices. Faults, which were saved in indices 56 ... 63 before the acknowledgement, are deleted.

#### Deleting the fault history

If you wish to delete all faults from the fault history, set parameter p0952 to zero.

## Parameters of the fault buffer and the fault history

Table 11-9 Important parameters for faults

Parameter	Description	
r0945	Fault code	
	Displays the numbers of faults that have occurred	
r0949	Fault value	
	Displays additional information about the fault	
p0952	Fault cases, counter	
	Number of fault cases that have occurred since the last acknowledgement The fault buffer is deleted with p0952 = 0.	
r2131	Actual fault code	
	Displays the code of the oldest fault that is still active	
r2133	Fault value for float values	
	Displays additional information about the fault that occurred for float values	

# The motor cannot be switched-on

If the motor cannot be switched-on, then check the following:

- Is a fault present?

  If yes, then remove the fault cause and acknowledge the fault
- Is p0010 = 0?
  If not, the converter is e.g. still in a commissioning state.
- Is the inverter reporting the "ready to start" status (r0052.0 = 1)?
- Is the inverter missing enabling (r0046)?
- Are the interfaces of the converter (p0015) correctly parameterized?
   In other words, how is the converter receiving its setpoint and its commands?

# **Extended settings for faults**

Table 11- 10 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
You can chan	ge the fault response of the motor for up to 20 different fault codes:
p2100	Setting the fault number for fault response
	Selecting the faults for which the fault response should be changed
p2101	Setting, fault response
	Setting the fault response for the selected fault
You can chan	ge the acknowledgement type for up to 20 different fault codes:
p2126	Setting the fault number for the acknowledgement mode
	Selecting the faults for which the acknowledgement type should be changed
p2127	Setting, acknowledgement mode
	Setting the acknowledgement type for the selected fault
	1: Can only be acknowledged using POWER ON
	2: IMMEDIATE acknowledgment after removing the fault cause
You can chan	ge up to 20 different faults into an alarm or suppress faults:
p2118 Setting the message number for the message type	
•	Selecting the message for which the message type should be selected
p2119	Setting the message type
	Setting the message type for the selected fault
	1: Fault
	2: Alarm
	3: No message

You will find details in function diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

## 11.4 List of alarms and faults

# 11.4 List of alarms and faults

Axxxxx Alarm Fyyyyy: Fault

Table 11- 11 The most important alarms and faults of the safety functions

Number	Cause	Remedy	
F01600	STOP A Triggered	STO Select and then deselect again.	
F01650	Acceptance test required	Carry out accep	otance test and create test certificate.
		Switch the Con	trol Unit off and then on again.
F01659	Write task for parameter rejected	Cause: The converter should be reset to the factory setting. The resetting of the safety functions is, however, not allowed, because the safety functions are currently enabled.	
		Remedy with o	perator panel:
		p0010 = 30	Parameter reset
		p9761 =	Enter password for the safety functions.
		p0970 = 5	Reset Start Safety Parameter.
			The converter sets p0970 = 5 if it has reset the parameters.
		Then reset the converter to the factory setting again.	
A01666	Static 1 signal atF-DI for safe acknowledgment	F-DI to a logical 0 signal.	
A01698	Commissioning mode active for safety functions	This message is withdrawn after the Safety commissioning has ended.	
A01699	Shutdown path test required	After the next time that the "STO" function is deselected, the message is withdrawn and the monitoring time is reset.	
F30600	STOP A Triggered	STO Select and then deselect again.	

Table 11-12 Faults, which can only be acknowledged by switching the converter off and on again (power on reset)

Number	Cause	Remedy
F01000	Software fault in CU	Replace CU.
F01001	Floating Point Exception	Switch CU off and on again.
F01015	Software fault in CU	Upgrade firmware or contact technical support.
F01018	Power-up aborted more than once	After this fault is output, the converter powers up with the factory settings.
		Remedy: Back up factory setting with p0971=1. Switch CU off and on again. Recommission the converter.
F01040	Parameters must be saved	Save parameters (p0971). Switch CU off and on again.
F01044	Loading of memory data card defective	Replace memory card or CU.
F01105	CU: Insufficient memory	Reduce number of data records.
F01205	CU: Time slice overflow	Contact technical support.
F01250	CU hardware fault	Replace CU.
F01512	An attempt has been made to establish an conversion factor for scaling which is not present	Create scaling or check transfer value.
F01662	CU hardware fault	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30022	Power Module: Monitoring U <sub>CE</sub>	Check or replace the Power Module.
F30052	Incorrect Power Module data	Replace Power Module or upgrade CU firmware.
F30053	Error in FPGA data	Replace the Power Module.
F30662	CU hardware fault	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30664	CU power up aborted	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30850	Software fault in Power Module	Replace Power Module or contact technical support.

# 11.4 List of alarms and faults

Table 11- 13 The most important alarms and faults

Number	Cause	Remedy
F01018	Power-up aborted more than once	<ol> <li>Switch off the converter power supply and switch it on again.</li> <li>After this fault, the converter powers up with the factory settings.</li> <li>Recommission the converter.</li> </ol>
A01028	Configuration error	Explanation: Parameterization on the memory card has been created with a different type of module (order number, MLFB)  Check the module parameters and recommission if necessary.
F01033	Unit switchover: Reference parameter value invalid	Set the value of the reference parameter to a value other than 0.0 (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01034	Unit switchover: Calculation of the parameter values after reference value change unsuccessful	Select the value of the reference parameter so that the parameters involved can be calculated in the per unit notation (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01122	Frequency at the probe input too high	Reduce the frequency of the pulses at the probe input.
A01590	Motor maintenance interval lapsed	Carry out the maintenance.
A01900	PROFIBUS: Configuration telegram faulty	Explanation: A PROFIBUS master is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram.
		Check the bus configuration on the master and slave side.
A01910 F01910	Fieldbus SS setpoint timeout	The alarm is generated when p2040 ≠ 0 ms and one of the following causes is present:
		The bus connection is interrupted
		The MODBUS master is switched off
		Communications error (CRC, parity bit, logical error)
		An excessively low value for the fieldbus monitoring time (p2040)
A01920	PROFIBUS: Cyclic connection	Explanation: The cyclic connection to PROFIBUS master is interrupted.
	interrupt	Establish the PROFIBUS connection and activate the PROFIBUS master with cyclic operation.
F03505	Analog input, wire break	Check the connection to the signal source for interrupts. Check the level of the signal supplied. The input current measured by the analog input can be read out in r0752.
A03520	Temperature sensor fault	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.
A05000 A05001 A05002 A05004 A05006	Power Module overtemperature	Check the following: - Is the ambient temperature within the defined limit values? - Are the load conditions and duty cycle configured accordingly? - Has the cooling failed?
F06310	Supply voltage (p0210) incorrectly parameterized	Check the parameterized supply voltage and if required change (p0210).  Check the line voltage.
F07011	Motor overtemperature	Reduce the motor load.
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	Check ambient temperature.
		Check sensor's wiring and connection.

Number	Cause	Remedy
A07012	I2t Motor Module	Check and if necessary reduce the motor load.
	overtemperature	Check the motor's ambient temperature.
		Check thermal time constant p0611.
		Check overtemperature fault threshold p0605.
A07015	Motor temperature sensor alarm	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.
		Check the parameter assignment (p0601).
F07016	Motor temperature sensor fault	Make sure that the sensor is connected correctly.
		Check the parameterization (p0601).
F07086 F07088	Unit switchover: Parameter limit violation	Check the adapted parameter values and if required correct.
F07320	Automatic restart aborted	Increase the number of restart attempts (p1211). The current number of start attempts is shown in r1214.
		Increase the wait time in p1212 and/or monitoring time in p1213.
		Create ON command (p0840).
		Increase the monitoring time of the power unit or switch off (p0857).
		Reduce the wait time for resetting the fault counter p1213[1] so that fewer faults are registered in the time interval.
A07321	Automatic restart active	Explanation: The automatic restart (AR) is active. During voltage recovery and/or when remedying the causes of pending faults, the drive is automatically switched back on.
F07330	Search current measured too low	Increase search current (P1202), check motor connection.
A07400	V <sub>DC_max</sub> controller active	If the controller is not to intervene:
		Increase the ramp-down times.
		Deactivate the V <sub>DC_max</sub> controller (p1240 = 0 for vector control, p1280 = 0 for V/f control).
A07409	V/f control current limiting controller active	The alarm automatically disappears after one of the following measures:
		Increase the current limit (p0640).
		Reduce load.
		<ul> <li>Increase the ramp-up time to the speed setpoint.</li> </ul>
F0742/	To also also as a set roll or set roll	
F07426	Technology controller actual value limited	Adapt the limits to the signal level (p2267, p2268).
	value iii iii eu	Check the actual value scaling (p2264).
F07801	Motor overcurrent	Check current limits (p0640).
		U/f control: Check the current limiting controller (p1340 p1346).
		Increase acceleration ramp (p1120) or reduce load.
		Check motor and motor cables for short circuit and ground fault.
		Check motor for star-delta connection and rating plate parameterization.
		Check power unit / motor combination.
		Select flying restart function (p1200) if switched to rotating motor.
A07805	Drive: Power unit overload I2t	Reduce the continuous load.
		Adapt the load cycle.
		Check the assignment of rated currents of the motor and power unit.

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 11.4 List of alarms and faults

Number	Cause	Remedy
F07807	Short circuit detected	Check the converter connection on the motor side for any phase-phase short-circuit.
		Rule out that line and motor cables have been interchanged.
A07850	External alarm 1	The signal for "external alarm 1" has been triggered.
		Parameter p2112 defines the signal source of the external alarm.
		Remedy: Rectify the cause of this alarm.
F07860	External fault 1	Remove the external causes for this fault.
F07900	Motor blocked	Make sure that the motor can rotate freely.
		• Check the torque limit: r1538 for a positive direction of rotation; r1539 for a negative direction of rotation.
F07901	Motor overspeed	Activate precontrol of the speed limiting controller (p1401 bit 7 = 1).
F07902	Motor stalled	Check whether the motor data has been parameterized correctly and perform motor identification.
		Check the current limits (p0640, r0067, r0289). If the current limits are too low, the drive cannot be magnetized.
		Check whether motor cables are disconnected during operation.
A07903	Motor speed deviation	Increase p2163 and/or p2166.
		Increase the torque, current and power limits.
A07910	Motor overtemperature	Check the motor load.
		Check the motor's ambient temperature.
		Check the KTY84 sensor.
A07920	Torque/speed too low	The torque deviates from the torque/speed envelope curve.
A07921	Torque/speed too high	Check the connection between the motor and the load.
A07922	Torque/speed out of tolerance	Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
F07923	Torque/speed too low	Check the connection between the motor and the load.
F07924	Torque/speed too high	Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
A07927	DC braking active	Not required
A07980	Rotary measurement activated	Not required
A07981	No enabling for rotary	Acknowledge pending faults.
	measurement	Establish missing enables (see r00002, r0046).
A07991	Motor data identification activated	Switch on the motor and identify the motor data.
F08501	Setpoint timeout	Check the PROFINET connection.
		Set the controller to RUN mode.
		If the error occurs repeatedly, check the monitoring time set (p2044).
F08502	Monitoring time, sign-of-life expired	Check the PROFINET connection.
F08510	Send configuration data not valid	Check the PROFINET configuration
A08511	Receive configuration data not valid	

Number	Cause	Remedy
A08526	No cyclic connection	Activate the controller with cyclic operation.
		<ul> <li>Check the parameters "Name of Station" and "IP of Station" (r61000, r61001).</li> </ul>
A08565	Consistency error affecting	Check the following:
	adjustable parameters	IP address, subnet mask or default gateway is not correct.
		IP address or station name used twice in the network.
		Station name contains invalid characters.
F08700	Communications error	A CAN communications error has occurred. Check the following:
		Bus cable
		Baud rate (p8622)
		Bit timing (p8623)
		Master
		Start the CAN controller manually with p8608 = 1 after the cause of the fault has been resolved!
F13100	Know-how protection: Copy protection error	The know-how protection and the copy protection for the memory card are active. An error occurred during checking of the memory card.
		<ul> <li>Insert a suitable memory card and switch the converter supply voltage temporarily off and then on again (POWER ON).</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Deactivate the copy protection (p7765).</li> </ul>
F13101	Know-how protection: Copy protection cannot be activated	Insert a valid memory card.
F30001	Overcurrent	Check the following:
		Motor data, if required, carry out commissioning
		Motor's connection method (Y / Δ)
		U/f operation: Assignment of rated currents of motor and Power Module
		Line quality
		Make sure that the line commutating reactor is connected properly
		Power cable connections
		Power cables for short-circuit or ground fault
		Power cable length
		Line phases
		If this doesn't help:
		U/f operation: Increase the acceleration ramp
		Reduce the load
		Replace the power unit
F30002	DC-link voltage overvoltage	Increase the ramp-down time (p1121).
		Set the rounding times (p1130, p1136).
		Activate the DC link voltage controller (p1240, p1280).
		Check the line voltage (p0210).
F30003	DC link voltage underveltage	Check the line phases.  Check the line voltage (p0210).
r 30003	DC-link voltage undervoltage	Check the line voltage (poz ro).

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## 11.4 List of alarms and faults

Number	Cause	Remedy	
F30004	Converter overtemperature	Check whether the converter fan is running.	
		Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range.	
		Check whether the motor is overloaded.	
		Reduce the pulse frequency.	
F30005	I2t converter overload	Check the rated currents of the motor and Power Module.	
		Reduce current limit p0640.	
		When operating with U/f characteristic: Reduce p1341.	
F30011	Line phase failure	Check the converter's input fuses.	
		Check the motor cables.	
F30015	Motor cable phase failure	Check the motor cables.	
		Increase the ramp-up or ramp-down time (p1120).	
F30021	Ground fault	Check the power cable connections.	
		Check the motor.	
		Check the current transformer.	
		Check the cables and contacts of the brake connection (a wire might be	
		broken).	
F30027	Time monitoring for DC link pre-	Check the line voltage.	
	charging	Check the line voltage setting (p0210).	
F30035	Overtemperature, intake air	Check whether the fan is running.	
F30036	Overtemperature, inside area	Check the fan filter elements.	
		Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range.	
F30037	Rectifier overtemperature	See F30035 and, in addition:	
		Check the motor load.	
		Check the line phases	
A30049	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.	
F30059	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.	
F30074	Communications fault between Control Unit and Power Module	The 24V voltage supply of the converter (terminals 31 and 32) was interrupted briefly.	
		Please check the voltage supply and the wiring.	
A30502	DC link overvoltage	Check the device supply voltage (p0210).	
		Check the line reactor dimensioning	
A30920	Temperature sensor fault	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.	
A50001	PROFINET configuration error	A PROFINET controller is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram. Check to see whether "Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2).	
A50010	PROFINET name of station invalid	Correct name of station (p8920) and activate (p8925 = 2).	
A50020	PROFINET: Second controller missing	"Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2). However, only the connection to a PROFINET controller is present.	

For further information, please refer to the List Manual.

Technical data 12

# 12.1 Technical data of inputs and outputs

Feature	Data
Operating voltage	<ul> <li>Supply from the Power Module</li> <li>or an external 24 V DC class 2 supply (20.4 V 28.8 V) via control terminals 31 and 32, a maximum of 200 VA.</li> <li>Use a DVC A power supply with grounded earth (DVC A = decisive voltage class A according to EN 61800-5-1:2007).</li> </ul>
Output voltages	24 V (max. 100 mA) 10 V ± 0.5 V (max. 10 mA)
Setpoint resolution	0.01 Hz
Digital inputs	<ul> <li>6 digital inputs, DI 0 DI 5, isolated;</li> <li>Low &lt; 5 V, high &gt; 11 V, maximum input voltage 30 V, current consumption 5.5 mA</li> <li>Response time: 5.5 ms ± 1 ms</li> </ul>
Analog input (differential input, resolution 12 bits)	Al0: configurable as additional digital inputs 0 V 10 V, 0 mA 20 mA and -10 V +10 V, Low < 1.6 V, High > 4.0 V Response time: 10 ms ± 2 ms
Digital outputs / relay outputs	<ul> <li>DO 0: relay output, 30 V DC / max. 0.5 A with resistive load</li> <li>DO 1: transistor output, 30 V DC / max. 0.5 A with resistive load, protection against incorrect voltage polarity</li> <li>Update time of all DO: 2 ms</li> </ul>
Analog output	AO 0: 0 V 10 V or 0 mA 20 mA, reference potential: "GND", resolution 16 bit, update time: 4 ms
Temperature sensor	<ul> <li>PTC: Short-circuit monitoring 22 Ω, switching threshold 1650 Ω</li> <li>KTY84</li> <li>ThermoClick sensor with dry contact</li> </ul>
Fail-safe Input	<ul> <li>If you release the fail-safe function STO, then DI 4 and DI 5 form the fail-safe digital input</li> <li>Maximum input voltage 30 V, 5.5 mA</li> <li>Response time:         <ul> <li>Typical: 5 ms + debounce time p9651</li> <li>Typical, if debounce time = 0: 6 ms</li> <li>Worst-case scenario: 15 ms + debounce time</li> <li>Worst case, if debounce time = 0: 16 ms</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
PFH	5 × 10E-8
USB-interface	Mini-B

# 12.2 High Overload and Low Overload

#### Permissible inverter overload

The inverter has two different power data: "Low Overload" (LO) and "High Overload" (HO), depending on the expected load.

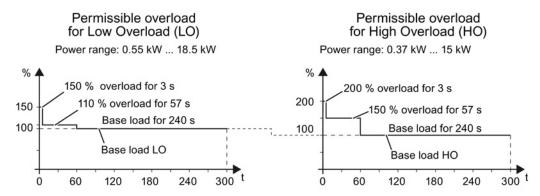


Figure 12-1 Duty cycles, "High Overload" and "Low Overload"

#### Note

The base load (100% power or current) of "Low Overload" is greater than the base load of "High Overload".

We recommend the "SIZER" engineering software to select the inverter based on duty cycles. See Configuring support (Page 396).

#### **Definitions**

•	LO input current	100 % of the permissible input current for a load cycle according to Low Overload (LO base load input current).
•	LO output current	100 % of the permissible output current for a load cycle according to Low Overload (LO base load output current).
•	LO power	Power of the inverter for LO output current.
•	HO input current	100 % of the permissible input current for a load cycle according to High Overload (HO base load input current).
•	HO output current	100 % of the permissible output current for a load cycle according to High Overload (HO base load output current).
•	HO power	Power of the inverter for HO output current.

If the power data comprise rated values without any further specifications they always refer to an overload capability corresponding to Low Overload.

# 12.3 Common technical power data

Feature	Specification						
Line voltage	3-ph. 380 V AC 480		ual permissible line voltage depends astallation altitude				
Output voltage	3-ph. 0 V line voltag	3-ph. 0 V line voltage × 0.95 (max,)					
Input frequency	47 Hz 63 Hz	47 Hz 63 Hz					
Minimum line impedance U <sub>K</sub>	1 %						
Power factor λ	0.70						
Pulse frequency	4 kHz						
	The pulse frequency ca the permissible output		s. A higher pulse frequency reduces				
Maximum motor cable length	Shielded: 50 m Unshielded: 100 m	Without choke or output op	tions at 4 kHz switching frequency				
	25 m (shielded)	To fulfil EMC Category C2 switching frequency	conducted emissions at 4 kHz				
Possible braking methods	DC braking, compound braking, dynamic braking with integrated braking chopper						
Degree of protection	IP20, cubicle mounting						
Operating temperature	-10 °C +40 °C	Without power derating.					
	-10 °C +55 °C	Converter with PROFINET interface.	The output power must be reduced, see also section:				
	-10 °C +60 °C	Converter with USS, MB, CANopen or PROFIBUS interface.	Temperature and voltage derating (Page 349)				
Storage temperature	-40 °C +70 °C (-40 °	F 158 °F)					
Relative humidity	< 95 % RH - condensa	tion not permissible					
Installation altitude	Up to 1000 m above sea level	At higher installation altitud reduced	es, the output power must be				
Shock and vibration	<ul><li>Long-term storage</li><li>1: 1997</li></ul>	in the transport packaging acc	cording to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-				
	• Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2 : 1997						
	Vibration during operation	eration according to Class 3M	12 to EN 60721-3-3 : 1995				
Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR)	65 kA						

#### 12.4 Power-dependent technical data

# 12.4 Power-dependent technical data

#### Note

The specified input currents apply for a 400 V line where  $V_k = 1$  % referred to the converter power. When using a line reactor, the currents are reduced by a few percent.

Table 12- 1 G120C Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V ... 480 V,  $\pm$  10 % - part 1 6SL3210-...

Order No.	Uniltered, IP20 Filtered, IP20	1KE11-8U*1 1KE11-8A*1	1KE12-3U*1 1KE12-3A*1	1KE13-2U*1 1KE13-2A*1
Rated / Low C	Overlaod values			
Rated / LO po	wer	0.55 kW	0.75 kW	1.1 kW
Rated / LO inp	out current	2.3 A	2.9 A	4.1 A
Rated / LO Ou	utput current	1.7 A	2.2 A	3.1 A
High Overload	d values			
HO power		0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
HO input curre	ent	1.9 A	2.5 A	3.2 A
HO output current		1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
Power losses, filtered		0.041 kW	0.045 kW	0.054 kW
Power losses,		0.040 kW	0.044 kW	0.053 kW
Fuse accordin	ig to IEC	3NA3 801 (6 A)	3NA3 801 (6 A)	3NA3 801 (6 A)
Fuse accordin		10 A class J	10 A class J	10 A class J
Required cool	ing air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Cross section	of line and motor cable	1.0 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	1.0 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	1.0 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>
		18 14 AWG	18 14 AWG	18 14 AWG
Tightening tor	que for line and motor cable	0.5 Nm	0.5 Nm	0.5 Nm
	•	4.4 lbf in	4.4 lbf in	4.4 lbf in
Weight, unfilte	ered	1.7 kg	1.7 kg	1.7 kg
Weight, filtere	d	1.9 kg	1.9 kg	1.9 kg

Table 12- 2  $\,$  G120C Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V ... 480 V,  $\pm$  10 % - part 2 6SL3210-...

Order No.	Uniltered, IP20 Filtered, IP20	1KE14-3U*1 1KE14-3A*1	1KE15-8U*1 1KE15-8A*1	1KE17-5U*1 1KE17-5A*1
Rated / Low Ov	verlaod values			
Rated / LO pow	ver	1.5 kW	2.2 kW	3.0 kW
Rated / LO inpu	ut current	5.5 A	7.4 A	9.5 A
Rated / LO Out	put current	4.1 A	5.6 A	7.3 A
High Overload	values			
HÖ power		1.1 kW	1.5 kW	2.2 kW
HO input currer	nt	4.5 A	6.0 A	8.2 A
HO output curre	HO output current		4.1 A	5.6 A
Power losses, filtered		0.073 kW	0.091 kW	0.136 kW
Power losses, u	unfiltered	0.072 kW	0.089 kW	0.132 kW
Fuse according	to IEC	3NA3 803 (10 A)	3NA3 803 (10 A)	3NA3 805 (16 A)
Fuse according		10 A class J	10 A class J	15 A class J
Required coolir	ng air flow	5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Cross section of	of line and motor cable	1.0 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	1.5 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	1.5 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>
		18 14 AWG	16 14 AWG	16 14 AWG
Tightening torg	ue for line and motor cable	0.5 Nm	0.5 Nm	0.5 Nm
		4.4 lbf in	4.4 lbf in	4.4 lbf in
Weight, unfilter	ed	1.7 kg	1.7 kg	1.7 kg
Weight, filtered		1.9 kg	1.9 kg	1.9 kg

Table 12- 3  $\,$  G120C Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V ... 480 V,  $\pm$  10 % - part 3 6SL3210-...

Order No.	Uniltered, IP20 Filtered, IP20	1KE18-8U*1 1KE18-8A*1	
Rated / Low C	Overlaod values		
Rated / LO po	ower	4.0 kW	
Rated / LO in	out current	11.4 A	
Rated / LO Ou	utput current	8.8 A	
High Overload	d values		
HO power		3.0 kW	
HO input curre	ent	10.6 A	
HO output cur	rent	7.3 A	
Power losses	filtered	0.146 kW	
Power losses	unfiltered	0.141 kW	
Fuse according	ng to IEC	3NA3 805 (16 A)	
Fuse according	ng to UL	15 A class J	
Required cool	ing air flow	5 l/s	
Cross section	of line and motor cable	1.5 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup>	
		16 14 AWG	
Tightening tor	que for line and motor cable	0.5 Nm	
	·	4.4 lbf in	
Weight, unfilte	ered	1.7 kg	
Weight, filtere	d	1.9 kg	

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 12.4 Power-dependent technical data

Table 12- 4 G120C Frame Sizes B, 3 AC 380 V ... 480 V,  $\pm$  10 % - part 4 6SL3210-...

Order No. Uniltered Filtered, I		1KE21-3U*1 1KE21-3A*1	1KE21-7U*1 1KE21-7A*1	
Rated / Low Overland value	s			
Rated / LO power		5.5 kW	7.5 kW	
Rated / LO input current		16.5 A	21.5 A	
Rated / LO Output current		12.5 A	16.5 A	
High Overload values				_
HO power		4.0 kW	5.5 kW	
HO input current		12.8 A	18.2 A	
HO output current		8.8 A	12.5 A	
Power losses, filtered		0.177 kW	0.244 kW	_
Power losses, unfiltered		0.174 kW	0.24 kW	
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3 807 (20 A)	3NA3 810 (25 A)	_
Fuse according to UL		20 A class J	25 A class J	
Required cooling air flow		9 l/s	9 l/s	
Cross section of line and mo	otor cable	4.0 6.0 mm <sup>2</sup>	4.0 6.0 mm <sup>2</sup>	
		12 10 AWG	12 10 AWG	
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.6 Nm	0.6 Nm	
		5.3 lbf in	5.3 lbf in	
Weight, unfiltered		2.3 kg	2.3 kg	
Weight, filtered		2.5 kg	2.5 kg	

Table 12- 5 G120C Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V ... 480 V,  $\pm$  10 % - part 5 6SL3210-...

Order No.	Uniltered, IP20 Filtered, IP20	1KE22-6U*1 1KE22-6A*1	1KE23-2U*1 1KE23-2A*1	1KE23-8U*1 1KE23-8A*1
Rated / LO po Rated / LO inp Rated / LO Ou Rated / LO Ou	out current	11 kW 33.0 A 25 A	15 kW 40.6 A 31 A	18.5 kW 48.2 A 37 A
High Overload HO power HO input curre HO output cur	d values	7.5 kW 24.1 A 16.5 A	11 kW 36.4 A 25 A	15 kW 45.2 A 31 A
Power losses, Power losses,		0.349 kW 0.344 kW	0.435 kW 0.429 kW	0.503 kW 0.493 kW
Fuse accordin	S .	3NA3 817 (40 A) 40 A class J	3NA3 820 (50 A) 50 A class J	3NA3 822 (63 A) 60 A class J
Required cool	ing air flow	18 l/s	18 l/s	18 l/s
Cross section	of line and motor cable	6.0 16 mm² 10 5 AWG	10 16 mm² 7 5 AWG	10 16 mm² 7 5 AWG
Tightening tor	que for line and motor cable	1.5 Nm 13.3 lbf in	1.5 Nm 13.3 lbf in	1.5 Nm 13.3 lbf in
Weight, unfilte Weight, filtere		4.4 kg 4.7 kg	4.4 kg 4.7 kg	4.4 kg 4.7 kg

SINAMICS G120C converter

# 12.5 Electromagnetic compatibility of the converters

The electromagnetic compatibility refers to both the immunity and the emitted interference of a device.

The following disturbance variables must be taken into consideration when evaluating the electromagnetic compatibility:

- Conducted low-frequency disturbance variables (harmonics)
- Conducted high-frequency disturbance variables
- Field-based, low-frequency disturbance variables
- Field-based, high-frequency disturbance variables

The permitted limit values are defined in the EMC product standard EN 61800-3:2012, in the EMC categories C1 to C4.

Below you will find some key definitions relating to this.

#### Classification of EMC behavior

The EMC environment and the EMC categories are defined in the EMC product standard EN 61800-3:2012 as follows:

#### **Environments:**

#### First environment (public systems)

An environment that includes domestic premises and establishments that are connected directly to a public low-voltage line supply without the use of an intermediate transformer.

**Example:** Houses, apartments, commercial premises, or offices in residential buildings.

#### Second environment (industrial systems)

An environment that includes all other establishments which are not connected directly to a public low-voltage line supply.

**Example:** Industrial areas and technical areas of buildings that are supplied by an assigned transformer.

12.5 Electromagnetic compatibility of the converters

### Categories

#### Category C4

Drive systems with a rated voltage  $\geq$  1,000 V, with a rated current  $\geq$  400 A, or for use in complex systems in the second environment

Drive systems which correspond to category C4 may only be installed in the second environment.

#### Category C3

Drive systems with a rated voltage < 1,000 V, which are intended for use in the second environment and not for use in the first environment.

Drive systems which correspond to category C3 may only be installed in the second environment.

### Category C2

Drive systems with a rated voltage < 1,000 V, which are neither plug-in devices nor moveable devices and which, when used in the first environment, are only intended to be installed and commissioned by an expert.

Drive systems which correspond to category C2 may only be used in the first environment if they are installed by an expert, with limit values for electromagnetic compatibility (Page 347) observed.

#### Category C1

Drive systems with a rated voltage below 1,000 V, which are intended for use in the first environment.

Drive systems which correspond to category C1 can be installed in the first environment without restrictions.

#### Note

#### **Expert**

An expert is a person or organization with the necessary experience for installing and/or commissioning drive systems (Power Drive Systems - PDS), including the associated EMC aspects.

Active 17/06/2014

Page 346 of 404

# 12.5.1 Assigning converters to EMC categories

The converters have been tested in accordance with the EMC product standard EN 61800-3:2004. You can find precise information in the Declaration of Conformity on the Internet at: Declaration of Conformity

## Requirements for electromagnetic compatibility

To comply with the requirements of EN 61800-3:2004, all drives must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and EMC directives. See also: EMC-compliant installation (Page 49).

The converter must be permanently installed on the basis of the leakage currents (> 3.5 mA).

In particular, installation must be carried out by an expert who has the necessary experience for installing and/or commissioning power drives, included the associated EMC aspects.

#### See also

Declaration of Conformity (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/58275445)

### Second environment - category C4

The unfiltered converters correspond to category C4.

EMC measures in the second environment, category C4, are carried out on the basis of an EMC plan on the system level. See also EMC-compliant installation (Page 49).

## Second environment - category C3

#### **Immunity**

With respect to their immunity, the converters are suitable for the second environment.

#### **Emitted interference**

Using a converter with an integrated line filter ensures compliance with the limit values for category C3.

If you are using unfiltered converters in an industrial plant, you must either use an external filter for the converter or install corresponding filters on the system level (conducted high-frequency disturbance variables).

When installed professionally in accordance with EMC guidelines, the converters fulfill the requirements of the standard in relation to category C3 (field-based high-frequency disturbance variables).

Active 17/06/2014

12.5 Electromagnetic compatibility of the converters

### Second environment - category C2

#### **Immunity**

With respect to their immunity, the converters are suitable for the second environment.

#### **Emitted interference**

In order for the converters to comply with the limit values for category C2 relating to emitted interference, the following conditions must be fulfilled:

- You are using a converter with an integrated filter, frame size FSA or FSB
- The motor connection cable is shorter than 25 m
- The pulse frequency does not exceed 4 kHz
- The current does not exceed the value of the LO input current (high-frequency conducted interference), see Power-dependent technical data (Page 342)
- You are using a shielded motor connection cable with low capacitance (high-frequency, radiated faults)
- If you are using a converter with frame size FSB with a PROFINET interface (order no. 6SL32101KE21-\*AF\*), you must also use a line reactor.

#### First environment - category C2

To enable you to use the converter in the first environment, during installation you must observe the limit values for the **conducted low-frequency disturbance variables (harmonics)** in addition to the limit values for the "second environment - category C2".

A table showing the typical harmonics of the power module can be found in the section entitled Harmonics (Page 348).

Contact your system operator to obtain approval for an installation in the first environment.

#### First environment - category C1

The converters do not correspond to category C1.

#### 12.5.2 Harmonics

Table 12-6 Typical harmonics in % relative to the LO input current for U<sub>K</sub> 1%

Active 17/06/2014

Harmonic number	5th	7th	11th	13th	17th	19th	23rd	25th
Harmonic [%]	54	39	11	5	5	3	2	2

Page 348 of 404

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

#### 12.5.3 EMC limit values in South Korea

이 기기는 업무용 $(A \ \ \Box)$  전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.

For sellers or users, please keep in mind that this device is an A-grade electromagnetic wave device. This device is intended to be used in areas other than home.

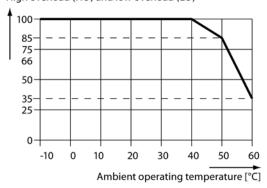
The EMC limit values to be complied with for South Korea correspond to the limit values of the EMC product standard for variable-speed electric drives EN 61800-3, Category C2 or limit value class A, Group 1 according to EN55011. By applying suitable supplementary measures, the limit values according to Category C2 or according to limit value class A, Group 1 are maintained. Further, additional measures may be required, for instance, using an additional radio interference suppression filter (EMC filter). The measures for EMC-compliant design of the system are described in detail in this manual respectively in the Installation Guideline EMC.

Please note that the final statement on compliance with the standard is given by the respective label attached to the individual unit.

# 12.6 Temperature and voltage derating

## Operating temperature derating

Permissible output base load current [%] High overload (HO) and low overload (LO)



Active 17/06/2014

Figure 12-2 Temperature derating

Page 349 of 404

12.7 Derating as a function of the installation altitude

### Operational voltage derating

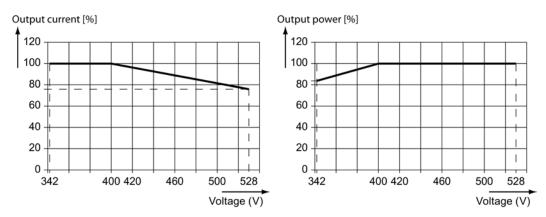


Figure 12-3 Current and Power derating required according to input voltage

# 12.7 Derating as a function of the installation altitude

### Voltage

The clearance within the converter can isolate surge voltages in accordance with overvoltage category III in compliance with the EN 60664-1 regulation up to 2000 m above sea level.

At altitudes above 2000 m and below 4000 m above sea level, the converter has to be connected that at least one of the following conditions is fulfilled:

 It is connected to a TN-network with isolated star-point (not an external grounded connector)

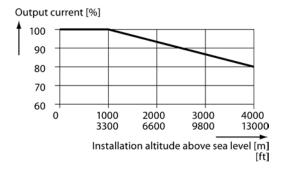
or

 it is connected through an isolating transformer that provides a TN-network with a grounded star-point.

A reduction of the line voltage is not necessary.

Note: The connected engines and power components must be considered separately.

#### Current



SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

# 12.8 Current reduction depending on pulse frequency

# Relationship between pulse frequency and output base-load current reduction

Table 12-7 Current reduction depending on pulse frequency <sup>1</sup>

Rated power	Rated outp	Rated output current at pulse frequency of								
based on LO	4 kHz	6 kHz	8 kHz	10 kHz	12 kHz	14 kHz	16 kHz			
0.55 kW	1.7 A	1.4 A	1.2 A	1.0 A	0.9 A	0.8 A	0.7 A			
0.75 kW	2.2 A	1.9 A	1.5 A	1.3 A	1.1 A	1.0 A	0.9 A			
1.1 kW	3.1 A	2.6 A	2.2 A	1.9 A	1.6 A	1.4 A	1.2 A			
1.5 kW	4.1 A	3.5 A	2.9 A	2.5 A	2.1 A	1.8 A	1.6 A			
2.2 kW	5.6 A	4.8 A	3.9 A	3.4 A	2.8 A	2.5 A	2.2 A			
3.0 kW	7.3 A	6.2 A	5.1 A	4.4 A	3.7 A	3.3 A	2.9 A			
4.0 kW	8.8 A	7.5 A	6.2 A	5.3 A	4.4 A	4.0 A	3.5 A			
5.5 kW	12.5 A	10.6 A	8.8 A	7.5 A	6.3 A	5.6 A	5.0 A			
7.5 kW	16.5 A	14.0 A	11.6 A	9.9 A	8.3 A	7.4 A	6.6 A			
11.0 kW	25.0 A	21.3 A	17.5 A	15.0 A	12.5 A	11.3 A	10.0 A			
15.0 kW	31.0 A	26.4 A	21.7 A	18.6 A	15.5 A	14.0 A	12.4 A			
18.5 kW	37.0 A	31.5 A	25.9 A	22.2 A	18.5 A	16.7 A	14.8 A			

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The permissible motor cable length depends on the cable type and the chosen pulse frequency.

# 12.9 Accessories

## 12.9.1 Line reactor

The major electrical specification of the line reactors is the same as for the suitable converter. This applies to:

- line voltage
- line frequency
- rated current

The admissible ambient conditions of the line reactors are the same as for the suitable converter. This applies to:

- storage and transport temperature
- operating temperature
- relative humidity
- shock and vibration load

Table 12-8 Technical specifications of the line reactors

Feature	Suitable for converter with rated power of						
	0.55 kW 1.1 kW 1.5 kW 4.0 kW		5.5 kW 7.5 kW				
	F:	SA	FSB				
Order no.	6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0	6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0	6SL3203-0CE21-8AA0				
MLFB of the suitable converter	6SL3210-1KE11-8   6SL3210-1KE12-3   1 6SL3210-1KE13-2   1 1	6SL3210-1KE14-3     1 6SL3210-1KE15-8     1 6SL3210-1KE17-5     1 6SL3210-1KE18-8     1	6SL3210-1KE21-3 □ □ 1 6SL3210-1KE21-7 □ □ 1				
Inductance	2.5 mH	2.5 mH	0.5 mH				
Power loss at 50/60 Hz	60 Hz 25 W 40 W		55 W				
Cable cross section	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> /14 AWG	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	6.0 mm <sup>2</sup> / 10 AWG				
Tightening torque	0.6 Nm 0.8 Nm 5 lbf in 7 lbf in	0.6 Nm 0.8 Nm 5 lbf in 7 lbf in	1.5 Nm 1.8 Nm 13 lbf in 16 lbf in				
PE connection	M4 (3 Nm / 26.5 lbf in)	M4 (3 Nm / 26.5 lbf in)	M5 (5 Nm / 44 lbf in)				
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20				
Overall dimensions Width Height Depth	125 mm 120 mm 71 mm	125 mm 140 mm 71 mm	125 mm 145 mm 91 mm				
Fixing dimensions Width Height	100 mm 55 mm	100 mm 55 mm	100 mm 65 mm				
Fixing screw	4 × M5 (6 Nm)	4 × M5 (6 Nm)	4 × M5 (6 Nm)				
Weight	1.1 kg	2.1 kg	2.95 kg				

Table 12-9 Technical specifications of the line reactors

Feature	Suit	able for converter with rated power of
	11.0 kW 18.5 kW	
	FSC	
Order no.	6SL3203-0CE23-8AA0	
MLFB of the suitable converter	6SL3210-1KE22-6   1 6SL3210-1KE23-2   1 6SL3210-1KE23-8   1	
Inductance	0.3 mH	
Power loss at 50/60 Hz	90 W	
Cross section	16 mm <sup>2</sup> / 5 AWG	
Tightening torque	2 Nm4 Nm 18 lbf in 35 lbf in	
PE connection	M5 (5 Nm / 44 lbf in)	
Degree of protection	IP20	
Overall dimensions Width Height Depth	190 mm 220 mm 91 mm	
Fixing dimensions Width Height	170 mm 68 mm	
Fixing screw	4 × M8 (10 Nm)	
Weight	7.8 kg	

#### 12.9 Accessories

# 12.9.2 Braking resistor

The admissible ambient conditions of the breaking resistors are the same as for the suitable converter. This applies to:

- storage and transport temperature
- operating temperature
- relative humidity
- shock and vibration load

Table 12- 10 Technical specifications of the breaking resistors

Feature	Suitable for converter with rated power of					
	0.55 kW 1.5 kW	2.2 kW 4.0 kW	5.5 kW 7.5 kW			
	FS	FSA				
Order no.	6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0	6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0	6SL3201-0BE21-8AA0			
MLFB of the suitable converter	6SL3210-1KE11-8	6SL3210-1KE15-8     1 6SL3210-1KE17-5     1 6SL3210-1KE18-8     1	6SL3210-1KE21-3 🗆 🗆 1 6SL3210-1KE21-7 🗖 🗆 1			
Resistance	370 Ω	140 Ω	75 Ω			
Pulse power P <sub>max</sub>	1.5 kW	4 kW	7.5 kW			
Rated power P <sub>DB</sub>	75 W	200 W	375 W			
Cable cross section	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG			
Tightening torque	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in			
Temperature contact	Normally closed contact	Normally closed contact	Normally closed contact			
Maximum load	AC 250 V / 2,5 A	AC 250 V / 2,5 A	AC 250 V / 2,5 A			
Cable cross section	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG			
Tightening torque	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in			
Degree of protection	IP20	IP20	IP20			
Overall dimensions Width Height Depth	105 mm 295 mm 100 mm	105 mm 345 mm 100 mm	175 mm 345 mm 100 mm			
Drill pattern Width Height	72 mm 266 mm	72 mm 316 mm	142 mm 316 mm			
Fixing screws	4 × M4 (3 Nm)	4 × M4 (3 Nm)	4 × M4 (3 Nm)			
Weight	1.5 kg	1.8 kg	2.7 kg			

Table 12-11 Technical specifications of the line reactors

Feature	Suit	able for converter with rated power of
	11.0 kW 18.5 kW	
	FSC	
MLFB	6SL3201-0BE23-8AA0	
MLFB of the suitable converter	6SL3210-1KE22-6     1 6SL3210-1KE23-2     1 6SL3210-1KE23-8     1	
Resistance	30 Ω	
Pulse power P <sub>max</sub>	18.5 kW	
Rated power PDB	925 W	
Cable cross section	6 mm <sup>2</sup> / 10 AWG	
Tightening torque	0.6 Nm / 5.5 lbf in	
Temperature contact	Normally closed contact	
Maximum load	AC 250 V / 2,5 A	
Cable cross section	2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> / 14 AWG	
Tightening torque	0.5 Nm / 4.5 lbf in	
Degree of protection	IP20	
Overall dimensions Width Height Depth	250 mm 490 mm 140 mm	
Drill pattern Width Height	217 mm 460 mm	
Fixing screws	4 × M5 (6 Nm)	
Weight	6.2 kg	

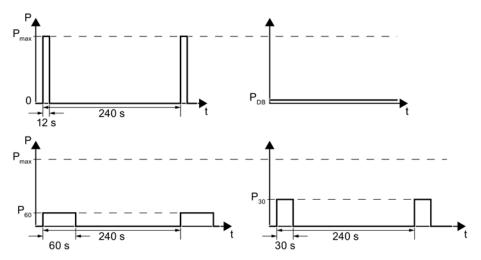


Figure 12-4 Pulse power, rated power and duty cycle examples of the braking resistor

# 12.10 Standards

	European Low Voltage Directive
CE	The SINAMICS G120C product range complies with the requirements of the Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC. The units are certified for complaince with the following standards:
	EN 61800-5-1 — Semiconductor converters –General requirements and line commutated converters
	EN 60204-1 — Safety of machinery –Electrical equipment of machines
	European Machinery Directive
	The SINAMICS G120C converter series does not fall under the scope of the Machinery Directive. However, the products have been fully evaluated for compliance with the essential Health & Safety requirements of the directive when used in a typical machine application. A Declaration of Incorporation is available on request.
	European EMC Directive
	When installed according to the recommendations described in this manual, the SINAMICS G120C fulfils all requirements of the EMC Directive as defined by the EMC Product Standard for Power Drive Systems EN 61800-3
	Underwriters Laboratories
C (NT)	This equipment is capable of providing internal motor overload protection according to UL508C.
LISTED	
SEMI F47	Specification for Semiconductor Process Equipment Voltage Sag Immunity
	SINAMICS G120C Converters fulfill the requirements of the SEMI F47-0706 standard.
	ISO 9001
	Siemens plc operates a quality management system, which complies with the requirements of ISO 9001.

Certificates can be downloaded from the internet under the following link:

Standards (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/134200)

# **Appendix**



# A.1 New and extended functions

# A.1.1 Firmware version 4.5

Table A- 1 New functions and function changes in Firmware 4.5

	Function		SINAMICS				
			G120			G120D	
		G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Support for the new power modules:	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-
	PM230 IP20 FSA FSF						
	PM230 in a push-through FSA FSC						
2	Support for the new power modules:	-	✓	✓	✓	-	-
	• PM240-2 IP20 FSA						
	PM240-2 in push-through FSA						
3	New Control Units with PROFINET support	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓
4	Support of the PROFlenergy profile		✓	-	✓	✓	✓
5	Shared device support via PROFINET		✓	-	✓	✓	✓
6	Write protection		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7	Know-how protection		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
8	Adding a second command data set (CDS0 → CDS0 CDS1)	✓	-	-	-	-	-
	(All other inverters have four command data sets)						
9	Position control and basic positioner	-	-	-	-	-	✓
10	0 Support of an HTL encoder		-	-	-	✓	✓
11	1 Support of an SSI encoder		-	✓			
12	2 Fail-safe digital output		-	-	-	✓	✓

# A.1.2 Firmware version 4.6

Table A- 2 New functions and function changes in Firmware 4.6

	Function		SINAMICS						
			G120 G120			20D			
		G120C	CU230P-2	CU240B-2	CU240E-2	CU250S-2 Vektor	CU250S-2 Servo	CU240D-2	CU250D-2
1	Support for the new Power Modules  • PM240-2 IP20 FSB FSC  • PM240-2 in through-hole technology FSB FSC	-	✓	✓	✓	1	✓	-	-
2	Support for the new Power Modules  • PM230 in through-hole technology FSD FSF	-	✓	✓	✓	1	-	-	-
3	Motor data preassignment for the 1LA/1LE motors via code number     During basic commissioning with the operator panel, set the motor data using a code number	1	✓	1	✓	1	✓	✓	✓
4	Extension to communication via CANopen     CAN velocity, ProfilTorque, SDO channel for each axis, system test with CodeSys, suppression of ErrorPassiv alarm	✓	1	-	-	1	✓	-	-
5	Extension to communication via BACnet     Multistate value objects for alarms, commandable AO objects, objects for configuring the PID controller	-	✓	-	-	-	-	-	-
6	Communication via Ethernet/IP	<b>√</b>	<b>√</b>	-	✓	<b>√</b>	✓	✓	✓
7	Skip frequency band for analog input  • A symmetrical skip frequency band can be set for each analog input around the 0 V range.	1	1	✓	✓	1	✓	✓	-
8	Changing the control of the motor holding brake	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
9	Safety function SBC (Safe Brake Control)  • Secure control of a motor holding brake when using the "Safe Brake Module" option	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-
10	Safety function SS1 (Safe Stop 1) without speed monitoring	-	-	-	-	✓	✓	-	-
11	Straightforward selection of standard motors  • Selection of 1LA and 1LE motors with an operator panel using a list containing code numbers	1	1	1	✓	✓	✓	✓	1
12	Firmware update via memory card	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
13	Safety info channel     BICO source r9734.014 for the status bits of the extended safety functions	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓	<b>✓</b>
14	Diagnostic alarms for PROFIBUS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Q-Pulse Id

# A.2 Parameter

Parameters are the interface between the firmware of the converter and the commissioning tool, e.g. an Operator Panel.

## Adjustable parameters

Adjustable parameters are the "adjusting screws" with which you adapt the converter to its particular application. If you change the value of an adjustable parameter, then the converter behavior also changes.

Adjustable parameters are shown with a "p" as prefix, e.g. p1082 is the parameter for the maximum motor speed.

## Display parameters

Display parameters allow internal measured quantities of the converter and the motor to be read.

The Operator Panel and STARTER represent display parameters with an "r" prefix, for example, r0027 is the parameter for the converter output current.

### Commonly used parameters

Table A- 3 Switching to commissioning mode or restore the factory setting

Parameter	Description
p0010	Commissioning parameters
	0: Ready (factory setting)
	1: Perform quick commissioning
	3: Perform motor commissioning
	5: Technological applications and units
	15: Define number of data records
	30: Factory setting - initiate restore factory settings

#### Table A- 4 How to determine the firmware version of the Control Unit

Parameter	Description
r0018	The firmware version is displayed:

Table A- 5 How you select the command source and setpoint sources

Parameter	Description
'	Parameter p0015 allows the setting of pre-defined I/O configurations. Further information is given in the section: Finding a suitable setting for the interfaces (Page 43).

#### A.2 Parameter

Table A- 6 This is how you parameterize the up and down ramps

Parameter	Description
p1080	Minimum speed 0.00 [rpm] factory setting
p1082	Maximum speed 1500.000 [rpm] factory setting
p1120	Rampup time 10.00 [s]
p1121	Rampdown time 10.00 [s]

## Table A- 7 This is how you set the closed-loop type

Parameter	Description
p1300	0: V/f control with linear characteristic 1: V/f control with linear characteristic and FCC 2: V/f control with parabolic characteristic 3: V/f control with parameterizable characteristic 4: V/f control with linear characteristic and ECO 5: V/f control for drives requiring a precise frequency (textile area) 6: V/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency and FCC 7: V/f control with parabolic characteristic and ECO
	19: V/f control with independent voltage setpoint
	20: Speed control (without encoder)

Table A-8 Optimizing starting behavior for V/f control for a high break loose torque and overload

Parameter	Description
p1310	Voltage boost to compensate ohmic losses  The voltage boost is active from standstill up to the rated speed.  It is at its highest at speed 0 and continually decreases as the speed increases.
	Value of voltage boost at zero speed in V: 1.732 × rated motor current (p0305) × stator resistance (r0395) × p1310 / 100%
p1311	Voltage boost when accelerating The voltage boost is effective from standstill up to the rated speed. It is independent of the speed and has a value in V of:  1.732 × rated motor current (p0305) × stator resistance (p0350) × p1311 / 100%
p1312	Voltage boost when starting Setting for an additional voltage boost when powering-up, however, only for the first acceleration phase.

## A.3 Using the operator panel BOP-2

## A.3.1 Navigating the menu:

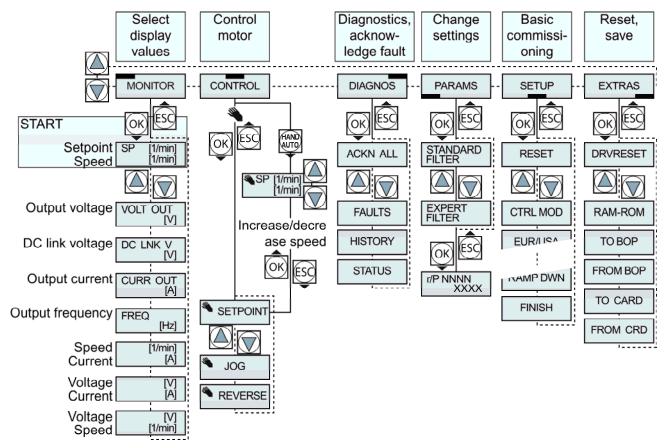


Figure A-1 Menu of the BOP-2

## A.3.2 Other keys and symbols of the BOP-2 operator panel

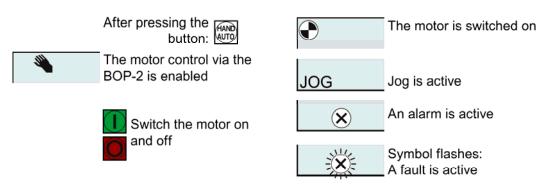


Figure A-2 Other keys and symbols of the BOP-2

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## A.3.3 Changing settings using BOP-2

## Changing settings using BOP-2

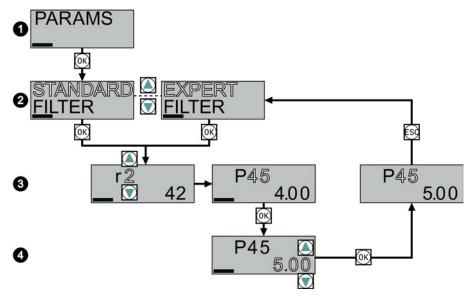
You can modify the settings of your converter by changing the values of the its parameters. The converter only permits changes to "write" parameters. Write parameters begin with a "P", e.g. P45.

The value of a read-only parameter cannot be changed. Read-only parameters begin with an "r", for example: r2.

#### **Procedure**



To change write parameters using the BOP-2, proceed as follows:



- Select the menu to display and change parameters. Press the OK key.
- 2. Select the parameter filter using the arrow keys. Press the OK key.
  - STANDARD: The inverter only displays the most important parameters.
  - EXPERT: The inverter displays all of the parameters.
- 3. Select the required number of a write parameter using the arrow keys. Press the OK key.
- 4. Select the value of the write parameter using the arrow keys. Accept the value with the OK key.

You have now changed a write parameter using the BOP-2.

The converter saves all the changes made using the BOP-2 so that they are protected against power failure.

SINAMICS G120C converter

362

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## A.3.4 Changing indexed parameters

## Changing indexed parameters

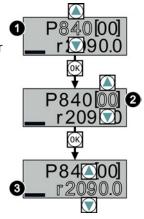
For indexed parameters, several parameter values are assigned to a parameter number. Each of the parameter values has its own index.

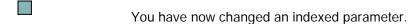
### **Procedure**



To change an indexed parameter, proceed as follows:

- 1. Select the parameter number.
- 2. Press the OK button and set the parameter index.
- 3. Press the OK button and set the parameter value for the selected index.





## A.3.5 Directly entering the parameter number and value

### Directly select the parameter number

The BOP-2 offers the possibility of setting the parameter number digit by digit.

#### Prerequisite

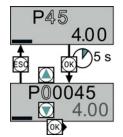
The parameter number is flashing in the BOP-2 display.



### **Procedure**

To select the parameter number directly, proceed as follows:

- 1. Press the OK button for longer than five seconds.
- Change the parameter number digit-by-digit. If you press the OK button then the BOP-2 jumps to the next digit.
- 3. If you have entered all of the digits of the parameter number, press the OK button.





SINAMICS G120C converter

A.3 Using the operator panel BOP-2

## Entering the parameter value directly

The BOP-2 offers the option of setting the parameter value digit by digit.

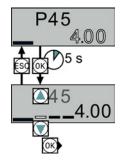
#### Prerequisite

The parameter value flashes in the BOP-2 display.

#### **Procedure**

To select the parameter value directly, proceed as follows:

- 1. Press the OK button for longer than five seconds.
- Change the parameter value digit-by-digit. If you press the OK button then the BOP-2 jumps to the next digit.
- 3. If you have entered all of the digits of the parameter value, press the OK button.

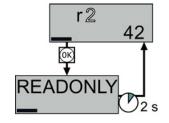


You have now entered the parameter value directly.

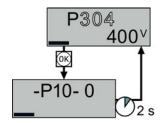
## A.3.6 A parameter cannot be changed

### When must you not change a parameter?

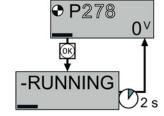
The converter indicates why it currently does not permit a parameter to be changed:



You have attempted to change a read-only parameter.



You must change to basic commissioning to set this parameter.



You must turn the motor off to set this parameter.

The operating state in which you can change a parameter is provided in the List Manual for each parameter.

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Q-Pulse Id

## A.4 Handling STARTER

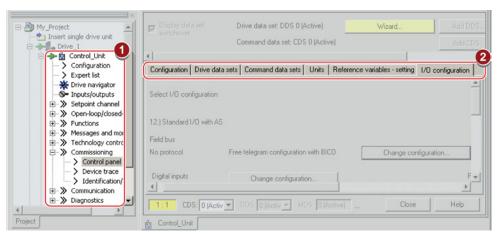
## A.4.1 Change settings

After the basic commissioning, you can adapt the inverter to your application as described in the Commissioning guidance (Page 57).

STARTER offers two options:

- Change the settings using the appropriate screen forms our recommendation.
  - ① Navigation bar: For each inverter function, select the corresponding screen form.
  - 2 tabs: Switch between screen forms.

If you change the settings using screen forms you do not need to know the parameter numbers.



You change the settings using the parameters in the expert list.
 If you wish to change the settings using the expert list, you need to know the corresponding parameter number and its significance.

### Saving settings so that they are not lost when the power fails

The inverter initially only saves changes temporarily. You must do the following so that the inverter saves your settings securely in the event of a power failure.



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to save your settings in the inverter so that they are not lost when the power fails:

- 1. Mark the appropriate drive in the project navigator.
- 2. Click the Save (RAM to ROM) button.
- You have saved your settings securely in the inverter in case of a power failure.

#### A.4 Handling STARTER

#### Go offline

You can now exit the online connection after the data backup (RAM to ROM) with Sistem "Disconnect from target system".

## A.4.2 Optimize the drive using the trace function

## Description

The trace function is used for inverter diagnostics and helps to optimize the behavior of the drive. Start the function in the navigation bar using "... Control\_Unit/Commissioning/Device trace".

In two settings that are independent of one another, using you can interconnect eight signals each. Each signal that you interconnect is active as standard

You can start a measurement as often as required; the results are temporarily stored (until you exit STARTER) under the "Measurements" tab, together with the date and time. When terminating STARTER or under the "Measurements" tab, you can save the measurement results in the \*.trc format.

If you require more than two settings for your measurements, you can either save the individual traces in the project or export them in the \*.clg format – and if necessary, load or import.

## Recording

Recording is performed in a CU-dependent basic clock cycle. The maximum recording duration depends on the number of recorded signals and the trace clock cycle.

You can extend the recording duration by increasing the trace clock cycle by multiplying with an integer factor and then accepting the displayed maximum duration with \_\_\_\_. Alternatively, you can also specify the measurement period and then calculate the trace clock cycle of STARTER using \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Recording individual bits for bit parameters

You can record individual bits of a parameter (e.g. r0722) by allocating the relevant bit using "bit track" ( ).

#### Mathematical function

Using the mathematical function ( ) you can define a curve, for example the difference between the speed setpoint and the actual speed value.

#### Note

If you use the "record individual bits" or "mathematical functions" option, then this is displayed under signal No. 9.

SINAMICS G120C converter

366

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

### **Trigger**

You can create your own start condition (trigger) for the trace. With the factory setting (default setting) the trace starts as soon as you press the button (Start Trace). Using the button you can define another trigger to start the measurement.

Using pretrigger, set the time for the recording before the trigger is set. As a consequence, the trigger condition traces itself.

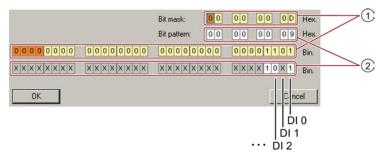
### Example of a bit pattern as trigger:

You must define the pattern and value of a bit parameter for the trigger. To do so, proceed as follows:

Using , select "Trigger to variable - bit pattern"

Using , select the bit parameter

Using bin..., open the screen form in which you set the bits and their values for the start condition



- ① Select the bits for the trace trigger, upper row hex format, lower row binary format
- Define the bits for the trace trigger, upper row hex format, lower row binary format

Figure A-3 Bit pattern

In the example, the trace starts if DIO and DI3 are high and DI2 is low. The state of the other digital inputs is not relevant for the start of the trace.

Further, you can either set an alarm or fault as start condition.

### A.4 Handling STARTER

## Display options

In this area, you can set how the measurement results are displayed.

- Measurement repetition
   This places the measurements that you wish to perform at different times above one other
- Arrange curves in tracks
   This means that you define as to whether all measured values are to be displayed with a common zero line or whether each measured value is displayed with its own zero line.
- Measuring cursor on This allows you to analyze the measuring intervals in detail

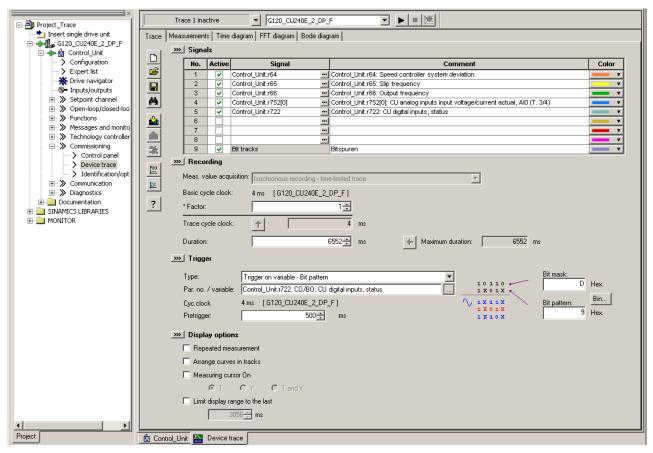


Figure A-4 Trace dialog box

## A.5 Interconnecting signals in the converter

The following functions are implemented in the converter:

- Open-loop and closed-loop control functions
- Communication functions
- Diagnosis and operating functions

Every function comprises one or several blocks that are interconnected with one another.

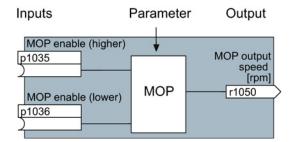


Figure A-5 Example of a block: Motorized potentiometer (MOP)

Most of the blocks can be adapted to specific applications using parameters.

You cannot change the signal interconnection within the block. However, the interconnection between blocks can be changed by interconnecting the inputs of a block with the appropriate outputs of another block.

The signal interconnection of the blocks is realized, contrary to electric circuitry, not using cables, but in the software.



Figure A-6 Example: Signal interconnection of two blocks for digital input 0

Q-Pulse Id

A.5 Interconnecting signals in the converter

#### Binectors and connectors

Connectors and binectors are used to exchange signals between the individual blocks:

- Connectors are used to interconnect "analog" signals. (e.g. MOP output speed)
- Binectors are used to interconnect "digital" signals. (e.g. 'Enable MOP up' command)

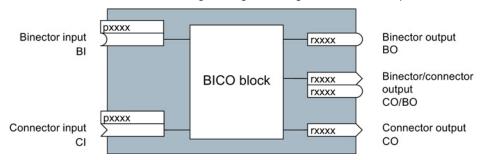


Figure A-7 Symbols for binector and connector inputs and outputs

Binector/connector outputs (CO/BO) are parameters that combine more than one binector output in a single word (e.g. r0052 CO/BO: status word 1). Each bit in the word represents a digital (binary) signal. This summary reduces the number of parameters and simplifies parameter assignment.

Binector or connector outputs (CO, BO or CO/BO) can be used more than once.

#### When must you interconnect signals in the converter?

If you change the signal interconnection in the converter, you can adapt the converter to a wide range of requirements. This does not necessarily have to involve highly complex functions.

Example 1: Assign a different function to a digital input.

Example 2: Switch the speed setpoint from the fixed speed to the analog input.

#### How much care is required when you change the signal interconnection?

Always take care when establishing internal signal interconnections. Note which changes you make as you go along since the process of analyzing them later can be quite difficult.

The STARTER commissioning tool offers signals in plain text and simplifies their interconnection.

#### Where can you find additional information?

- This manual is sufficient for simple signal interconnections (e.g. assigning a different function to digital inputs).
- The parameter list in the List Manual is sufficient for more complex signal interconnections.
- You can also refer to the function diagrams in the List Manual for complex signal interconnections.

Page 370 of 404

## Principle when connecting BICO blocks using BICO technology

An interconnection between two BICO blocks comprises a connector or binector and a BICO parameter. The interconnection is always established from the perspective of the input of a particular BICO block. This means that the output of an upstream block must always be assigned to the input of a downstream block. The assignment is always made by entering the number of the connector/binector from which the required input signals are read in a BICO parameter.

This interconnection logic involves the question: where does the signal come from?

## Example

You have to use the BICO technology when adapting the function of inputs and outputs. You find examples in the section Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79).

#### Note

For the basic commissioning, you determine the function of the interfaces for your converter via predefined settings (p0015).

If you subsequently select a different predefined setting for the function of the interfaces, then all interconnections that you changed will be lost.

## A.6 Application examples

## A.6.1 Configuring the PROFIBUS communication with STEP 7

#### A.6.1.1 Precondition

Using a suitable example, the following section provides information on how you configure the communication of an inverter to a higher-level SIMATIC control system.

To configure the communication between an inverter and a SIMATIC control system, you require the SIMATIC STEP 7 software tool with HW Config.

It is assumed that you are knowledgeable about working with SIMATIC control systems and that you have a sound understanding of the STEP 7 engineering tool.

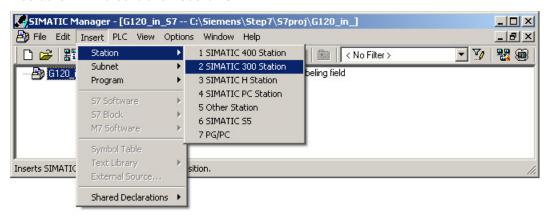
## A.6.1.2 Creating a STEP 7 project and network



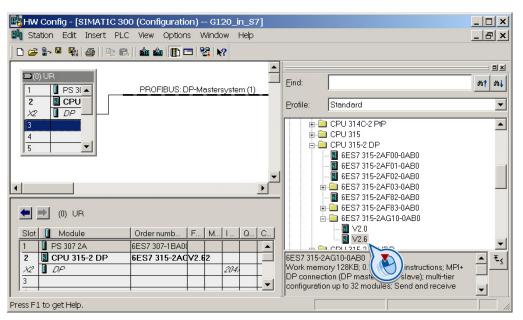
#### **Procedure**

In order to create a STEP 7 project, proceed as follows:

- 1. Create a new STEP 7 project, e.g. "G120\_in\_S7".
- 2. Insert a SIMATIC control S7 300 CPU.



- 3. Select the SIMATIC 300 station in your project and open HW Config.
- 4. Insert an S7 300 mounting rail from the hardware catalog into your project with drag & drop.
- 5. Locate a power supply at slot 1 of the mounting rail and a CPU 315-2 DP control at slot 2. When inserting the control, HW Config opens the network setting.
- 6. Create a PROFIBUS DP network.



You have created a STEP 7 project with a SIMATIC control and a PROFIBUS network.

## A.6.1.3 Inserting the inverter into the project

There are two ways to insert an inverter into the project:

- 1. Using the inverter GSD
- Using the STEP 7 object manager
   The more user-friendly option is only available when STARTER is installed (see Section Commissioning tools (Page 23)).

#### Precondition

You have installed the GSD of the inverter in your PC using HW Config (menu "Options - Install GSD files").

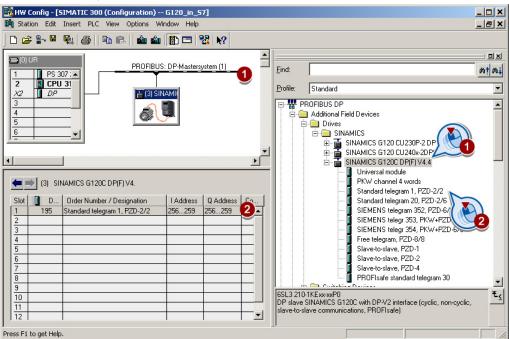
#### **Procedure**



In order to insert an inverter into your project, proceed as follows:

1. Insert the inverter by dragging and dropping it into the PROFIBUS network.

You can find the inverter under "PROFIBUS DP - Other field devices" in the HW Config hardware catalog.



- 2. Enter the PROFIBUS address set at the inverter in HW Config.
- 3. Select the appropriate telegram and insert the telegram into slot 1 of the inverter by dragging and dropping.
  - More information on the telegram types can be found in Chapter Cyclic communication (Page 99).
- 4. If you wish to assign several inverter slots with telegrams, then you must comply with the permitted sequence of slot assignments.
- 5. Save and compile the project.
- 6. Download the project data to the S7-CPU.

You have inserted your project into the inverter and loaded your configuration to the CPU.

SINAMICS G120C converter

## Permitted sequence for the slot assignment

- PROFIsafe telegram, if one is being used.
   Information on connecting the inverter via PROFIsafe can be found in the "Safety Integrated Function Manual".
- 2. PKW channel, if one is used.
- 3. Standard, SIEMENS or free telegram, if one is used.
- 4. Direct data exchange

If you do not use one or several of the telegrams 1, 2 or 3, configure your telegrams starting with the 1st slot.

## Cyclic communication to the inverter when using the universal module

A universal module with the following properties is not permitted:

- PZD length 4/4 words
- Consistency over the complete length

With these properties, the universal module has the same DP identifier (4AX) as the "PKW channel 4 words". The higher-level control does not establish cyclic communication with the inverter.

Workaround when using the universal module above:

- In the properties of the DP slave, change the PZD length to 8/8 bytes
- Change the consistency to "Unit".

## A.6.2 Configuring the PROFINET communication with STEP 7

#### A.6.2.1 Precondition

Using a suitable example, the following section provides information on how you configure the communication of an inverter to a higher-level SIMATIC control system.

To configure the communication between an inverter and a SIMATIC control system, you require the SIMATIC STEP 7 software tool with HW Config.

It is assumed that you are knowledgeable about working with SIMATIC control systems and that you have a sound understanding of the STEP 7 engineering tool.

## A.6.2.2 Configuring the controller and converter in HW Config

Using an example of a SINAMICS G120 with Control Unit CU240B-2 or CU240E-2, the procedure shows how you insert the inverter into the project.

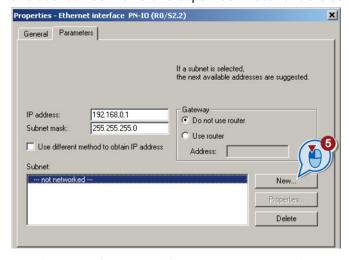
# $\square$

#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to configure communications between the inverter and the control system via PROFINET:

- 1. Open HW Config in STEP 7 via "Insert/[Station]", and create the components in accordance with your hardware structure. The following example is limited to the components that are absolutely required.
- 2. Build your station with a rack and power supply unit.
- 3. Insert the CPU.
  - HW Config opens a screen form with suggestions for the next free IP address and a subnet screen form.
- 4. If you have configured a local area network, and are not working within a larger Ethernet network, use the proposed entries.

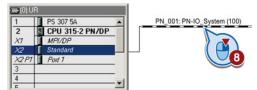
Otherwise, ask your administrator about the IP addresses for the PROFINET participants and subnet mask. CPU and supervisor must have the same subnet screen form.



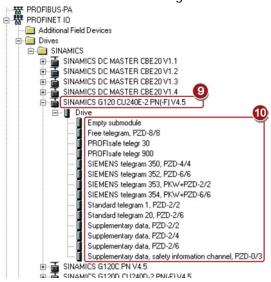
5. Use the "New" button to either create a new PROFINET subnet or select an existing one.

SINAMICS G120C converter

- 6. Assign a name for your PROFINET network.
- 7. Exit this screen form and the next one with OK.
- 8. Select your subnet.

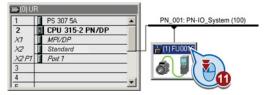


- 9. Using the hardware catalog, first insert the inverter using drag & drop.
- 10.Insert the communication telegram.



11. Open the properties window of the inverter and enter a unique and descriptive device name for the inverter.

Using the device name, the PROFINET controller assigns the IP address when starting up.

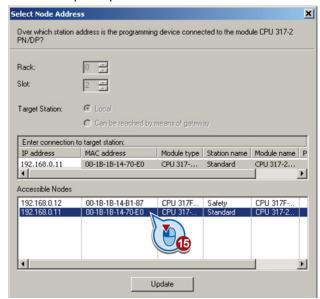


- 12. You will also find the proposed IP address in this screen form. If required, you can change the IP address via "Properties".
- 13. Save your hardware configuration with "Save and compile" ( ].
- 14.Load the configuration into the control unit via the 🐞 button.

### A.6 Application examples

15. Enter the IP address of the controller.

If you do not have the IP address readily available, you can display the participants that can be reached by clicking the "Display" button. Select the control from the list of accessible participants, and exit the screen form with OK.



- 16.If you have installed Drive ES Basic, open the STARTER by double-clicking the inverter symbol in the Hardware Manager and configure the inverter in the STARTER.
  - In this case, STARTER automatically accepts the device name and IP address. The approach described in the following section is therefore superfluous.
- 17.If you are working with the GSDML, close HW Config now and create a reference for STARTER as described in the following section.

You have configured the communication between the inverter and the control unit using PROFINET.

Active 17/06/2014

#### See also

Connect the converter to PROFINET (Page 93)

Page 378 of 404

#### A.6.2.3 Create a reference for STARTERS

If you have configured the inverter via GSDML, in STEP 7, you must create a reference of the inverter for STARTER, so that you can call up STARTER from STEP 7.

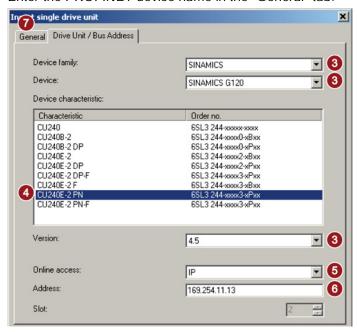
This procedure is described using the example of a SINAMICS G120 with Control Unit CU240B-2 or CU240E-2.

#### **Procedure**

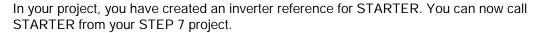


Proceed as follows to create a reference of the inverter for STARTER:

- 1. Highlight the project in the SIMATIC manager
- 2. Open the "Insert single drive unit" screen form by right clicking on "Insert New Object/SINAMICS".
- 3. Under the "Drive device/address" tab, set the device family, device and the firmware version.
- 4. In the device version, select your inverter.
- 5. Set the online access.
- 6. Set the address.
- 7. Enter the PROFINET device name in the "General" tab.



- 8. Exit the screen form with OK.
- 9. The inverter is visible in your project.



Active 17/06/2014

### A.6 Application examples

## A.6.2.4 Activate diagnostic messages via STEP 7



#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to activate the diagnostic messages of the inverter:

1. In HW Config, select the inverter.

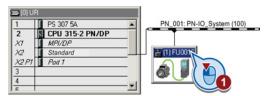
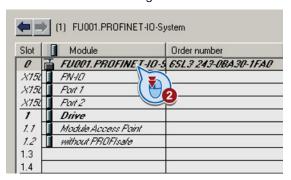
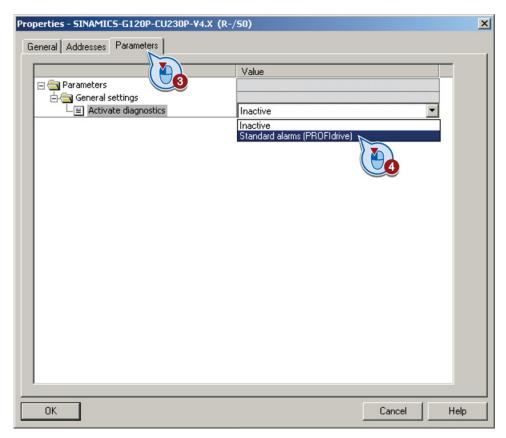


Figure A-8 Highlight inverter in HW Config

2. By double clicking on slot 0 in the station window, open the property window for the inverter's network settings.



- 3. Select the Parameters tab.
- 4. Activate the standard alarms.



You have activated the diagnosis messages.

With the next ramp-up of the controller, the diagnostic messages of the inverter are then transferred to the controller.

## A.6.2.5 Call the STARTER and go online



#### **Procedure**

To call STARTER from STEP 7 and establish an online connection to the inverter, proceed as follows:

- 1. Highlight the inverter in the SIMATIC manager with the right mouse button.
- 2. Open the STARTER via "Open object".
- 3. Configure the inverter in STARTER and click on the Online button ( ).
- 4. In the following window, select the inverter and then the S7ONLINE as access point.



5. Exit the screen form with OK.

You have called STARTER from STEP 7, and have established the online connection to the inverter.

SINAMICS G120C converter

A.6 Application examples

## A.6.3 STEP 7 programming examples

## A.6.3.1 Data exchange via the fieldbus

## Data exchange via the fieldbus

## Analog signals

The inverter always scales signals, which are transferred via the fieldbus, to a value of 4000 hex.

Table A- 9 Signal category and associated scaling parameters

Signal category	4000 Hex ≙	Signal category	4000 Hex ≙
Speeds, frequencies	p2000	Torque	p2003
Voltage	p2001	Power	p2004
Current	p2002	Temperature	p2006

#### Control and status words

Control and status words consist of a higher-value and a lower-value byte. A SIMATIC control interpretes words differently than the converter: the higher-value and the lower-value byte are exchanged in each case during transmission. See also the following program example.

### A.6.3.2 STEP 7 program example for cyclic communication

Network 1: Control word 1 and setpoint Control word 1: 047E hex Setpoint: 2500 hex W#16#47E MW Т W#16#2500 Т MW 3 Acknowledge fault Network 2: U Ε 0.6 2.7 M Switch the motor on and off Network 3: U Ε 0.0 M 2.0 Network 4: Write process data L MW 1 Т PAW 256 MW 3 L

The controller and inverter communicate via standard telegram 1. The control specifies control word 1 (STW1) and the speed setpoint, while the inverter responds with status word 1 (ZSW1) and its actual speed.

In this example, inputs E0.0 and E0.6 are linked to the ON/OFF1 bit or to the "acknowledge fault" bit of STW 1.

Control word 1 contains the numerical value 047E hex. The bits of control word 1 are listed in the following table.

The hexadecimal numeric value 2500 specifies the setpoint frequency of the inverter. The maximum frequency is the hexadecimal value 4000 (also see Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)).

The controller cyclically writes the process data to logical address 256 of the inverter. The inverter also writes its process data to logical address 256. You define the address area in HW Config.

T

L

L

T

Status word 1: MW 5 Actual value: MW 7

Network 4:

PAW

PEW

MW

MW

PEW

258

Read process data

256

258

7

## A.6 Application examples

Table A- 10 Assignment of the control bits in the inverter to the SIMATIC flags and inputs

HEX	BIN	Bit in STW1	Significance	Bit in MW1	Bit in MB1	Bit in MB2	Inputs
Е	0	0	ON/OFF1	8		0	E0.0
	1	1	OFF2	9		1	
	1	2	OFF3	10		2	
	1	3	Operation enable	11		3	
7	1	4	Ramp-function generator enable	12		4	
	1	5	Start ramp-function generator	13		5	
	1	6	Setpoint enable	14		6	
	0	7	Acknowledge fault	15		7	E0.6
4	0	8	Jog 1	0	0		
	0	9	Jog 2	1	1		
	1	10	PLC control	2	2		
	0	11	Setpoint inversion	3	3		
0	0	12	Irrelevant	4	4		
	0	13	Motorized potentiometer ↑	5	5		
	0	14	Motorized potentiometer ↓	6	6		
	0	15	Data set changeover	7	7		

Q-Pulse Id

## A.6.3.3 STEP 7 program example for acyclic communication



Network I.	Reading and writing parameters

// read par	rameter	S
0(		
U	M	9.2
UN	M	9.1
)		
0(		
U	M	9.0
UN	M	9.1
)		
R	M	9.3
SPE	B RD	

// write	para	meters	
	0(		
	U	M	9.3
	UN	M	9.0
	)		
i	0(		
	U	M	9.1
	UN	M	9.0
	)		
ĺ	R	M	9.2
	SPB	WR	
1	BEA		

RD:	NOP 0 CALL FC	1
	BEA	
WR:	NOP 0	9.1
	CALLEC	3

M9.0	Starts reading parameters
------	---------------------------

M9.1 Starts writing parameters

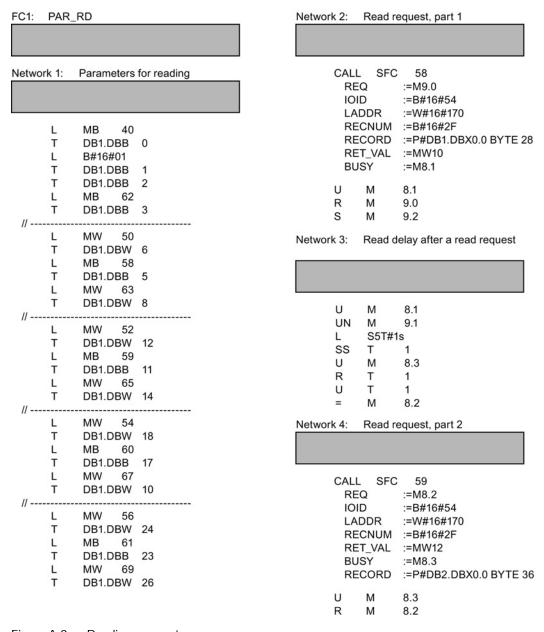
M9.2 Displays the read process

M9.3 Displays the write process

The number of simultaneous requests for acyclic communication is limited. More detailed information can be found under

http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/15364459

(http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/15364459).



## Figure A-9 Reading parameters

## Note

## With PROFINET standard function blocks (SFB) instead of system functions (SFC)

With acyclic communication via PROFINET, you must replace the system functions with standard function blocks as follows:

- SFC 58 → SFB 53
- SFC 59 → SFB 52

SINAMICS G120C converter

Page 386 of 404

### Explanation of FC 1

Table A- 11 Request to read parameters

Data block DB 1	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference MB 40	01 hex: Read request	0
	01 hex	Number of parameters (m) MB 62	2
Address,	Attribute 10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes MB 58	4
parameter 1	Parameter number MW 50		6
	Number of the 1st index MW 63		8
Address,	Attribute 10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes MB 59	10
parameter 2	Parameter number MW 52		12
	Number of the 1st index MW 65		14
Address,	Attribute 10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes MB 60	16
parameter 3	Parameter number MW 54		18
	Number of the 1st index MW 67		20
Address,	Attribute 10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes MB 61	22
parameter 4	Parameter number MW 56		24
	Number of the 1st index MW 69		26

SFC 58 copies the specifications for the parameters to be read from DB 1 and sends them to the inverter as a read request. No other read requests are permitted while this one is being processed.

After the read request and a waiting time of one second, the controller takes the parameter values from the inverter via SFC 59 and saves them in DB 2.

### A.6 Application examples

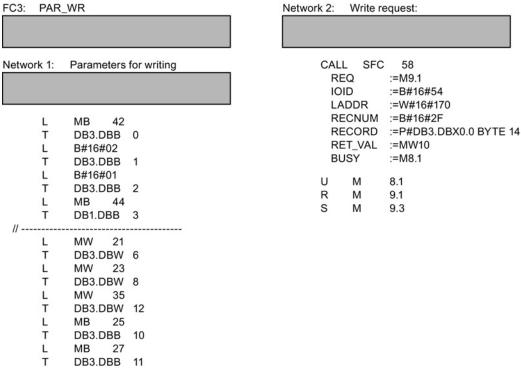


Figure A-10 Writing parameters

### Explanation of FC 3

Table A- 12 Request to change parameters

Data block DB 3	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	Reference MB 42	02 hex: Change request	0
	01 hex	Number of parameters MB 44	2
Address,	10 hex: Parameter value	Number of indexes 00 hex	4
parameter 1	Parameter number MW 21		6
	Number of the 1st index MW 23		8
Values,	Format MB 25	Number of index values MB 27	10
parameter 1	Value of the 1st indexMW35		12

SFC 58 copies the specifications for the parameters to be written from DB 3 and sends them to the inverter. The inverter blocks other write jobs while this write job is running.

## A.6.4 Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7

Two drives communicate via standard telegram 1 with the higher-level controller. In addition, drive 2 receives its speed setpoint directly from drive 1 (actual speed).

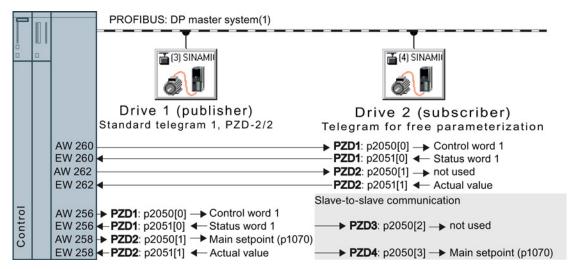


Figure A-11 Communication with the higher-level controller and between the drives with direct data exchange

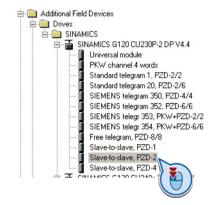
### Setting direct data exchange in the control



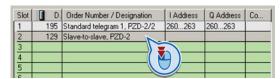
#### **Procedure**

Proceed as follows to set direct data exchange in the control:

 In HW Config in drive 2 (subscriber), insert a direct data exchange object, e.g. "Slave-to-slave, PZD2".

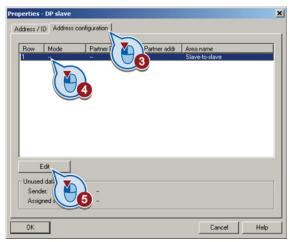


2. With a double-click, open the dialog box to make additional settings for the direct data exchange.

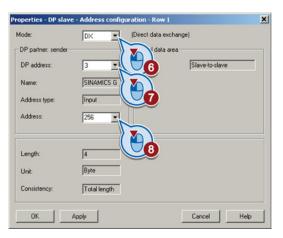


### A.6 Application examples

- 3. Activate the tab "Address configuration".
- 4. Select line 1.
- 5. Open the dialog box in which you define the Publisher and the address area to be transferred.



- 6. Select DX for direct data exchange
- 7. Select the address of drive 1 (publisher).
- 8. In the address field, select the start address specifying the data area to be received from drive 1. In the example, these are the status word 1 (PZD1) and the actual speed value with the start address 256.



Close both screen forms with OK.

You have now defined the value range for direct data exchange.

In the direct data exchange, drive 2 receives the sent data and writes this into the next available words, in this case, PZD3 and PZD4.

## Settings in drive 2 (subscriber)

Drive 2 is preset in such a way that it receives its setpoint from the higher-level controller. In order that drive 2 accepts the actual value sent from drive 1 as setpoint, you must set the following:

- In drive 2, set the PROFIdrive telegram selection to "Free telegram configuration" (p0922 = 999).
- In drive 2, set the source of the main setpoint to p1070 = 2050.3.

The inverter indicates the inverter addresses that are configured for direct data exchange in parameter r2077.

SINAMICS G120C converter

## A.6.5 Connecting fail-safe digital inputs

The examples comply with PL d according to EN 13849-1 and SIL2 according to IEC 61508 for the case that all components are installed within one control cabinet.

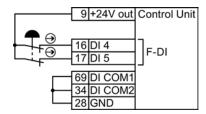


Figure A-12 Connecting a sensor, e.g. Emergency Stop mushroom pushbutton or limit switch

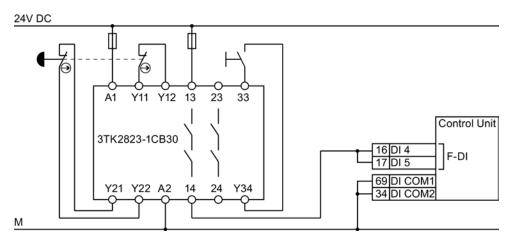


Figure A-13 Connecting a safety relay, e.g. SIRIUS 3TK28

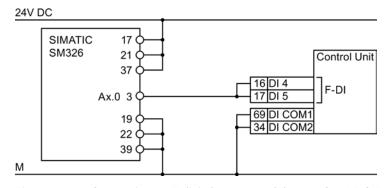


Figure A-14 Connecting an F digital output module, e.g. SIMATIC F digital output module

You can find additional connection options and connections in separate control cabinets in the Safety Integrated Function Manual, see Section: Further information on your inverter (Page 395).

A.7 Documentation for acceptance of safety functions

# A.7 Documentation for acceptance of safety functions

## A.7.1 Machine documentation

## Machine or plant description

Designation	
Туре	
Serial number	
Manufacturer	
End customer	
Block diagram of the machine a	nd/or plant:

## Inverter data

Table A- 13 Hardware version of the safety-related inverter

Labeling the drive	Order number and hardware version of the inverter	

## **Function table**

Table A- 14 Active safety functions depending on the operating mode and safety equipment

Operating mode	Safety equipment	Drive	Selected safety function	Checked
•••	•••			
•••	•••	•••		
Example:				
Automatic	Protective door closed	Conveyor belt		
	Protective door open	Conveyor belt	STO	
	Emergency Stop button pressed	Conveyor belt	STO	

## Acceptance test reports

File name of the acceptance reports	

## Data backup

Data	Storage medium			Holding area
	Archiving type	Designation	Date	
Acceptance test reports				
PLC program				
Circuit diagrams				

## Countersignatures

### Commissioning engineer

This confirms that the tests and checks have been carried out properly.

Date	Name	Company/dept.	Signature

### Machine manufacturer

This confirms that the settings recorded above are correct.

Date	Name	Company/dept.	Signature
		•••	•••

## A.7.2 Log the settings for the basic functions, firmware V4.4 ... V4.6

## Drive = <pDO-NAME\_v>

Table A- 15 Firmware version

Name	Number	Value
Control Unit firmware version	r18	<r18_v></r18_v>
SI version, safety functions integrated in the drive (processor 1)	r9770	<r9770_v></r9770_v>

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

## A.7 Documentation for acceptance of safety functions

Table A- 16 Monitoring cycle

Name	Number	Value
SI monitoring clock cycle (processor 1)	r9780	<r9780_v></r9780_v>

### Table A- 17 Checksums

Name	Number	Value
SI reference checksum SI parameters (processor 1)	p9799	<p9799_v></p9799_v>
SI reference checksum SI parameters (processor 2)	p9899	<p9899_v></p9899_v>

Table A- 18 Settings of the safety functions

Name		Number	Value
SI enable, functions integ	rated in the drive	p9601	<p9601_v></p9601_v>
Only for the CU250S-2 SI enable safe brake control Control Unit		p9602	<p9602_v></p9602_v>
SI PROFIsafe address		p9610	<p9610_v></p9610_v>
SI F-DI changeover, tolerance time		p9650	<p9650_v></p9650_v>
SI STO debounce time	SI STO debounce time		<p9651_v></p9651_v>
Only for the CU250S-2 SI Safe Stop 1 delay time Control Unit		p9652	<p9652_v></p9652_v>
SI forced dormant error detection timer		p9659	<p9659_v></p9659_v>

Table A- 19 Safety logbook

Name	Number	Value
SI checksum to check changes	r9781[0]	<r9781[0]_v></r9781[0]_v>
SI checksum to check changes	r9781[1]	<r9781[1]_v></r9781[1]_v>
SI change control time stamp	r9782[0]	<r9782[0]_v></r9782[0]_v>
SI change control time stamp	r9782[1]	<r9782[1]_v></r9782[1]_v>

# A.8 Further information on your inverter

## A.8.1 Manuals for your inverter

Table A- 20 Manuals for your converter

Depth of the information	Manual	Contents	Available languages	Download or order number
++	Getting Started SINAMICS G120C	Installing and commissioning the converter.	Chinese, English,	Download (http://support.automation.sie
+++	Operating instructions	(this manual)	French, German, Italian, Spanish, Turkish	mens.com/WW/view/en/2233 9653/133300) SINAMICS Manual Collection Documentation on DVD, order number
+++	Function Manual for Safety Integrated	Configuring PROFIsafe. Installing, commissioning and operating fail-safe functions of the converter.	English, German	6SL3097-4CA00-0YG0
+++	List Manual SINAMICS G120C	Complete list of all parameters, alarms and faults. Graphic function diagrams.	Chinese, English, German	
+	Installation Instructions for reactors and braking resistors	Installing components	English	
+++	Operating Instructions for Operator Panels BOP-2 and IOP	Operating operator panels, installing door assembly for IOP	English, German	

## A.8.2 Configuring support

Table A- 21 Support when configuring and selecting the converter

Manual or tool	Contents	Available languages	Download or order number
Catalog D 31	Ordering data and technical information for the standard SINAMICS G converters	English, German, Italian, French, Spanish	All about SINAMICS G120C (www.siemens.com/sinamics-g120c)
Online catalog (Industry Mall)	Ordering data and technical information for all SIEMENS products	English, German	
SIZER	The overall configuration tool for SINAMICS, MICROMASTER and DYNAVERT T drives, motor starters, as well as SINUMERIK, SIMOTION controls and SIMATIC Technology	English, German, Italian, French	You obtain SIZER on a DVD (Order number: 6SL3070-0AA00-0AG0) and in the Internet: Download SIZER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/W W/view/en/10804987/130000)
Configuration Manual	Selecting geared motors, motors, converters and braking resistor based on calculation examples	English, German	Download engineering manual (http://support.automation.siemens.com/W/W/view/en/37728795)

## A.8.3 Product Support

## If you have further questions

You can find additional information on the product and more in the Internet under: Product support (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/4000024).

In addition to our documentation, under this address we offer our complete knowledge base online: You can find the following information:

- Actual product information (Update), FAQ (frequently asked questions), downloads.
- The Newsletter contains the latest information on the products you use.
- The Knowledge Manager (Intelligent Search) helps you find the documents you need.
- Users and specialists from around the world share their experience and knowledge in the Forum.
- You can find your local representative for Automation & Drives via our contact database under "Contact & Partner".
- Information about local service, repair, spare parts and much more can be found under "Services".

# Index

	Bit pattern test, 268
	Block, 368 BOP-2
8	Menu, 359
O	Symbols, 360
87 Hz characteristic, 44	Braking functions, 237, 238
	Braking method, 237, 239
	Braking module, 243
A	Braking resistor, 27, 243
AC/DC drive profile 123	Distances, 37
AC/DC drive profile, 123	Installation, 34
Acceptance test, 273 Authorized person, 274	Break loose torque, 359
Preconditions, 274	Breaking resistor
Reduced scope, 274	Dimension drawings, 35
Requirements, 273	Bus fault, 322
STO, 278	Bus termination, 45
Test scope, 274	Dus terrimation, 10
Acceptance test record, 273	
Acyclic communication, 114	C
Acyclic data transfer, 114	
Adjustable parameters, 357	CAN
Alarm, 321, 323	COB, 156
Alarm buffer, 323	COB ID, 156
Alarm code, 323	Device profile, 156
Alarm history, 324	EMCY, 156
Alarm value, 323	NMT, 156
Ambient temperature, 62	SDO, 156
Analog input, 64	SYNC, 156
Function, 90, 93	Catalog 201
Analog output, 64	Catalog, 391 Category C1, 344
Function, 93	Category C1, 344 Category C2, 343
Application	Category C2, 343 Category C3, 343
Reading and writing parameters acyclically via	Category C4, 343
PROFIBUS and PROFINET, 118	CDS (Command Data Set), 202, 273
Reading and writing parameters cyclically via	Centrifuge, 237, 239, 242
PROFIBUS, 113	Changing parameters (STARTER), 363
Authorized person, 274	Characteristic
Automatic mode, 202	Additional, 221
Automatic restart, 252	Linear, 220
	parabolic, 220
_	square-law, 220
В	Checklist
Basic commissioning, 47	PROFIBUS, 99
Basic functions, 85	PROFINET, 96, 122
BF (Bus Fault), 321, 322	Circuit diagram, 388
BICO block, 368	Classification of EMC behavior, 343
Bimetallic switch, 226	Clockwise rotation, 194
Binectors, 368	Closed-loop speed control, 222
·	

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

COB, 156 COB ID, 156 Command Data Set, 202	Pulse frequency, 348 Temperature, 347 Voltage, 347
Command source, 192	Device profile, 156
Selecting, 358	DI (Digital Input), 85, 272, 273
Commissioning	Digital input, 64, 194
Accessories, 27	Digital inputs
Guidelines, 61	Multiple assignment, 272, 273
Commissioning:	Digital output, 64
Overview, 22	Function, 86
Communication	Dimension drawings, 31, 32, 35
Acyclic, 114	DIP switch
commutation notches, 27	Analog input, 88
Compound braking, 242, 243	Direct data exchange, 114, 384
Compressor, 67	Direction of rotation, 211
Configuring support, 391	Direction reversal, 194
Connectors, 368	Discrepancy, 267
Consistency, 267	Filter, 267
Consistent signals, 267	Tolerance time, 267
Contact bounce, 268	Display parameters, 357
Control mode, 358	Distances, 37
Control terminals, 64	Door mounting kit, 27
Control word, 105	Down ramp, 358
Control word 1, 105	Download, 27, 286, 291, 292
Controlling the motor, 194	Drill pattern, 32, 35
Conveyor belt, 239	Drilling pattern, 31
Conveyor systems, 79	Drive Data Set, DDS, 279
Copy	Drive Data Sets, 279
Series commissioning, 275	Drive ES Basic, 27, 371
Copy parameters	Drive-independent communication objects, 174
Series commissioning, 275	DS 47, 115
Counter-clockwise rotation, 194	DVC A power supply, 337
Countersignatures, 388	Dynamic braking, 243
Crane, 237, 249	
cUL-compliant installation, 42	Е
Current input, 88	E
Current reduction, 348	Electromechanical sensor, 386
	Elevator, 249 EMC, 54
D	
Data backup, 27, 283, 286, 290, 292, 388	EMCY, 156 Emergency Stop button, 262
Data exchange fieldbus, 379	EN 61800-5-2, 262
Data set 47 (DS), 114, 383	End customer, 387
Data set changeover, 273	Energy-saving display, 235
Data transfer, 286, 290, 292	Ethernet/IP, 121
DC braking, 240, 241	European EMC Directive, 353
DC-link overvoltage, 230	European Low Voltage Directive, 352
DC-link voltage, 230	European Machinery Directive, 352
Default settings, 65	Extended functions, 85
Delta connection ( $\Delta$ ), 44, 62	Extruders, 67
Derating	440.07 07
Operational altitude, 347	

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Q-Pulse Id

F	Н
Factory assignment, 64	harmonics, 27
Factory settings	Harmonics, 346
Restoring the, 68, 69, 264	Hoisting gear, 67, 237, 243, 249
Fail-safe input, 85	Holding brake, 237
Fan, 67, 79	Horizontal conveyor, 67
Fans, 237, 246	Horizontal conveyors, 242, 243, 246
Fault, 321, 326	Hotline, 391
Acknowledge, 326, 327	HW Config (hardware configuration), 370, 373
Fault buffer, 326	
Fault case, 327	
Fault code, 326	1
Fault detection, 270	I may controller 220
Fault history, 327	I_max controller, 229
Fault value, 326	12t monitoring, 226
F-DI (Fail-safe Digital Input), 85	Inclined conveyors, 67, 237, 243, 246 IND, 111, 140
F-digital output module, 387	Industrial systems, 343
FFC (Flux Current Control), 220	Industry Mall, 391
Field weakening, 44	Installation, 29, 30, 34
Fieldbus interfaces, 45	Interfaces, 47
Filter	Configuring, 47
Contact bounce, 268	Inverter
Discrepancy, 267	does not respond, 318
On/off test, 268	Update, 275
Firmware	Inverter control, 192
Update, 275	ISO 9001, 353
Firmware downgrade, 315	IT, 38
Firmware version, 358, 388	,
First environment, 343	
Flow control, 258	J
Flying restart, 251, 252	IOC function 200
Forced dormant error detection, 270	JOG function, 200
Forced dormant error detection (basic functions), 270	
Formatting, 284	K
Function table, 388	N
Functional expansions, 275 Functions	Know-how protection, 294, 297
BOP-2, 359	KTY84 sensor, 226
Overview, 191	
Technological, 192	
rectinological, 172	L
	LED
G	BF, 321, 322
	LNK, 322
Getting Started, 390	RDY, 321
Grinding machine, 237, 239, 242	SAFE, 322
GSD, 371	LED (light emitting diode), 321
GSD (Generic Station Description), 100	Level control, 258
GSDML (Generic Station Description Markup	Line reactor, 26
Language), 97	Dimension drawings, 32
	Linear characteristic, 220
	LNK (PROFINET Link), 322

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Locked-rotor (starting) torque, 31	0
	OFF1 command, 194
	OFF3 ramp-down time, 215
M	ON command, 194
Machine description, 387	On/off test, 268
Machine manufacturer, 274	Operating instruction, 21
Manual Collection, 390	Operating instructions, 390
Manual mode, 202	Operating mode, 388
Manuals	Operating temperature, 347
Download, 390	Operation, 194
Function Manual for Safety Integrated, 390	Operational altitude, 347
Inverter accessories, 390	Operational voltage, 347
Overview, 390	Operator panel
Manufacturer, 387	BOP-2, 359
Maximum cable length	Menu, 359
Modbus, 146	Operator Panel
PROFIBUS, 99	BOP-2, 27
PROFINET, 96	Door mounting kit, 27
USS, 135	Handheld, 27
Maximum current controller, 229	IOP, 27
Maximum speed, 68, 211, 213, 358	Overload, 229, 359
Menu	Overview
BOP-2, 359	Manuals, 390
Operator panel, 359	Overview of the functions, 191
Minimum spacing	Overvoltage, 230
Above, 31	overvoltage protection, 27
Below, 31	<b>5</b> .
Front, 31	
Side by side, 31	P
Minimum speed, 68, 211, 212, 358	n001E configuring macro interfaces 47
MLFB (order number), 388	p0015, configuring macro interfaces, 47 Page index, 111, 140
MMC (memory card), 284	Parabolic characteristic, 220
MMC card, 27	Parameter channel, 109, 138
MOP (motorized potentiometer), 206	IND, 111, 140
MotID (motor data identification), 71	Parameter index, 111, 140
Motor control, 192	Parameter Manual, 390
Motor data, 62	Parameter number, 111, 362
Identify, 71, 80, 224	Parameter types, 357
measurement, 71	Parameter value, 115, 362
Motor holding brake, 237, 246, 247, 248, 249	Password, 264
Motor standard, 232	PC Connection Kit, 27, 263
Motor temperature sensor, 64	PDO, 164
Motorized potentiometer, 206	PID controller, 258
Motor-temperature sensor, 228	Plant description, 387
Multiple assignment	PLC program, 388
Digital inputs, 272, 273	Power Distribution Systems, 38
	Power failure, 252
N	Power modules
IV	Dimension drawings, 31
Network management (NMT service), 157	Power on reset, 69, 264, 272, 307, 308
NMT, 156	power supply, 337

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Q-Pulse Id

Pressure control, 258	S
Procedure, 21	CAFE 222
Process variables of the technology controller, 234	SAFE, 322
PROFIBUS, 99	Safe Brake Relay, 270
PROFlenergy, 119	Safety function, 192
PROFINET, 95	Safety relay, 386
PROFIsafe, 372	Saw, 239, 242
Protection functions, 192	Scaling
PTC sensor, 226	Analog input, 88
Public systems, 343	Analog output, 91
Pulse cancelation, 105	Scaling fieldbus, 379
Pulse enable, 105	SD (memory card), 27, 284
Pulse frequency, 348	Formatting, 284
Pulse frequency derating, 348	MMC, 284
Pump, 67, 79	SDO, 156, 160
Pumps, 246	SDO protocols, 160
. Pro	SDO services, 159
	Second environment, 343
Q	Self-test (forced dormant error detection, 270
	Sensor (electromechanical), 386
Questions, 391	Sequence control, 193
Quick stop, 193	Serial number, 387
	Series commissioning, 27, 275, 283
D	Setpoint processing, 192, 211
R	Setpoint source, 192
Ramp-down time, 68, 214, 358	Selecting, 205, 206
Scaling, 216	Short-circuit monitoring, 228
Ramp-function generator, 211	Signal interconnection, 368
Rampup time, 68, 214, 358	Signal states, 321
Ramp-up time	SIMATIC, 370, 371, 373
Scaling, 216	SIZER, 391
RDY (Ready), 321	Skip frequency band, 90
Ready, 194	Speed
Ready to switch on, 194	change with BOP-2, 359
Regenerative power, 237	Limiting, 211
Replace	Square-law characteristic, 220
Control Unit, 275	Standards, 352
Gear unit, 275	2006/95/EC, 352
Hardware, 275	EN 60204-1, 352
Motor, 275	EN 60950, 38
Power Module, 275	EN 61800-3, 343
Reset	EN 61800-3, 353
Parameter, 68, 69, 264	EN 61800-3:2004, 344
Residual risks of drive systems, 17	EN 61800-5-1, 352
Reversing, 211	ISO 9001, 353
Rounding, 215	SEMI F47-0706, 353
Rounding OFF3, 215	Star connection (Y), 44
RPDO, 160	STARTER, 27, 74, 77, 263, 290, 363
RS485 interface, 134	Download, 28
	STARTER commissioning tool, 263
	STARTER PC tool, 263
	Starting characteristics
	Optimization, 221

SINAMICS G120C converter

Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

State overview, 193	U
Status messages, 192	U/f control, 218
Status word, 105	UL-compliant installation, 42
Status word 1, 106	Underwriters Laboratories, 353
STEP 7 object manager, 371 STO (Safe Torque Off), 262, 263	Unit system, 233
Acceptance test, 278	Up ramp, 358
select, 263	Update
Storage medium, 283	Firmware, 275
STW1 (control word 1), 105	Upgrading the firmware, 313
Subindex, 111, 140	Upload, 27, 284, 290, 292
Support, 391	USB interface, 75
Switch off	USB port, 27
Motor, 193	Use for the intended purpose, 15
OFF1 command, 193	USS (universal serial interface), 135, 138
OFF2 command, 193	
OFF3 command, 193	V
Switch on	V
Motor, 193	V/f control, 358
ON command, 193	Vector control
Switching on inhibited, 105, 194	Sensorless, 222
Switching over units, 231	Vector control, 224
Switching-on a motor with BOP-2, 360	Version
Switch-off signal paths (forced dormant error	Firmware, 388
detection), 270	Hardware, 388
Symbols, 21	Safety function, 388
SYNC, 156	Vertical conveyors, 67, 243, 246
	Voltage boost, 221, 359
Т	voltage input, 88
Tochnology controllor 224, 250	
Technology controller, 234, 258 Telegram	W
paste, 98, 101	Winders, 67
Telegram types, 372	Wire breakage, 267
Temperature monitoring, 226	Wire-break monitoring, 88, 228
Temperature sensor, 64	Write protection, 294, 295
Temperature switch, 226	witte protestion, 271, 276
Terminal block, 51, 83	
Terminal strip	Z
Factory setting, 64	
Test signals, 268	ZSW1 (status word 1), 106
Test stop (forced dormant error protection), 270	
Three-wire control, 194	
TN-C, 38	
TN-C-S, 38	
TN-S, 38	
TPDO, 160	
Trace function, 365	
TT, 38	
Two-wire control, 194	

SINAMICS G120C converter Operating Instructions, 01/2013, FW V4.6, A5E02999804C AB

Siemens AG Industry Sector Drive Technologies Motion Control Systems P.O. Box 3180 91050 ERLANGEN GERMANY We reserve the right to make technical changes. © Siemens AG 2013

www.siemens.com/sinamics-g120